



# **Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests**

**June 2004**

Cette publication spécialisée n'est disponible qu'en anglais en vertu du Règlement 411/97, qui en exempte l'application de la *Loi sur les services en français*.

2004, Queen's Printer for Ontario  
Printed in Ontario, Canada

Single copies of this publication are available for \$25.00 from the address noted below.

Current publications of the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources, and price lists, are obtainable through the Natural Resources Information Centre, Room M1-73, MacDonald Block, 900 Bay Street, Toronto, Ontario M7A 2C1 or Natural Resources Information Centre, 300 Water Street Peterborough, Ontario K9J 8M5 (personal shopping and mail orders).

Telephone inquiries about Ministry programs and services should be directed to the Natural Resources Information Centre – General Inquiry 1-800-667-1940.

Other government publications are available from Publications Ontario, Main Floor, 880 Bay Street, Toronto, Ontario.

Cheques or money orders should be made payable to the Treasurer of Ontario, and payment must accompany order.

How to cite this manual:

OMNR. June 2004. Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests.  
Toronto: Queen's Printer for Ontario. 440 pp.

50993  
(4 k P.R., 04 10 01)  
ISBN 0-7794 0664-0

## 1 FOREWORD

### 3 The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

5 The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable  
6 Forests that was approved by Cabinet in 1993. The framework sets broad direction for forest  
7 policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management.

### 10 Overview of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

12 The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* replaced the *Crown Timber Act*, and came into effect on  
13 April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest  
14 planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and  
15 enforcement, and transitional provisions. The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* is designed to  
16 allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of  
17 Crown forests. The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* defines sustainability as long-term  
18 Crown forest health.

### 21 A Manual Approach to Implementation of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

23 The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* requires the provision of four manuals to guide various  
24 aspects of forest management planning in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance  
25 with Section (68) of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29. The four  
26 manuals developed by the Ministry of Natural Resources (MNR), in collaboration with non-  
27 government organizations, are:

- 29 1. *The Forest Management Planning Manual (1996, 2004)*;
- 30 2. *The Forest Information Manual (2001)*;
- 31 3. *The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (1995, 2000)*; and
- 32 4. *The Scaling Manual (1995, 2000)*.

34 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* is the pivotal document that provides direction for  
35 all aspects of forest management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within the area of the  
36 undertaking, as defined on page 35 in the Environmental Assessment Board's *Reasons for*  
37 *Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural*  
38 *Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)*. The *Forest*  
39 *Management Planning Manual* was originally regulated under the *Crown Forest*  
40 *Sustainability Act* in 1996.

42 The *Forest Management Planning Manual (2004)* incorporates conditions 1 to 26 of MNR's  
43 *Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in*  
44 *Ontario (2003)*.

1 In accordance with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the sustainability of the forest will be  
2 determined in accordance with the approach described in the *Forest Management Planning*  
3 *Manual*. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess  
4 the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the  
5 sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the forest management plan, the  
6 determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that the forest management plan provides  
7 for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has had regard for plant  
8 life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values  
9 and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the monitoring and evaluation  
10 of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes, which provide a means for  
11 continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest management activities.

12  
13 The *Forest Information Manual* provides guidance for information management that supports  
14 forest management planning and operations.

15  
16 The *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* is a compendium of guidance and direction  
17 for the conduct of operations authorized by approved forest management plans. This manual  
18 provides for the qualification of persons engaged in forest operations, as well as measures for  
19 assessing the performance of forest operations.

20  
21 The *Scaling Manual* provides direction for the measurement of all timber harvested from  
22 Crown land in Ontario. It provides the means through which Ontario collects revenue from  
23 the disposition of Crown timber.

24  
25

## 26 **Manual Revision**

27  
28 The four manuals will continue to be works in progress. They will be revised, improved and  
29 updated based on experiences in using the manuals, and as new information becomes  
30 available. Revisions to the *Forest Management Planning Manual* will be made in accordance  
31 with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* regulation requiring public review and comment.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1  
2  
3 FOREWORD ..... i  
4  
5 INTRODUCTION .....v  
6 Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual ..... viii  
7  
8 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**  
9 Table of Contents ..... A-1  
10 PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..... A-7  
11 Phase-in Provisions ..... A-7  
12 1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN..... A-8  
13 2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERMA-77  
14 3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... A-92  
15 4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING A-129  
16  
17 **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**  
18 Table of Contents ..... B-1  
19 PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS ..... B-4  
20 1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... B-11  
21 2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION ..... B-12  
22 3.0 LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... B-18  
23 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... B-24  
24 5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY ..... B-35  
25 6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..... B-36  
26 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY ..... B-39  
27 8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... B-40  
28 9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ..... B-49  
29  
30 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND**  
31 **EARLY PLAN RENEWAL**  
32 Table of Contents ..... C-1  
33 PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY  
34 PLAN RENEWALS ..... C-3  
35 Phase-In Provisions ..... C-3  
36 1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... C-4  
37 2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS ..... C-5  
38 3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS ..... C-16  
39 4.0 UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... C-22  
40 5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ... C-24  
41 6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... C-25  
42 7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT ..... C-33  
43  
44 **PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**  
45 Table of Contents ..... D-1  
46 PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS ..... D-3

1	Phase-in Provisions .....	D-3
2	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	D-4
3	2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS.....	D-5
4	3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE.....	D-8
5	4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS .....	D-36
6	5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .....	D-37
7	6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .....	D-39
8	7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION.....	D-41
9	8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT.....	D-48
10		
11	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS</b>	
12	Table of Contents.....	E-1
13	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS</b> .....	E-3
14	Phase-in Provisions .....	E-3
15	1.0 INTRODUCTION .....	E-4
16	2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL	
17	REPORTS .....	E-5
18	3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT	
19	UNIT ANNUAL REPORT .....	E-13
20	4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN	
21	MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS.....	E-14
22	5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....	E-19
23	6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES .....	E-21
24		
25	<b>APPENDICES</b>	
26	Table of Contents.....	App-1
27	Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking.....	App-2
28	Appendix II: Existing Roads Table.....	App-4
29	Appendix III: Analysis Package Contents .....	App-6
30	Appendix IV: Social and Economic Description.....	App-7
31	Appendix V: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps.....	App-11
32	Appendix VI: Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic	
33	Analysis.....	App-13
34	Appendix VII: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form.....	App-14
35	Appendix VIII: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form.....	App-20
36		
37	<b>GLOSSARY</b> .....	Glossary-1

## 1 INTRODUCTION

2  
3 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* prescribes the requirements for Ontario's forest  
4 management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the  
5 products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of  
6 planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this  
7 planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a  
8 subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

9  
10 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* provides direction based on the legislative  
11 requirements of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* and the Environmental Assessment  
12 Board's Decision on MNR's *Class Environmental Assessment for Timber Management on*  
13 *Crown Lands in Ontario* (1994), as amended and extended by Declaration Order MNR-71  
14 and its conditions, under the *Environmental Assessment Act*.

15  
16 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* focuses on the delivery of the forest management  
17 component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management  
18 policies and strategies including:

- 19  
20
- Beyond 2000;
  - MNR Statement of Environmental Values;
  - Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
  - Forest Resource Assessment Policy;
  - Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forests;
  - Ontario's Living Legacy Land Use Strategy; and
  - Ontario's Crown Land Use Atlas.
- 26

27  
28 These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for  
29 the preparation of forest management plans, including the determination of forest  
30 sustainability.

31  
32 The geographic basis for a forest management plan is a management unit. As of April 1, 2004,  
33 there are 48 management units in Ontario's Crown forest within the area of the undertaking  
34 (Appendix I). Forest management plans are prepared for each management unit within the  
35 area of the undertaking, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management*  
36 *Planning Manual*. Forest management plans provide the authority to carry out forest  
37 management activities including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal, tending and  
38 protection treatments.

39  
40 On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest licence,  
41 the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and implementation  
42 of a forest management plan. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is  
43 referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing forest management plans.  
44 Where the requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those  
45 requirements will apply to the MNR or the party responsible for the preparation and  
46 implementation of a forest management plan.

1 For the purpose of this manual, all approvals reference the MNR Regional Director, MNR  
2 District Manager and/or MNR Area Supervisor. In the case of the Algonquin Park Forest, the  
3 Park Superintendent will be considered to be the MNR District Manager, and the Operations  
4 Leader will be considered to be the MNR Area Supervisor, for the requirements of this  
5 manual.

6  
7 Forest management plans are prepared for a ten-year period with two five-year operational  
8 terms. The *Forest Management Planning Manual* breaks the planning process into two  
9 phases. Phase I refers to the initial 24 to 27 months that results in a forest management plan  
10 that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary and branch road  
11 corridors, and details of operations for the initial five-year operational term. Phase II refers to  
12 the eight to ten month planning process that occurs during the fifth year of the ten-year plan  
13 period and results in the details of operations for the second five-year term.

14  
15 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* is divided into five major parts:

16  
17 **PART A** provides direction for the preparation of forest management plans, and describes  
18 requirements for:

- 19  
20
- Phase I – preparing the ten-year forest management plan (including detailed operations  
21 for the first five-year term);
  - Phase II – planning of operations for the second five-year term;
  - public consultation; and
  - Aboriginal involvement.
- 22  
23  
24  
25

26  
27 **PART B** provides the forest management plan content requirements and describes  
28 requirements for:

- 29
- title, certification and approval pages;
  - section headings and associated documentation;
  - supplementary documentation;
  - forest management plan summary;
  - Phase II documentation; and
  - forest management plan tables
- 30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36

37  
38 **PART C** provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, and  
39 unscheduled and early plan renewals and describes the requirements for:

- 40
- administrative, minor and major amendments;
  - contingency plans;
  - unscheduled and early plan renewals;
  - a delay in approval of operations for the second five-year term;
  - public consultation; and
  - Aboriginal involvement.
- 41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46



1 **PART D** provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual  
2 basis, and describes requirements for:

- 3
- 4 • forest operations prescriptions;
- 5 • annual work schedules;
- 6 • prescribed burns;
- 7 • aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- 8 • insect pest management programs;
- 9 • public consultation; and
- 10 • Aboriginal involvement.
- 11
- 12

13 **PART E** provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest  
14 management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and  
15 describes:

- 16
- 17 • requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- 18 • additional requirements for the year three annual report;
- 19 • additional requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports;
- 20 • submission and review requirements; and
- 21 • management unit annual report tables.
- 22

23 In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

- 24
- 25 I. Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking
- 26 II. Existing Roads Table
- 27 III. Analysis Package Contents
- 28 IV. Social and Economic Description Outline
- 29 V. List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps
- 30 VI. Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic Analysis
- 31 VII. Road Planning Supplementary Documentation Form
- 32 VIII. Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form
- 33

34 The manual also contains a glossary of terms.

35  
36 The *Forest Management Planning Manual* is intended to be used by those involved in forest  
37 management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals,  
38 stakeholders and the public.

39  
40 By January 31 of each year, MNR will produce a list of all management units. This list  
41 identifies forest management plans currently in preparation, all forest management plans  
42 expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units where operational planning for  
43 the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. This list will be available to the public  
44 upon request.

1 **Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual**

2

3 The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years  
4 before all requirements of this *Forest Management Planning Manual* can be fully  
5 implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this *Forest*  
6 *Management Planning Manual* will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless  
7 otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this  
8 manual.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1		
2		
3	<b>PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS.....</b>	<b>7</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions.....	7
5	<b>1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN . 8</b>	<b>8</b>
6	1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning.....	10
7	1.1.1 Introduction.....	10
8	1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities.....	10
9	1.1.2 Planning Team.....	10
10	1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference.....	12
11	1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee.....	15
12	1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements.....	15
13	1.1.5 Progress Checkpoints.....	16
14	1.1.6 Analysis Package.....	17
15	1.1.7 Assembly and Update of Background Information.....	17
16	1.1.7.1 Sources of Direction.....	17
17	1.1.7.2 Provincial Audits and Reports.....	18
18	1.1.7.3 Forest Management Guides.....	19
19	1.1.7.4 Management Unit Annual Reports.....	19
20	1.1.7.5 Planning Inventory.....	19
21	1.1.7.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information.....	20
22	1.1.7.7 Other Resource Inventories and Information.....	21
23	1.1.7.8 Values Maps.....	22
24	1.1.7.9 Roads Inventory.....	23
25	1.1.7.10 Social and Economic Description.....	23
26	1.1.7.11 Historic Forest Condition.....	24
27	1.1.8 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community ..	24
28	1.1.9 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate.....	25
29	1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction.....	25
30	1.2.1 Introduction.....	25
31	1.2.2 Current Forest Condition.....	28
32	1.2.2.1 Forest Units.....	28
33	1.2.2.2 Habitat Classifications.....	28
34	1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern.....	29
35	1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications.....	29
36	1.2.3 Management Considerations.....	29
37	1.2.4 Strategic Analysis.....	30
38	1.2.4.1 Introduction.....	30
39	1.2.4.2 Decision Support Systems.....	30
40	1.2.4.3 Guiding Principles and Technical Requirements.....	31
41	1.2.4.4 Base Model.....	31
42	Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield.....	32
43	Forest Dynamics – Forest Succession.....	33
44	Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance.....	33
45	Natural Benchmark.....	33
46	Strategic Silvicultural Options.....	33

1	1.2.4.5 Scoping Analysis .....	34
2	1.2.5 Determining the Desired Forest and Benefits .....	35
3	1.2.6 Forest Sustainability.....	36
4	1.2.6.1 Objectives and Indicators.....	37
5	1.2.6.2 Development of the Management Strategy.....	41
6	Available Harvest Area.....	43
7	1.2.6.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement .....	43
8	1.2.6.4 Preliminary Spatial Assessment.....	44
9	Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas .....	44
10	Spatial Assessment.....	45
11	1.2.6.5 Social and Economic Assessment.....	45
12	1.2.6.6 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability .....	46
13	1.2.7 Primary Road Corridors.....	47
14	1.2.8 Summary of the Long-Term Management Direction .....	48
15	1.2.9 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction	49
16	1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations .....	49
17	1.3.1 Introduction.....	49
18	1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction.....	49
19	1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations .....	50
20	1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas.....	50
21	1.3.3.2 Contingency Area .....	52
22	1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas .....	52
23	1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan .....	53
24	1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations.....	53
25	1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations .....	53
26	1.3.5 Prescriptions for Operations .....	54
27	1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern.....	54
28	Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide.....	55
29	Operational Prescriptions from Other Planning Exercises .....	55
30	Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team .....	55
31	1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	56
32	Silvicultural Ground Rules .....	56
33	Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest .....	57
34	Proposed Clearcuts.....	58
35	1.3.6 Roads.....	58
36	1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors.....	58
37	1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors .....	59
38	1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads.....	60
39	1.3.6.4 Operational Roads.....	61
40	1.3.6.5 Existing Roads .....	62
41	1.3.6.6 Use Management Strategies.....	63
42	1.3.7 Revenues and Expenditures .....	64
43	1.3.8 Assessment of Regeneration Success .....	64
44	1.3.9 Spatial Assessment.....	64
45	1.3.10 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction	65
46	1.3.11 Determination of Sustainability .....	65

1	1.3.12 Summary Map.....	66
2	1.3.13 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations....	67
3	1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft	
4	Forest Management Plan.....	67
5	1.4.1 Introduction.....	67
6	1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	67
7	1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	69
8	1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	69
9	1.4.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations.....	70
10	1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary.....	71
11	1.4.6 Distribution of the Draft Forest Management Plan.....	71
12	1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest	
13	Management Plan.....	71
14	1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan	
15	.....	72
16	1.5.1 Introduction.....	72
17	1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations.....	72
18	1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan	
19	Summary.....	73
20	1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan.....	73
21	1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan.....	75
22	1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management	
23	Plan.....	76
24	1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan.....	76
25	<b>2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR</b>	
26	<b>TERM.....</b>	<b>77</b>
27	2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations.....	77
28	2.1.1 Introduction.....	77
29	2.1.2 Updates.....	77
30	2.1.2.1 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee.....	77
31	2.1.2.2 Resource Stewardship Agreements.....	78
32	2.1.2.3 Background Information.....	79
33	2.1.2.4 Roads Inventory.....	79
34	2.1.2.5 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Requirements.....	80
35	2.1.2.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach.....	80
36	2.1.3 Selection of Areas of Operations.....	80
37	2.1.4 Prescriptions for Operations.....	81
38	2.1.4.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern.....	81
39	2.1.4.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas.....	81
40	2.1.5 Roads.....	82
41	2.1.5.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors.....	82
42	2.1.5.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads.....	82
43	2.1.5.3 Operational Roads.....	82
44	2.1.5.4 Existing Roads.....	83
45	2.1.6 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.....	83
46	2.1.7 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations.....	83

1	2.2	Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft	
2		Planned Operations .....	83
3	2.2.1	Introduction .....	83
4	2.2.2	Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations .....	84
5	2.2.3	Submission of the Draft Planned Operations .....	85
6	2.2.4	MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations .....	85
7	2.2.4.1	MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations .....	86
8	2.2.5	Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary .....	86
9	2.2.6	Distribution of the Draft Planned Operations .....	87
10	2.2.7	Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations .....	87
11	2.3	Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations ...	87
12	2.3.1	Introduction .....	87
13	2.3.2	Final List of Required Alterations .....	88
14	2.3.3	Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary .....	89
15	2.3.4	Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations .....	90
16	2.3.5	Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations .....	91
17	2.3.6	Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations .....	91
18	2.4	Availability of the Approved Planned Operations .....	91
19	<b>3.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>92</b>
20	3.1	Introduction .....	92
21	3.2	Local Citizens Committee .....	92
22	3.2.1	Introduction .....	92
23	3.2.2	Purpose .....	93
24	3.2.3	Membership and Organization .....	94
25	3.2.4	Terms of Reference .....	95
26	3.2.5	Administration .....	96
27	3.2.6	Reports and Records .....	96
28	3.2.7	Forest Management Plan Documentation .....	98
29	3.3	Public Consultation Requirements .....	98
30	3.3.1	Introduction .....	98
31	3.3.2	General Requirements .....	98
32	3.3.2.1	Public Notices .....	99
33		Additional Information Centres .....	100
34		Supplemental Notices .....	101
35	3.3.2.2	Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication .....	101
36	3.3.2.3	Responses to Comments .....	101
37	3.3.2.4	<i>French Language Services Act</i> .....	101
38	3.3.2.5	<i>Environmental Bill of Rights</i> .....	102
39	3.3.3	Phase I Consultation .....	102
40	3.3.3.1	Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate .....	102
41		Public Notice Requirements .....	104
42		Information and Maps Available .....	104
43	3.3.3.2	Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction	
44		.....	106
45		Public Notice Requirements .....	106
46		Information and Maps Available .....	107

1	3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations....	
2	.....	107
3	Public Notice Requirements .....	108
4	Information and Maps Available .....	109
5	3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest	
6	Management Plan.....	110
7	Public Notice Requirements .....	110
8	Information and Maps Available .....	111
9	Final List of Required Alterations .....	112
10	3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan	
11	.....	112
12	Public Notice Requirements .....	112
13	Information and Maps Available .....	113
14	3.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan .....	113
15	3.3.4 Phase II Consultation .....	113
16	3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations	114
17	Public Notice Requirements .....	114
18	Information and Maps Available .....	115
19	3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations.....	117
20	Public Notice Requirements .....	117
21	Information and Maps Available .....	118
22	Final List of Required Alterations .....	119
23	3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations	119
24	Public Notice Requirements .....	119
25	Information and Maps Available .....	120
26	3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations.....	120
27	3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment ....	120
28	3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process.....	120
29	Plan Author Stage .....	124
30	MNR District Manager Stage .....	124
31	MNR Regional Director Stage.....	125
32	3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment.....	127
33	<b>4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING</b>	
34	.....	<b>129</b>
35	4.1 Introduction.....	129
36	4.2 Planning Team .....	129
37	4.3 Local Citizens Committee .....	130
38	4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning.....	130
39	4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach.....	132
40	4.5.1 Forest Management Plans .....	132
41	4.5.1.1 Phase I Consultation .....	132
42	Stage One – Invitation to Participate .....	132
43	Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction .....	132
44	Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .....	133
45	Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan .....	133
46	Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan .....	134

1	4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation .....	134
2	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations .....	134
3	Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations .....	134
4	Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations .....	135
5	4.6 Documentation .....	135
6	4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report .....	135
7	4.6.2 Social and Economic Description .....	136
8	4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values .....	136
9	4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement .....	137

10

11

12

### **LIST OF FIGURES**

13

14	Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Production of a Forest Management Plan .....	9
15	Figure A-2: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage One .....	11
16	Figure A-3: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Two .....	26
17	Figure A-4: Long-Term Management Direction .....	27
18	Figure A-5: Indicators of Objective Achievement .....	39
19	Figure A-6: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Three .....	51
20	Figure A-7: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Four .....	68
21	Figure A-8: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Five .....	74
22	Figure A-9: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage One .....	78
23	Figure A-10: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Two .....	84
24	Figure A-11: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Three .....	88
25	Figure A-12: Overview of Phase I Public Consultation .....	103
26	Figure A-13: Overview of Phase II Public Consultation .....	114
27	Figure A-14: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning .....	122
28	Figure A-15: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning .....	123



1 **PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**

2  
3 Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management plan.  
4 Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the ten-year forest management plan  
5 (Phase I). Section 2.0 describes the requirements for preparing the planned operations for the  
6 second five-year term (Phase II). Section 3.0 describes public consultation requirements for  
7 both Phase I and Phase II planning. Section 4.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal  
8 involvement in forest management planning.

9  
10 The forest management plan (FMP) tables referenced in Part A are included in Part B,  
11 Section 9.0.

12  
13  
14 **Phase-in Provisions**

15  
16 All forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007 will be prepared in  
17 accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's*  
18 *Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, except for the following:

19  
20 For forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007, for any  
21 request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is  
22 received after the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the  
23 requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 will apply.

24  
25 For forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2007, any issue  
26 resolution which has commenced prior to the effective date of this *Forest*  
27 *Management Planning Manual*, will be conducted in accordance with the  
28 requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown*  
29 *Forests*, dated September 1996.

30  
31 Within six months from the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning*  
32 *Manual*, MNR District Managers will ensure the local citizens committee  
33 membership and organization requirements described in Part A, Section 1.1.3 and  
34 3.2.3, are met.

35  
36 Upon the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the  
37 requirements of Part A, Section 1.4.6 and 1.5.5 will apply to all draft and MNR-  
38 approved forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest*  
39 *Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996.

## 1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

Forest management plans must be prepared in accordance with the planning requirements described in this manual for each management unit in Ontario, within the area of the undertaking. The management unit boundaries as of April 1, 2004 for the area of the undertaking are depicted on the map in Appendix I of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

A forest management plan will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by MNR or by an organization authorized by MNR. Forest management plans will be prepared for a ten-year period and will normally be renewed every ten years. The preparation of the plan occurs in two phases. The strategic, long-term planning and the planning of the first five years of operations occur during Phase I. Phase I planning has five stages of consultation. Phase II planning has three stages of consultation and involves the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.0).

The preparation, review and approval of the ten-year forest management plan takes about 21 months. The timetable for the production of a forest management plan, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1.

Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be gathered and/or prepared to be available for Stage One of consultation.

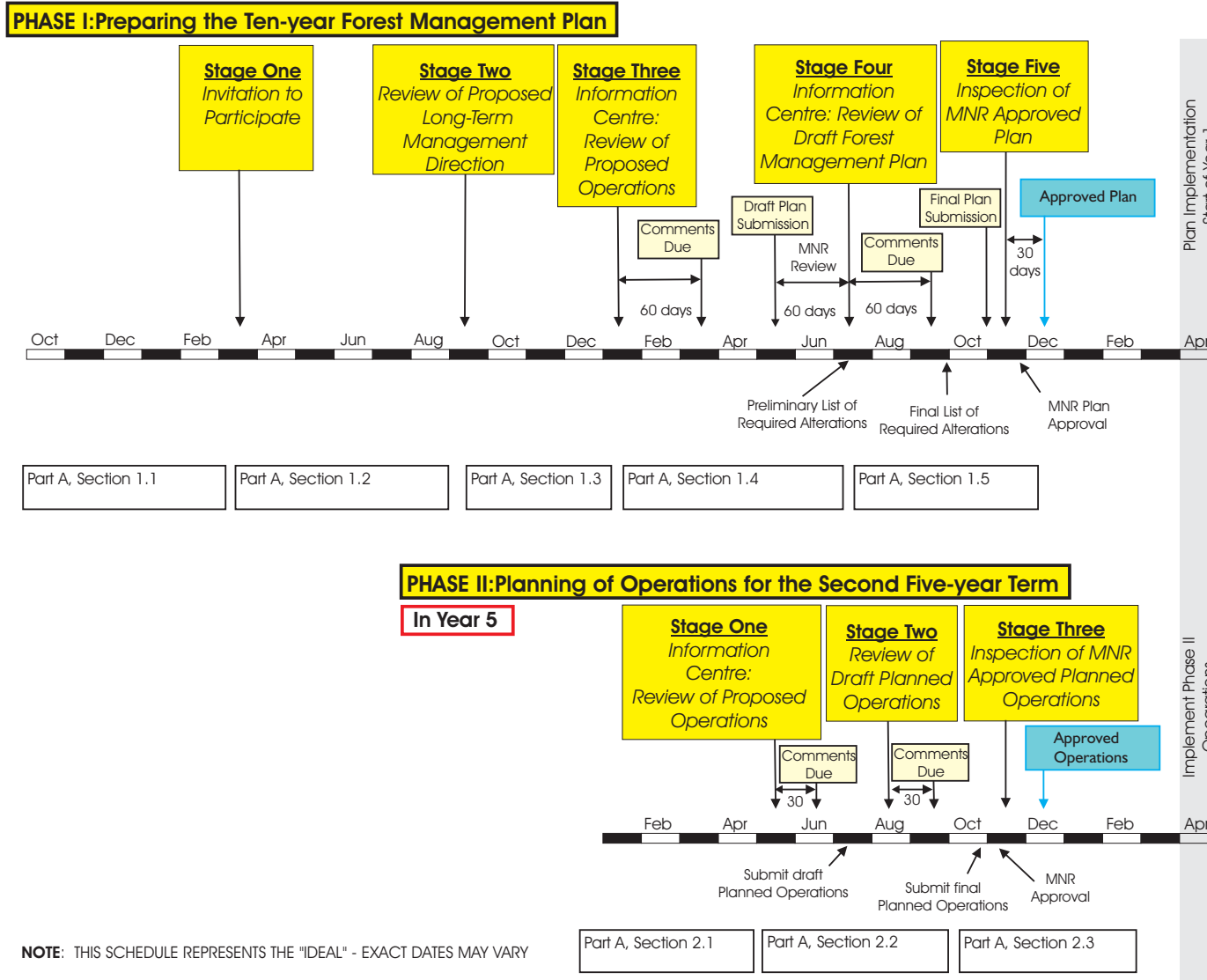
Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the long-term management direction, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Two of consultation.

Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for harvest, renewal and tending for the ten-year period and the process for operational planning for the first five-year term. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing the draft plan, submitting the draft plan to MNR, and the requirements for MNR's review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that must be available for Stage Four of consultation.

Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval and the products to be available for Stage Five of consultation.

1 **Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Production of a Forest Management Plan**



2

1 **1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning**

2  
3 1.1.1 Introduction

4  
5 This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the  
6 assembly of background information, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation  
7 (Part A, Section 3.3.3.1). Figure A-2 provides an overview of these requirements in the  
8 context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

9  
10 The information and products described in this section will be available when the notice  
11 inviting the public to participate in the development of the forest management plan is issued  
12 at Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.1).

13  
14  
15 1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

16  
17 A description of the management unit responsibilities for the management unit will be  
18 prepared. It will include responsibilities of MNR, the sustainable forest licensee, and other  
19 forest companies, if applicable.

20  
21  
22 1.1.2 Planning Team

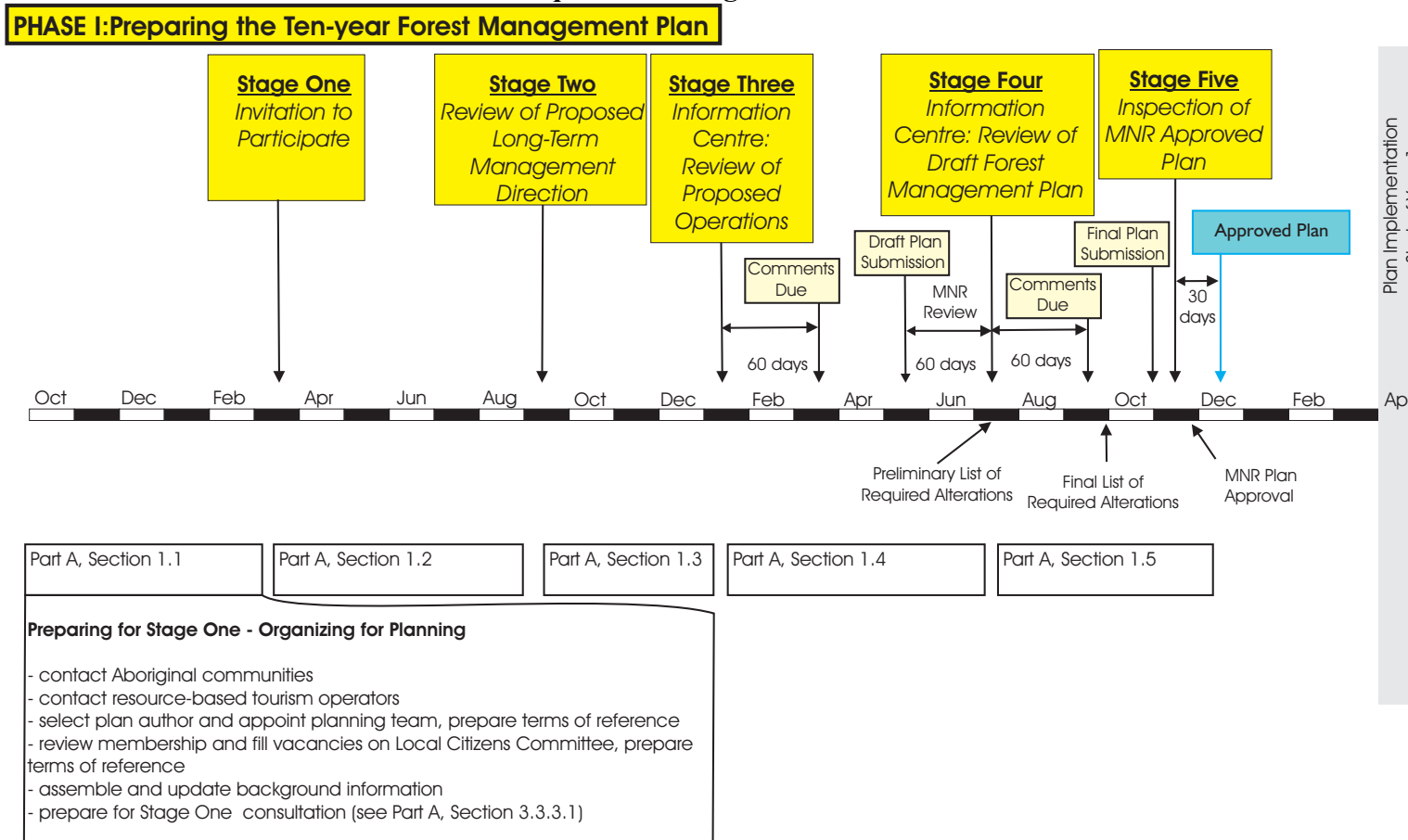
23  
24 A forest management plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an  
25 interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens committee. In addition, advisors play a  
26 role in providing advice and support on particular subject areas during plan production.

27  
28 The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licensed under the *Professional*  
29 *Foresters Act, 2000*. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest  
30 licensee, the organization will select the plan author. If the plan is prepared by MNR, the  
31 MNR District Manager will select the plan author.

32  
33 The MNR District Manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a  
34 working body, with all members participating in plan production. The team will normally  
35 include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and  
36 wildlife, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire  
37 management, inventory and analysis, enforcement and Aboriginal involvement. The level of  
38 participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise.  
39 Ideally, planning team members will be familiar with the management unit. The planning  
40 team must include a registered professional forester employed by MNR.

41  
42 The local citizens committee may nominate one of its members to serve on the planning team  
43 (Part A, Section 3.2.2). In addition, when applicable and where possible, the MNR District  
44 Manager will invite a person who collectively represents overlapping licensees and  
45 beneficiaries of MNR wood supply commitments who do not have ownership in the

1 **Figure A-2: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage One**



2

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

1 company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management unit to participate on the  
2 planning team.

3  
4 The MNR District Manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each Aboriginal  
5 community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be  
6 affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan, to participate  
7 on the planning team (Part A, Section 4.2).

8  
9 The MNR District Manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the  
10 planning team requires organizational and facilitation skills and ensures the planning team  
11 members adhere to responsibilities and deadlines, as outlined in the terms of reference (Part  
12 A, Section 1.1.2.1). The chair of the planning team may be the plan author, an official of the  
13 sustainable forest licensee, or an MNR district employee.

14  
15 The MNR District Manager may invite representatives from Ontario Parks, MNR Science  
16 and Information Branch, and MNR's regional and main office to act as advisors to the  
17 planning team and/or plan reviewers. The MNR District Manager will also consult with other  
18 government ministries or agencies to determine whether those organizations have specific  
19 interests that will be addressed in the forest management plan. If they do, representatives of  
20 those organizations will be invited to act as advisors to the planning team. For example,  
21 where applicable, local Municipal Economic Development Officers, the Ministry of Northern  
22 Development and Mines, the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation and the Ministry of Culture  
23 will be contacted, and invited to provide advisors to the planning team. This advisory role is  
24 available to any provincial government ministry or agency, including those agencies  
25 responsible for Aboriginal affairs. Representatives from the Ministry of the Environment  
26 may attend planning team meetings at their discretion.

27  
28 The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee, may choose  
29 to have a steering committee for the production of the forest management plan. The steering  
30 committee will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee and the  
31 MNR District Manager. The steering committee will have the authority to resolve resourcing  
32 issues and disagreements among planning team members. If a steering committee is not  
33 established, the MNR District Manager will resolve resourcing issues and disagreements  
34 among planning team members.

#### 35 36 37 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

38  
39 The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of reference  
40 for the production of the forest management plan, including the roles and responsibilities of  
41 planning team members and a schedule for plan production. If there are interests that are not  
42 represented on the planning team, the MNR District Manager may assign responsibilities to  
43 specific planning team members to represent those interests.

1 The terms of reference will contain:

- 2
- 3 (a) for those management units that choose to have a steering committee, the
- 4 roles and responsibilities of the committee, and the names and affiliations of
- 5 the steering committee members;
- 6 (b) the names of the plan author, planning team members, the chair, MNR
- 7 advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies
- 8 and municipalities) and MNR plan reviewers;
- 9 (c) a list of the analysis tools that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in
- 10 which they will be used. Analysis tools to be used for any of the following
- 11 tasks must be authorized by the Director of MNR's Forest Management
- 12 Branch prior to the approval of the terms of reference:
- 13 (i) projection of forest conditions through time;
- 14 (ii) analysis of management strategies;
- 15 (iii) determination of the available harvest area;
- 16 (iv) determination of the required types and levels of silvicultural
- 17 activities; and
- 18 (v) assessment of sustainability;
- 19 (d) identification of issues that may affect the schedule for plan production;
- 20 (e) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members,
- 21 including the involvement of the MNR District Manager and/or the steering
- 22 committee;
- 23 (f) the roles, responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member,
- 24 with deadlines for production. Planning team members will acknowledge their
- 25 roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the terms of reference. All of
- 26 the tasks for the production of the plan will be itemized, including
- 27 responsibilities for:
- 28 (i) who will be the liaison with Aboriginal communities;
- 29 (ii) who will be the liaison with licensed resource-based tourist operators
- 30 with resource stewardship agreements;
- 31 (iii) who will be the contact for the local citizens committee;
- 32 (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;
- 33 (v) who will be responsible for updating MNR's mailing list, the
- 34 preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;
- 35 (vi) who will be required to attend information centres;
- 36 (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g.,
- 37 the social and economic description, maps) in the production of the
- 38 forest management plan;
- 39 (viii) who will participate in the development of the long-term management
- 40 direction, and which tasks they will be responsible for;
- 41 (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the
- 42 forest management plan; and
- 43 (x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental*
- 44 *Values* briefing note (Part B, Section 1.0);
- 45 (g) a schedule for plan production, including MNR review and approval;

- 1 (h) a schedule for progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be  
2 responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required  
3 information (Part A, Section 1.1.5);
- 4 (i) a schedule for formal public consultation;
- 5 (j) for each stage of the formal public consultation process, identification of the  
6 responsibility for issuing the public notice, and, where applicable, the  
7 supplemental notice (e.g., MNR and/or sustainable forest licensee and/or local  
8 citizens committee);
- 9 (k) identification of the number of copies of the draft and approved forest  
10 management plan and plan summary that are required, the format of those  
11 copies (e.g., paper, digital), and who is responsible for distribution of the  
12 copies;
- 13 (l) the roles and responsibilities of MNR plan reviewers, including designation of  
14 a coordinator for the lists of required alterations;
- 15 (m) a communications plan, which outlines the costs, timing and responsibilities  
16 for communications efforts, including French and Aboriginal translation,  
17 mailings, information centres and printing; and
- 18 (n) the MNR funding requirements to support plan production.

19  
20 The terms of reference will contain sufficient detail to enable the MNR District Manager and  
21 the MNR Regional Director to understand MNR's staffing and funding requirements.

22  
23 The terms of reference must be approved by the MNR District Manager and the MNR  
24 Regional Director in order to proceed with planning. The terms of reference will be approved  
25 prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process. A senior  
26 official from the plan author's organization must sign the draft terms of reference to  
27 acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on  
28 the planning team.

29  
30 The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the District Manager for review at least 60  
31 days before issuing the first public notice. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional  
32 Director will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15 days. If changes  
33 are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning  
34 team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final  
35 version to the MNR District Manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction  
36 of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign and approve the terms of  
37 reference, and forward it to the MNR Regional Director for approval. The MNR Regional  
38 Director will send a letter of approval to the MNR District Manager and the senior official of  
39 the organization responsible for preparation of the forest management plan, after the approval  
40 has been given.

41  
42 Throughout the planning process, the terms of reference will be updated to reflect changes to  
43 the production schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities.  
44 Changes to the production schedule must be forwarded to the MNR District Manager and  
45 MNR Regional Director for their information.



1 The terms of reference will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest  
2 management plan.

### 3 4 5 1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee 6

7 A local citizens committee must be in place to assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary  
8 planning team during the production of the forest management plan. Normally, the  
9 committee will already be in place. This committee may be established for the particular  
10 management unit for which the forest management plan is being prepared, or it may be an  
11 MNR district committee established to assist in the production of forest management plans  
12 for all management units in the district. For some management units, the MNR District  
13 Manager may establish additional local citizens committees or sub-committees. The role of  
14 the local citizens committee in the production and implementation of the forest management  
15 plan is described in detail in Part A, Section 3.2.

16  
17 Prior to commencing the production of a new forest management plan, the MNR District  
18 Manager will review the membership of the local citizens committee and fill any vacancies.  
19 The review of the membership will ensure that a range and balance of interests is represented  
20 on the committee. New members will be appointed by the MNR District Manager, normally  
21 drawing from nominations provided by local interest groups.  
22

23 When the membership of the local citizens committee has been confirmed, the committee  
24 may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team (Part A, Section  
25 1.1.2). The local citizens committee, with assistance from MNR and the plan author, will  
26 prepare terms of reference for the committee, as described in Part A, Section 3.2.4.  
27

28 Prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process, MNR will  
29 provide a summary of the background information for the management unit (Part A, Section  
30 1.1.7) to the local citizens committee. The MNR District Manager will ensure that training  
31 material regarding roles and responsibilities and general forest management planning matters  
32 is available to the local citizens committee.  
33  
34

### 35 1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements 36

37 The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement between  
38 the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development of resource  
39 stewardship agreements and related matters.  
40

41 To initiate the development of an resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest  
42 licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to  
43 the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and  
44 implementation of the forest management plan. An up-to-date list of licensed resource-based  
45 tourism operators with facilities on the management unit, and licensed resource-based

1 tourism operators without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit,  
2 will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation.

3  
4 MNR will ensure that the parties are aware of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal  
5 communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship  
6 agreement related to forest management activities.

7  
8 MNR's forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism values  
9 provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions related to  
10 forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The prescriptions  
11 developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by the public and  
12 Aboriginal communities during the production of the forest management plan.

#### 13 14 15 1.1.5 Progress Checkpoints

16  
17 Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development of the long-term management  
18 direction of a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team  
19 members and advisors, as identified in the planning team terms of reference, must confirm  
20 the satisfactory completion of the required information for each progress checkpoint and  
21 document their support, in order to proceed with planning. The MNR District Manager will  
22 resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of the required information.

23  
24 The progress checkpoints are:

- 25  
26 (a) Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5);  
27 (b) Forest Units and Habitat Classifications (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1 and 1.2.2.2);  
28 (c) Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4);  
29 (d) Scoping Analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5);  
30 (e) Management Strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2); and  
31 (f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A,  
32 Section 1.3.2).

33  
34 The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a) through  
35 (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The MNR Regional  
36 Director's preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction will confirm the  
37 satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

38  
39 The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms  
40 of reference.

41  
42 During the development of the long-term management direction, previous steps and progress  
43 checkpoints in the planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or  
44 corrected information is available.

1 1.1.6 Analysis Package  
2

3 The analysis package documents the information, assumptions, and decisions made during  
4 the analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management direction  
5 (Part A, Section 1.2), and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The  
6 analysis package will be updated throughout the planning process, and will facilitate  
7 transparent and repeatable decision-making. Appendix III outlines the required contents of  
8 the analysis package, which will be included in the supplementary documentation of the  
9 forest management plan.

10  
11  
12 1.1.7 Assembly and Update of Background Information  
13

14 The planning team will assemble and update the background information that will be used in  
15 the preparation of the forest management plan. The background information that will be  
16 available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit.  
17 Publication of information on some natural resource features, land uses and values may be  
18 detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly  
19 available.

20  
21 The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation  
22 includes:

- 23  
24 (a) sources of direction;  
25 (b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNR;  
26 (c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are  
27 scheduled for implementation;  
28 (d) management unit annual reports, and any previous reports of past forest  
29 operations;  
30 (e) forest resource inventory;  
31 (f) fisheries and wildlife inventories;  
32 (g) other resource inventories and information, including cultural heritage  
33 resource inventory information, mineral resource assessment maps and ecosite  
34 information;  
35 (h) updated values maps and a resource-based tourism values map;  
36 (i) roads inventory;  
37 (j) a social and economic description;  
38 (k) information on the historic forest condition; and  
39 (l) the current Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section  
40 4.6.1).  
41  
42

43 1.1.7.1 Sources of Direction  
44

45 *The Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, and the decision of the Environmental Assessment  
46 Board on MNR's *Class EA for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario*, as amended

1 and extended by *Declaration Order MNR-71 Regarding the Ministry of Natural Resources*  
2 *Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in*  
3 *Ontario* and its conditions under the *Environmental Assessment Act*, provide legal direction  
4 for the management of Ontario's Crown forests.

5  
6 The MNR District Manager, with the assistance of MNR regional staff, will ensure that  
7 copies of the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are  
8 available to the planning team and the local citizens committee at the outset of planning.  
9 Those sources of direction include:

- 10  
11 (a) MNR's provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource  
12 management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the  
13 *Statement of Environmental Values* for the Ministry of Natural Resources,  
14 MNR's corporate long-term strategic policy (e.g., *Beyond 2000*), *Policy*  
15 *Framework for Sustainable Forests*, *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*, and  
16 MNR resource management policies (e.g., *Ontario Provincial Parks:*  
17 *Planning and Management Policies*, *Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown*  
18 *Forests*);  
19 (b) Crown land use direction contained in *Ontario's Living Legacy Land Use*  
20 *Strategy* and Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or their successors;  
21 (c) the existing approved forest management plan for the management unit, with  
22 particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;  
23 (d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., district fisheries  
24 management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation  
25 interest) that are relevant to the management unit;  
26 (e) independent forest audits and the related action plans for the management  
27 unit;  
28 (f) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from provincial and regional  
29 wood supply strategy documents;  
30 (g) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses  
31 dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;  
32 (h) the results of the negotiations between MNR and Aboriginal communities;  
33 and  
34 (i) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding  
35 resource use on the management unit).

36  
37  
38 1.1.7.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

39  
40 Copies of any audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management  
41 generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management, State of the  
42 Forest Report) will be assembled by the planning team.

1 1.1.7.3 Forest Management Guides

2  
3 MNR's current, approved forest management guides must be used in the planning and  
4 implementation of forest management activities. The relevant guides for the management  
5 unit will be assembled by the planning team.

6  
7 Forest management guides, formerly referred to as implementation manuals, are described in  
8 the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual*, and include provincial guidelines,  
9 construction or operational manuals, and resource or environmental manuals. The use of  
10 provincial guides and construction or operational manuals is mandatory in forest  
11 management. Resource or environmental manuals are used in the development of forest  
12 management strategies and prescriptions for specific values, when those values are at risk or  
13 are featured for management on the management unit.

14  
15 A list of guides that are applicable to the management unit, as determined by the MNR  
16 District Manager, will be prepared. The list will contain the titles and the specific editions of  
17 the guides.

18  
19  
20 1.1.7.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

21  
22 The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available  
23 for use in the preparation of the forest management plan. The year seven management unit  
24 annual report for the current forest management plan and the year ten management unit  
25 annual report for the previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for  
26 the previous 15 years, will also be available. In particular, the review of renewal and tending  
27 activities, conclusions and recommendations in the year seven management unit annual  
28 report will provide important information for confirming or changing the long-term  
29 management direction.

30  
31  
32 1.1.7.5 Planning Inventory

33  
34 The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest  
35 management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and forest diversity  
36 analyses. The planning inventory contains updated Forest Resource Inventory information as  
37 a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning inventory also  
38 contains expected changes, based on planned operations from the current approved forest  
39 management plan (i.e., forest operations which have not yet been implemented).

40  
41 Preparation of the planning inventory will begin at least six months prior to issuing the first  
42 public notice of the formal public consultation process. The detailed technical requirements,  
43 responsibility and timing for production and submission of the planning inventory are  
44 described in the *Forest Information Manual*.

1 The Forest Resource Inventory information should not be older than 25 years. If the  
2 inventory information will reach 20 years of age during the period of a forest management  
3 plan, a strategy for re-inventory of the productive forest area must be developed. The detailed  
4 requirements for re-inventory are described in the *Forest Information Manual*.

5  
6 The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making in  
7 the forest management plan. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is  
8 categorized as areas managed for timber production and other areas.

9  
10 The other areas include national and provincial parks and protected areas, and areas that have  
11 been designated through legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for  
12 timber production. The areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown  
13 forest lands.

14  
15 The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement of  
16 non-timber objectives in the forest management plan. For the planning team to consider parks  
17 and protected areas on the management unit in the achievement of management objectives,  
18 forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

19  
20 A management unit land summary will be documented in FMP-1. A summary of the Crown  
21 productive forest, by provincial forest type, will be documented in FMP-2.

## 22 23 24 **CHECKPOINT: PLANNING INVENTORY COMPLETE AND ACCURATE**

### 25 26 27 1.1.7.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information

28  
29 Fisheries and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for  
30 use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values maps, and the  
31 development of management objectives for the forest.

32  
33 Fisheries and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

- 34
- 35 (a) known fish species present, and known fish habitats (e.g., spawning areas);
  - 36 (b) the slope of shoreland areas;
  - 37 (c) known sites of occurrence of, and/or high value habitat for, fish and wildlife  
38 species listed as threatened or endangered;
  - 39 (d) known sites of occurrence of fish and wildlife species of special concern  
40 (formerly known as vulnerable or rare species);
  - 41 (e) areas of present or future value as habitat for provincially featured wildlife  
42 species, which include moose, deer, caribou, marten and pileated woodpecker;  
43 and
  - 44 (f) known sites of occurrence of, and/or areas of present or future value as habitat  
45 for, fish and wildlife species of local concern (locally featured species).

1 Sources for fisheries information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat surveys.  
2 Sources for wildlife information on known sites of occurrence, and areas of present or future  
3 value as wildlife habitat, include moose, deer and caribou population and habitat surveys.  
4 MNR's Natural Heritage Information Centre is a source of information on species of fish and  
5 wildlife listed as endangered or threatened, and species of special concern. Areas of present  
6 or future value as habitat for selected species of fish and wildlife can be derived from the  
7 Forest Resource Inventory data, and through the use of analytical tools for forest modeling.

#### 10 1.1.7.7 Other Resource Inventories and Information

11  
12 Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for use  
13 in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values maps, and the  
14 development of management objectives for the forest.

15  
16 The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

- 17  
18 (a) known sites of occurrence of, and/or high value habitat for, species of flora  
19 listed as threatened or endangered;  
20 (b) known sites of occurrence of flora identified as species of special concern  
21 (formerly known as vulnerable or rare species);  
22 (c) known sites of occurrence of, and/or areas of present or future value as habitat  
23 for, flora of local concern (locally significant flora);  
24 (d) information on each park and protected area, including the name, designation  
25 (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g. wilderness, recreation)  
26 and area (in hectares);  
27 (e) cultural heritage resource inventory information, including:  
28 (i) known cultural heritage sites and features;  
29 (ii) Aboriginal cultural heritage resource information; and  
30 (iii) areas of high archaeological potential;  
31 (f) mineral resource assessment maps; and  
32 (g) ecosite information, based on the forest ecosystem classification system for  
33 the province.

34  
35 MNR's Natural Heritage Information Centre is a source of information on species of flora  
36 listed as endangered or threatened, and species of special concern. Areas of present or future  
37 value as habitat for selected species of flora can be derived from the Forest Resource  
38 Inventory data, and through the use of analytical tools for forest modeling. Areas of high  
39 archaeological potential can be derived through the use of analytical tools for archaeological  
40 predictive modeling. Mineral resource assessment information is available from the Ministry  
41 of Northern Development and Mines.

1 1.1.7.8 Values Maps  
2

3 For each forest management plan, MNR will produce a values map, or series of maps, for the  
4 management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Information Manual*.

5 The values maps provide a summary of the geographical location(s) of known natural  
6 resource features, land uses and values for the management unit, including parks and  
7 protected areas on the management unit, which will be considered in forest management  
8 planning, and about which further inventory information is available. The values maps are  
9 intended to be used primarily as background information for planning, and will also be used  
10 for display purposes and to solicit additional information about natural resource features,  
11 land uses and values. The types of information normally portrayed on the values maps are  
12 listed in Appendix V and the *Forest Information Manual*.

13  
14 The values maps will be continually updated as information is assembled during the  
15 production and implementation of the forest management plan. MNR will update and provide  
16 the most current, relevant information available on natural resource features, land uses and  
17 values, including cultural resource sites and features, for use in forest management planning.  
18 Information on natural resource features, land uses and values will be generally available to  
19 the public. When publication of the location of particular natural resource features, land uses  
20 and values may be detrimental to their conservation, they will not be portrayed on the values  
21 maps.

22  
23 The values maps will be accompanied by text that includes:

- 24  
25 (a) a list of information normally portrayed on the values maps;  
26 (b) a list of references to the sources of information on the values maps or  
27 otherwise available in the database;  
28 (c) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and  
29 (d) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being  
30 incomplete or missing.

31  
32 The scales of the values maps, and the symbols used for commonly mapped items, are  
33 described in the *Forest Information Manual*.

34  
35 With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white pine  
36 forest communities, as defined in the *Old Growth Definitions Report*, will be identified on  
37 the values maps for the management unit.

38  
39 A separate values map for resource-based tourism values will be produced by MNR to  
40 support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4).

41  
42 The values maps will be maintained at the appropriate MNR area or district office. The most  
43 up-to-date versions of the values maps will be available for public distribution, upon request,  
44 at the time the first public notice of the formal public consultation process is issued.



1 1.1.7.9 Roads Inventory

2  
3 The planning team will assemble information on existing roads on the management unit,  
4 using the most up-to-date information available. The information will include existing  
5 information on the location, responsibility assignment and use management strategy for each  
6 road or road network.

7  
8 Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the values maps  
9 (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8). Primary roads, and roads that are the responsibility of the  
10 sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also identify roads with  
11 access restrictions.

12  
13  
14 1.1.7.10 Social and Economic Description

15  
16 A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using available  
17 information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix IV. The social and economic  
18 description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

- 19  
20 (a) communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest  
21 products from the management unit, and communities that have substantial  
22 employment related to the forest industry;  
23 (b) forest resource-processing facilities; and  
24 (c) the primary uses and users of the forest.

25  
26 The description will be considered in the development of the long-term management  
27 direction, and the planning of forest operations.

28  
29 As part of the social and economic description, a demographic profile will be prepared for  
30 each community that receives substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest products  
31 from the management unit, and communities that have substantial employment related to the  
32 forest industry.

33  
34 A demographic profile will also be prepared for each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to  
35 the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest  
36 management activities, if appropriate demographic data is available. The MNR planning  
37 team representative, who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will contact each  
38 Aboriginal community to invite the community to provide, verify and update information for  
39 the demographic profile.

40  
41 Planning team advisors, in particular the Municipal Economic Development Officers and  
42 Northern Development Officers from the Ministry of Northern Development and Mines, may  
43 provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. Forest users  
44 may also provide some of the information.

1 1.1.7.11 Historic Forest Condition

2  
3 A summary of the historic forest condition for the management unit will be prepared, based  
4 on historical management unit information. The summary will describe the forest that existed  
5 prior to the industrial use of the forest, based on available information, and subsequent  
6 human activities, developments and natural processes that have resulted in the current forest  
7 condition.

8  
9 The summary of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the long-  
10 term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition  
11 will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest  
12 management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information  
13 will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of  
14 forest resources from the management unit.

15  
16 Sources of historical management unit information include early land survey records, fire  
17 history records, old Forest Resource Inventories, old timber cruise surveys and knowledge  
18 from local residents. During the production of the forest management plan, the public may  
19 contribute additional historical management unit information.

20  
21 The summary of the historic forest condition for the management unit will address:

- 22  
23 (a) historical use of forest resources;  
24 (b) historical development of access;  
25 (c) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and  
26 (d) changes to the forest, including:  
27 (i) forest type, structure and composition;  
28 (ii) forest landscape pattern;  
29 (iii) forest productivity;  
30 (iv) populations of flora and fauna;  
31 (v) wildlife habitat; and  
32 (vi) forest biodiversity.

33  
34 The summary will also include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human  
35 activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the  
36 associated management implications.

37  
38  
39 1.1.8 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community

40  
41 At least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process, the  
42 MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the  
43 management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and  
44 implementation of a forest management plan, to discuss the development of a consultation  
45 approach for forest management planning with the community. A follow-up letter will be

1 sent to each Aboriginal community, and copies will be provided to the Aboriginal  
2 organization(s) and/or Tribal Council(s) associated with each community.

3  
4 Within 30 days of the MNR District Manager’s contact, the MNR planning team  
5 representative who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will follow-up with each  
6 Aboriginal community to discuss the community’s interest in developing an approach.

7  
8 Part A, Section 4.4 describes the requirements for the development of the consultation  
9 approach.

#### 10 11 12 1.1.9 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate

13  
14 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
15 commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
16 3.3.3.1, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
17 4.4.

### 18 19 20 **1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction**

#### 21 22 1.2.1 Introduction

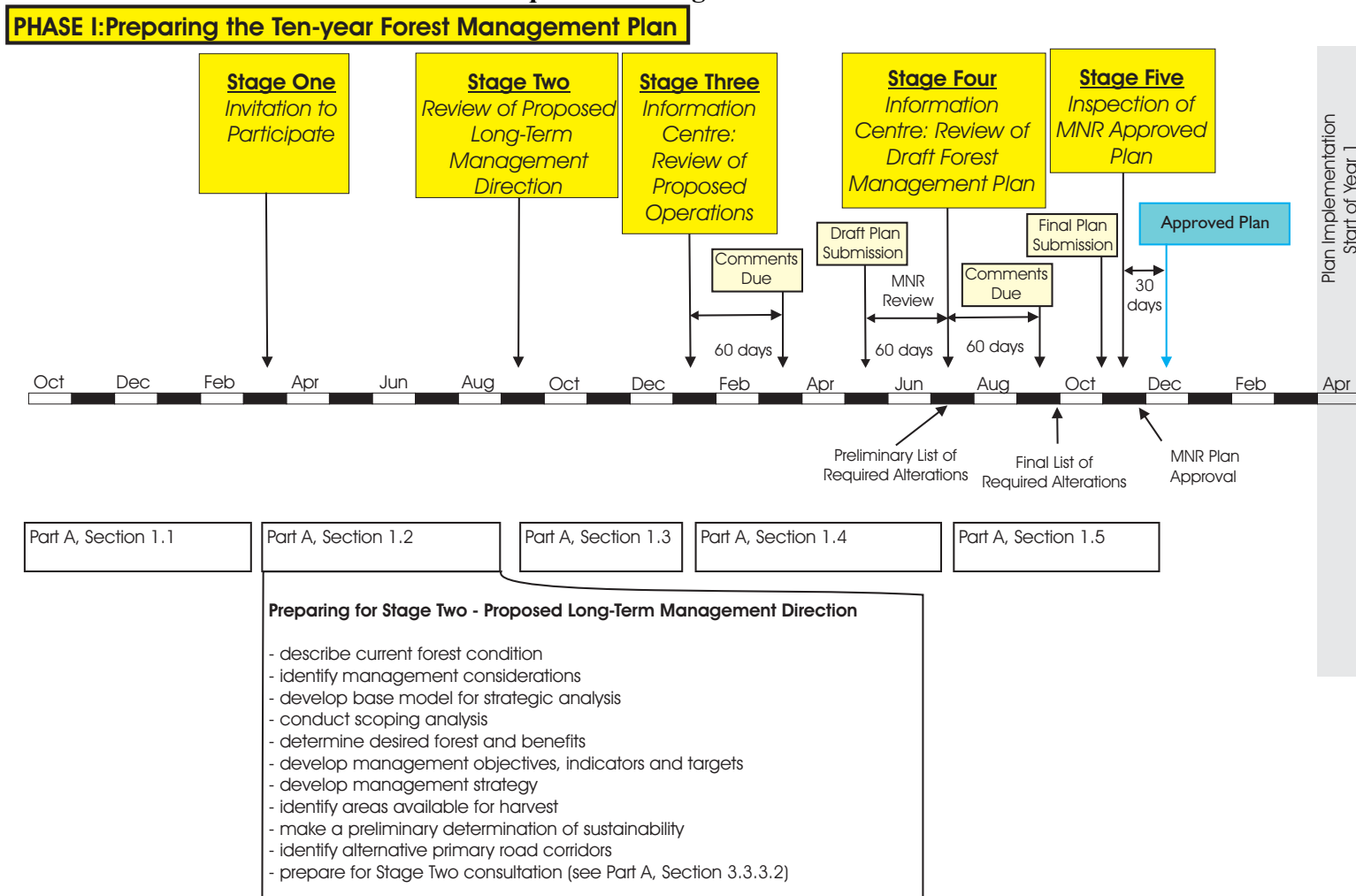
23  
24 This section describes the requirements for the development of the long-term management  
25 direction for the management unit, in preparation for Stage Two of public consultation (Part  
26 A, Section 3.3.3.2). Figure A-3 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of  
27 the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

28  
29 In addition to the most current versions of the information and products which were available  
30 at Stage One of public consultation, the information and products described in this section  
31 will be available during the review of the proposed long-term management direction (Part A,  
32 Section 3.3.3.2).

33  
34 The long-term management direction for the management unit provides direction for the  
35 levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities required to achieve the desired forest  
36 and benefits. In the development of the long-term management direction, management  
37 objectives are identified, and analytical methodologies, models and tools regarding forest  
38 regulation, social and economic assessment, wildlife habitat supply and landscape  
39 management, are used. A management strategy will be developed that balances the  
40 achievement of management objectives over time. The level of forest harvest is established  
41 for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, using forest regulation methodologies,  
42 models and tools that determine the available harvest area for every forest unit on the  
43 management unit.

44  
45 The development of the long-term management direction for the forest is an iterative process.  
46 The desired benefit levels and forest management approaches are modified in response to

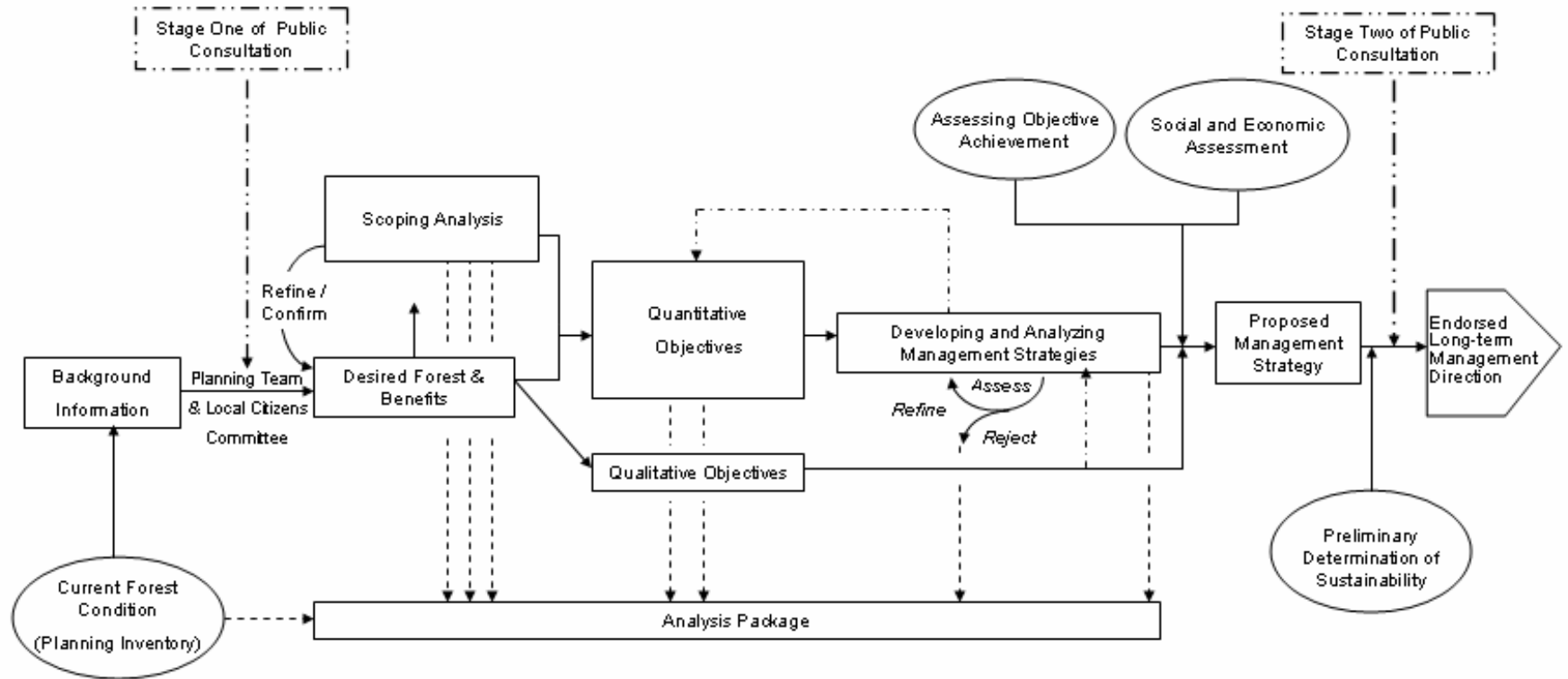
1 **Figure A-3: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Two**



2

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

1 **Figure A-4: Long-Term Management Direction**



2

1 preliminary and subsequent analyses undertaken during the development of the long-term  
2 management direction. The long-term management direction will be consistent with  
3 legislation, policy and direction in forest management guides, will balance social, economic  
4 and environmental considerations, and will provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest  
5 on the management unit.  
6  
7

## 8 1.2.2 Current Forest Condition 9

10 A description of the forest, based on the planning inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5) and  
11 landscape level information is required to provide base line information for the development  
12 of a management strategy to achieve the desired forest condition. This section describes the  
13 ways the current forest is classified and described in terms of forest units, habitat  
14 classifications, forest landscape pattern and other forest classifications.  
15  
16

### 17 1.2.2.1 Forest Units 18

19 Forest units are defined for each management unit and may be based on regional forest units.  
20 Unlike the provincial forest types that have standard definitions, forest unit definitions are  
21 flexible at the management unit level to address local issues and forest conditions. The forest  
22 units will, however, be compatible with provincial forest types.  
23

24 Forest unit classification applies to the entire Crown forest on the management unit, not just  
25 the portion of the production forest land area available for timber production. This enables  
26 the entire Crown forest to contribute to specific, non-timber management objectives (e.g.,  
27 biodiversity).  
28

29 The managed category of the Crown forest for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5)  
30 is further categorized as available or unavailable for timber production. Managed areas  
31 categorized as unavailable for timber production include areas of past or anticipated reserve  
32 prescriptions for areas of concern, and areas classified as protection forest.  
33

34 The managed Crown productive forest by forest unit is summarized in FMP-4.  
35  
36

### 37 1.2.2.2 Habitat Classifications 38

39 Classifications associated with broad habitat types are generally defined regionally, although  
40 they can be modified at the management unit level to address local forest conditions. Forest  
41 stands will be classified into broad habitat types based on their characteristics as described in  
42 the planning inventory.  
43

44 The selected wildlife species for which habitat will be addressed in the forest management  
45 plan, will be identified and will include provincial and locally featured species. A description  
46 of the current status of the habitat of the identified species will be available for determining

1 the desired forest and benefits. Where applicable, the planning team will also provide maps  
2 which show the spatial arrangement of habitats of special interest, such as deer and moose  
3 range within a management unit, deer yards, marten core areas, and caribou winter habitat.  
4 Any conclusions about the distribution and abundance of habitat types that would influence  
5 management direction, will also be available.  
6  
7

## 8 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR FOREST UNITS AND HABITAT** 9 **CLASSIFICATIONS**

### 10 11 12 1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern

13  
14 Forest landscape patterns are the result of natural disturbances and the harvest and retention  
15 of forest stands. The selection of forest stands for harvest will be planned in consideration of  
16 the current forest landscape patterns and the desired landscape patterns, in accordance with  
17 MNR's approved forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance  
18 patterns.  
19

20 The current forest landscape patterns will be described and mapped. The maps and  
21 supporting documentation of the current landscape patterns will be available to support  
22 discussions of the desired forest and benefits. The classifications and methodology used to  
23 describe and map the forest landscape patterns will also be available.  
24  
25

### 26 1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

27  
28 There may be a need for other forest classifications based on forest cover as well as  
29 classifications required for the implementation of a forest management guide (e.g., forest  
30 ecosystem classification, caribou mosaic). The rationale for use of other forest classifications  
31 and any conclusions about management, will be available to support discussions of desired  
32 forest and benefits (Part A, Section 1.2.5).  
33  
34

### 35 1.2.3 Management Considerations

36  
37 There are considerations about the management of the forest, not easily addressed with  
38 normal practices and application of forest management guides, which can affect the long-  
39 term management direction. Examples of management considerations include:  
40

- 41 (a) major changes in landbase
- 42 (b) recent, large natural disturbances;
- 43 (c) harvest plans in previously unaccessed tourism areas;
- 44 (d) Aboriginal interests;
- 45 (e) shifts in markets or utilization;
- 46 (f) other planning initiatives;

- 1 (g) funding for silviculture; and  
2 (h) recent, or anticipated, insect pest infestations or tree diseases likely to be a  
3 problem during the ten-year period of the forest management plan.  
4

5 Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current  
6 forest management plan, or are anticipated to affect the development of the forest  
7 management plan. Annual reports provide updates on plan implementation and highlight  
8 problems, issues and opportunities from the previous plan(s) for confirming or changing  
9 current management direction.

10  
11 Other sources of information about management considerations include independent forest  
12 audits and the associated approved action plans for the management unit, the values maps,  
13 the Aboriginal Background Information Report, and submissions from the local citizens  
14 committee and the general public.  
15

16 The early identification of management considerations will help to avoid delays in plan  
17 production. Management considerations will influence the development of a management  
18 strategy for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.2.3).  
19  
20

#### 21 1.2.4 Strategic Analysis

##### 22 1.2.4.1 Introduction

23  
24  
25 Strategic, forest level analysis is conducted to support the development of the management  
26 strategy for the forest. Decision support systems will be used to conduct forest level analysis  
27 of management options and to support the decision-making required during forest  
28 management planning. Guiding principles and technical requirements for management unit  
29 level analysis are identified in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*. In conducting forest  
30 level analysis to support planning, a base model will be the common starting point for  
31 scoping analysis and the development of a management strategy.  
32  
33

##### 34 1.2.4.2 Decision Support Systems

35  
36 Decision support systems are information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision  
37 modules), databases and a decision-maker's insight in an interactive, analytical modeling  
38 process, to reach a specific decision. In forest management planning, the planning team uses  
39 decision support systems to facilitate the analysis of management options in the development  
40 of the long-term management direction. Analysis tools that have been approved by the MNR  
41 Director, Forest Management Branch for use in forest management planning must be  
42 identified in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
43

44 A single analysis tool may not be capable of incorporating all of the information required to  
45 complete the analysis and make a decision. Where multiple tools are required, an explanation



1 of how the appropriate information has been incorporated and considered in the analysis will  
2 be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

3  
4 The analysis tool(s) proposed for use in the development of the plan will be able to produce  
5 the required products/analysis, and:

- 6  
7 (a) be capable of tracking the entire landbase of a management unit through time,  
8 including all forested and non-forested areas;
- 9 (b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or unmanaged, for their  
10 contribution to forest diversity, timber production and wildlife habitat;
- 11 (c) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of 160  
12 years;
- 13 (d) incorporate expected rates of natural depletion agents, such as forest fire,  
14 windthrow and insects;
- 15 (e) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;
- 16 (f) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems  
17 (if applicable to the management unit); and
- 18 (g) be capable of representing alternative management strategies.

19  
20 Regardless of the analysis tool(s) used in strategic analysis, all requirements of the *Forest*  
21 *Management Planning Manual* must be met.

#### 22 23 24 1.2.4.3 Guiding Principles and Technical Requirements

25  
26 Forest resource assessment information and technical requirements are identified in the  
27 *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*. These principles and requirements will be followed  
28 when conducting analyses to support the development of the long-term management  
29 direction. Any situations where analysis principles could not be followed, or were felt to be  
30 inappropriate, will be documented in the forest management plan.

31  
32 For the purposes of forest modeling, MNR will provide a set of best practices for analysis to  
33 guide resource managers in setting-up and conducting forest level analysis.

#### 34 35 36 1.2.4.4 Base Model

37  
38 The base model serves as the common starting point for scoping analysis and the  
39 development of a management strategy. The base model will include assumptions related to  
40 the land base, forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural  
41 options, essential biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning  
42 team. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of  
43 model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. Sensitivity analysis is done during  
44 the development of the base model and is used to gain insight on key assumptions as to how  
45 the forest develops naturally and responds to forest management practices. The results of  
46 sensitivity analysis are used to help rationalize the assumptions used in the base model.

1 In the development of the base model, the analysis package will document:

- 2
- 3 (a) data used in the development of the base model and the manner in which the
  - 4 data are classified and updated;
  - 5 (b) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance);
  - 6 (c) development of the natural benchmark;
  - 7 (d) strategic silvicultural options;
  - 8 (e) management assumptions (e.g., harvest flow rules, operability);
  - 9 (f) forest management guide representation;
  - 10 (g) the assumptions and conclusions made during the analysis, any sensitivity
  - 11 analysis and the rationale for data inputs; and
  - 12 (h) any other inputs that will be important for the evaluation of modeling results.
- 13

14

### 15 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

16

17 Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each forest unit to predict the

18 development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information, applicable to the

19 management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

20 In addition, the results of the provincially coordinated growth and yield program, when

21 available and where applicable, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth

22 projections for the management unit.

23

24 The yield curves and growth projections developed will:

- 25
- 26 (a) be consistent with approved benchmark yield curves, growth projections or
  - 27 models;
  - 28 (b) be developed using relevant data collected to approved data collection
  - 29 standards and accepted modeling principles;
  - 30 (c) be validated with independent local data;
  - 31 (d) be developed to represent forest units and silvicultural treatment options;
  - 32 (e) be consistent with other assumptions (e.g., forest succession); and
  - 33 (f) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used
  - 34 in planning.
- 35

36 When data to support the development of yield curves or growth projections is weak or

37 lacking, reasonable caution will be employed when using the yield curves or growth

38 projections.

39

40 The growth projections and yield curves, and the source(s) of information used in their

41 development, will be documented in the analysis package.

1 Forest Dynamics – Forest Succession

2  
3 Forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a  
4 result of aging, break-up, rejuvenation, non-stand replacing natural disturbances, and/or the  
5 application of silvicultural treatments. Forest succession also represents the natural  
6 succession of non-forested land types to forest. Forest succession can be represented in  
7 analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another, and/or a change in species  
8 composition over time.

9  
10 To help predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each  
11 forest unit and silvicultural intensity combination. The succession assumptions, and the  
12 source(s) of information used in their development, will be documented in the analysis  
13 package.

14  
15  
16 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

17  
18 Disturbance information includes the expected rates of natural stand-replacing depletion  
19 agents, such as forest fire, windthrow and insects. Sources of disturbance information  
20 include: local and regional fire history data, related literature, other historic accounts, forest  
21 insect and disease survey reports and provincial annual reports. Normally, only disturbances  
22 that are of a recurring nature are reflected in the disturbance assumptions. Disturbances that  
23 are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur through inventory updates.

24  
25 The disturbance assumptions, and the source(s) of information used in their development will  
26 be documented in the analysis package.

27  
28  
29 Natural Benchmark

30  
31 A natural benchmark is an investigation of how the forest is expected to develop in the  
32 absence of human intervention (i.e., through growth, natural succession and natural  
33 disturbance). The natural benchmark is used to assist in developing and testing the forest  
34 dynamics assumptions in the base model and to provide insight for setting of desirable levels  
35 and targets for management objectives relating to forest condition (e.g., forest composition,  
36 wildlife habitat, old growth).

37  
38 The inputs and results of the natural benchmark investigation will be documented in the  
39 analysis package.

40  
41  
42 Strategic Silvicultural Options

43  
44 Strategic silvicultural options represent the broad, silvicultural options appropriate for the  
45 forest. Strategic silvicultural options are groups of silvicultural treatments that exhibit the  
46 following characteristics:

- 1 (a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest unit);
- 2 (b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., forest unit, silvicultural
- 3 intensity);
- 4 (c) they require similar silvicultural expenditures; and
- 5 (d) they use the same growth projections and/or yield curves.

6  
7 Each strategic silvicultural option will identify the forest unit to which it applies and will  
8 have associated assumptions about forest development, treatment costs, response to  
9 treatments and success rates. The review of renewal and tending activities documented in the  
10 year seven management unit annual report (Part E, Section 4.0) provides recommendations,  
11 related to the effectiveness of and expenditures on renewal and tending activities, used in the  
12 development of assumptions.

13  
14 Each strategic silvicultural option will also specify the extent to which the option can be  
15 applied on the management unit. For example, only ten percent of the young jack pine stands  
16 may exhibit conditions suitable for commercial thinning.

17  
18 Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed strategic  
19 silvicultural options:

- 20
- 21 (a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silviculture guides;
- 22 (b) where the outcome is uncertain;
- 23 (c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain; or
- 24 (d) where yields fall outside the suite of approved benchmark yield curves or
- 25 growth projections.

26  
27 The strategic silvicultural options and the source(s) of information used in their development  
28 will be documented in the analysis package.

## 29 30 31 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL**

### 32 33 34 1.2.4.5 Scoping Analysis

35  
36 The purpose of scoping analysis is to examine a range of possibilities for management, and  
37 provide insight into what the forest is capable of producing and potential management  
38 considerations. Scoping analysis involves a series of investigations of specific levels of  
39 objective achievement through a series of model runs, given a range of management unit  
40 constraints. The scoping analysis will consider the direction in forest management guides.  
41 Each investigation will be used to examine management objectives (e.g., restoring the red  
42 and white pine component of the management unit). Scoping analysis will investigate  
43 management objectives from the current forest management plan.

1 Scoping analysis will also investigate the assessments required by the *Forest Resource*  
2 *Assessment Policy* and potential levels of objective achievement. The *Forest Resource*  
3 *Assessment Policy* requires the investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to:

- 4
- 5 (a) realize the full wood production potential;
- 6 (b) meet current industrial demand; and
- 7 (c) increase wood supply to support industrial expansion and additional non-  
8 industrial goods and services, parks and protected areas.
- 9

10 The investigations required by the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy* examine the  
11 production potential and the ability of the forest to meet current wood supply demands.  
12 Wood supply from these investigations, the current plan, actual historic utilization, Ontario  
13 Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels (as identified in the *Regional Wood*  
14 *Supply Strategies*), resource assessments (from *Assessment of Ontario's Forest Resources*  
15 *Report*), and maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group, will also be  
16 considered in developing wood supply objectives.

17

18 All investigations conducted for the scoping analysis will consider implications on wood  
19 supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber resources for the short-term (10  
20 years) medium-term (20 years) and long-term (100 years).

21

22 The scoping analysis will be documented in the analysis package and will include:

- 23
- 24 (a) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and assumptions;
- 25 (b) results and conclusions; and
- 26 (c) a digital copy of a selected model run that best represents each investigation.
- 27

28 These investigations are part of the iterative process used in the development of the proposed  
29 management strategy.

## 30

## 31

## 32 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR SCOPING ANALYSIS**

## 33

### 34

### 35 1.2.5 Determining the Desired Forest and Benefits

### 36

37 The planning team and the local citizens committee will identify the forest structure and  
38 composition, and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a  
39 balance of social, economic and environmental needs (i.e., desired forest and benefits). The  
40 desired forest and benefits are developed considering the background information available  
41 for the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7), and include the  
42 benefits identified locally by the planning team and the local citizens committee with input  
43 from the public.

1 The MNR District Manager will organize a meeting of the planning team, MNR plan  
2 advisors and the local citizens committee. The purpose of the meeting is to:

- 3  
4 (a) inform participants of the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7) and  
5 the context under which the plan will be developed;  
6 (b) provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in  
7 management of the forest; and  
8 (c) identify desired forest and benefits.  
9

10 A summary of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be documented. The  
11 planning team, with input from the local citizens committee, will examine the results of the  
12 desired forest and benefits meeting and refine the desired forest and benefits to ensure they  
13 are achievable. Refinement involves investigating, through scoping analysis (Part A, Section  
14 1.2.4.5), the capability of the management unit to produce the desired forest and benefits.  
15  
16

### 17 1.2.6 Forest Sustainability

18  
19 The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (s. 2 (2)) requires sustainability of a Crown forest to be  
20 determined in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. Sustainability is  
21 defined in the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* as “long term Crown forest health [which is]  
22 the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing  
23 for the needs of the people of Ontario”.  
24

25 The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* presents two guiding principles for the determination of  
26 sustainability in Ontario:  
27

- 28 (a) *Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated*  
29 *ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.*  
30 (b) *The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by*  
31 *using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements,*  
32 *emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing*  
33 *adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and*  
34 *economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.*  
35

36 The forest management plan must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the  
37 management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the  
38 management unit will be made during the preparation of the forest management plan and  
39 following the implementation of forest operations. The determination of sustainability during  
40 the preparation of the forest management plan is described in Part A, Sections 1.2.6.6 and  
41 1.3.11. The determination of sustainability following the implementation of operations is  
42 described in Part E, Section 4.6.  
43

44 In the preparation of a forest management plan, the determination of sustainability involves:

- 45  
46 (a) development of management objectives that address (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1):

- 1 (i) *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective categories and required  
2 indicators (Figure A-5); and  
3 (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by the planning team and  
4 local citizens committee;
- 5 (b) development of a management strategy that balances the achievement of the  
6 management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2);  
7 (c) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Sections  
8 1.2.6.3 and 1.2.6.4);  
9 (d) assessment of social and economic impacts of the management strategy on  
10 communities (Part A, Section 1.2.6.5); and  
11 (e) concluding that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of  
12 the Crown forest on the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.6.6 and  
13 1.3.11).  
14

15 The conclusion is a determination that the forest management plan provides for the long-term  
16 Crown forest health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water,  
17 soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values  
18 (e.g., through the application of forest management guides to protect natural resource  
19 features, land uses and values).  
20  
21

#### 22 1.2.6.1 Objectives and Indicators 23

24 As required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, management objectives in a forest  
25 management plan must be compatible with the sustainability of the Crown forest (s.68(3)(c));  
26 and indicators of objective achievement must be identified (s.68(3)(d)). As required by the  
27 *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (s.68 (5)(b)), each forest management plan must contain  
28 management objectives relating to:  
29

- 30 (a) *Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation*  
31 *of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for*  
32 *animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems,*  
33 (b) *social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition*  
34 *that healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario*  
35 *communities,*  
36 (c) *objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are*  
37 *dependent on the Crown forest,*  
38 (d) *silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown*  
39 *forest.*  
40

41 Figure A-5 identifies objective categories from the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, criteria  
42 (from *Ontario's Sustainable Forest Management Evaluation Framework*) and indicators  
43 related to the objective categories, and the timing of assessment of each indicator. Indicators  
44 are used in the assessments of objective achievement, and the assessments and  
45 determinations of sustainability.

1 The planning team, with the assistance of the local citizens committee, will develop  
2 management objectives related to the objective categories and indicators (Figure A-5), and  
3 may develop additional management objectives and indicators, including the timing of  
4 assessment of each indicator.

5  
6 The development of management objectives will consider the objectives in the current  
7 approved forest management plan. The results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part  
8 A, Section 1.2.5) and the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), in particular, the  
9 forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.7.3), will also be used in the development of  
10 management objectives and indicators (e.g., landscape pattern).

11  
12 For each management objective, a desirable level for each indicator will be established. A  
13 desirable level is a specific number, a range or a trend for an indicator, to be achieved and  
14 maintained over time. Desirable levels are established locally, and will be used in the  
15 determinations of sustainability. The establishment of a desirable level for each indicator will  
16 consider the appropriate background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), the results of the  
17 desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5), and the results of the scoping  
18 analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

19  
20 For each management objective, a target will also be established. A target is a specific  
21 number, a range, or a trend, with a timeframe for achievement. The establishment of targets  
22 for each objective will reflect a balancing of objectives and will consider:

- 23  
24 (a) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;  
25 (b) the associated indicator and its desirable level;  
26 (c) the current forest condition; and  
27 (d) the short term (10 years), medium term (20 years), and long term (100 years).

28  
29 The target may be the same as, or different from, the desirable level of the indicator.  
30 Normally, the target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target  
31 will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. For some objectives,  
32 the target may be to monitor the level of an indicator and use the results to establish more  
33 definitive targets in future forest management plans.

34  
35 Rationale for the desirable levels and targets will be documented for the summary of the  
36 long-term management direction. The management objectives, indicators and the timing of  
37 assessment for each indicator will be documented in FMP-6.



1 Figure A-5: Indicators of Objective Achievement  
2

Criterion	CFSA Objective Category	Indicator	Timing of Assessment
Conserving biological diversity in Ontario's forests	Forest diversity – natural landscape pattern and distribution	Landscape pattern (specific indicators to be developed from direction in forest management guides)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.4, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Upon completion of Phase I operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.9, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.1, Section 4.5, AR-15, AR-20)</li> </ul>
Conserving biological diversity in Ontario's forests	Forest diversity – forest structure, composition and abundance	Area by forest type and age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-7, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-18, AR-20)</li> </ul>
		Amount and distribution of old growth forest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</li> </ul>
	Forest diversity – habitat for animal life  Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest	Area of habitat for forest-dependent provincially and locally featured species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-8, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-19, AR-20)</li> </ul>

<b>Criterion</b>	<b>CFSA Objective Category</b>	<b>Indicator</b>	<b>Timing of Assessment</b>
	Forest diversity – habitat for animal life  Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest	Area of habitat for forest-dependent species at risk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-13)</li> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-19, AR-20)</li> </ul>
Maintaining and enhancing Ontario's framework for sustainable forest management	Social and economic - community well-being  Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest	Kilometres of road per square kilometre of Crown forest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</li> </ul>
Maintaining and enhancing forest ecosystem condition and productivity	Silviculture	Percent of harvested forest area assessed as free-growing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-14, AR-16, AR-20)</li> </ul>
Providing for a continuous and predictable flow of economic and social benefits from Ontario's forests	Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest	Compliance with prescriptions for the protection of natural resource features, land uses or values dependent on forest cover (% of inspections in compliance)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</li> </ul>
	Social and economic – healthy forest ecosystems	Compliance with prescriptions for the protection of resource-based tourism values (% of inspections in compliance)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)</li> </ul>
	Social and economic – harvest levels	Long-term projected available harvest area and volume, by species group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Upon completion of Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3, FMP-9, FMP-10, FMP-13)</li> </ul>
	Social and economic – harvest levels	Available, forecast and actual harvest area, by forest unit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-1, AR-20)</li> </ul>

Criterion	CFSA Objective Category	Indicator	Timing of Assessment
		Available, forecast and actual harvest volume, by species	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-4, AR-5, AR-20)
	Social and economic - community well-being	Percent of forecast volume utilized, by mill	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-5, AR-20)
Protecting and Conserving Ontario's Forest Soil and Water Resources	Social and economic – healthy forest ecosystems	Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in compliance)	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)
	Forest cover – values dependent on the Crown forest  Forest diversity – habitat for animal life	Compliance with prescriptions developed for the protection of water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in compliance)	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-20)
Accepting social responsibilities for sustainable development	Social and economic – harvest levels, community well-being	Managed Crown forest available for timber production	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-17, AR-20)
Accepting social responsibilities for sustainable development	Social and economic - community well-being	Opportunities for involvement provided to, and involvement of, Aboriginal communities in plan development	- Draft Plan (FMP-13)
		Local citizens committee's self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development	- Draft Plan (FMP-13)
Maintaining and enhancing frameworks for sustainable forest management	Social and economic - healthy forest ecosystems	Non-compliance in forest operations inspections (% of inspections in non-compliance, by category (minor, moderate and significant, as determined by MNR))	- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.5, AR-12, AR-13, AR-20)

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6

1.2.6.2 Development of the Management Strategy

A management strategy is represented by the types and levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities required to manage forest cover, to balance the achievement of

1 management objectives. The MNR-approved strategic forest-level model (Part A, Section  
2 1.1.2.1) will be used to develop a management strategy that balances the achievement of all  
3 management objectives over time. The modeling outputs for the management strategy will  
4 include 160-year projections for specific quantifiable objectives.

5  
6 The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4) will be used as the starting point for the  
7 development of the management strategy. The inputs to the base model will be modified to  
8 represent the management objectives. Types and levels of activities will be investigated,  
9 through iterative testing and analysis, to balance the achievement of management objectives  
10 and refine the management strategy. When a reasonable management strategy cannot be  
11 developed to achieve the management objectives and targets, it may be necessary to re-  
12 examine the targets to balance the achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments  
13 to targets will consider the desirable levels for the indicators.

14  
15 For targets that are not within the desirable levels, the projections in the proposed  
16 management strategy will be compared to projections from past forest management plans and  
17 historic levels of objective achievement. In addition, for harvest level objectives, the  
18 projections in the proposed management strategy will be compared to:

- 19  
20 (a) historic wood utilization; and  
21 (b) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified  
22 in the *Regional Wood Supply Strategies*.

23  
24 The modeling outputs project how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and  
25 composition and the projected types and levels of activities required to achieve the  
26 management objectives. Documentation of the modeling outputs will include:

- 27  
28 (a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-7);  
29 (b) projected habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-8);  
30 (c) projected available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-9);  
31 (d) projected available harvest volume by species group (FMP-10); and  
32 (e) projected operations, revenues and expenditures (FMP-11).

33  
34 The development of the management strategy will be documented in the analysis package.  
35 The documentation will include:

- 36  
37 (a) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;  
38 (b) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;  
39 (c) a summary of:  
40 (i) changes to the base model and rationale for those changes; and  
41 (ii) modeling results;  
42 (d) the rationale for adjustments to targets, if applicable; and  
43 (e) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for the  
44 proposed management strategy.

1 A registered professional forester will undertake an analysis to determine the necessary levels  
2 of renewal and tending activities, and associated expenditures required, to achieve the  
3 management objectives. The analysis will consider the recommendations from the review of  
4 renewal and tending activities, documented in the year seven management unit annual report  
5 (Part E, Section 4.3).

6  
7 The proposed management strategy will be presented to the local citizens committee to  
8 demonstrate the strategy balances the achievement of all management objectives.

9  
10  
11 Available Harvest Area

12  
13 In the development of the management strategy, projections of the areas available for  
14 harvest, by forest unit and age class and/or stage of management will be provided through  
15 forest modeling. The level of harvest area, by forest unit, projected for the first ten-year  
16 period of the forest management plan, is the available harvest area. Projections of the areas  
17 available for harvest for each forest unit will be presented in FMP-9.

18  
19 The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of areas for harvest for  
20 the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.6.4). Information on age class and stage of  
21 management for the available harvest area provides further guidance for the selection of  
22 areas for harvest. For the clearcut silvicultural system, area by age class and, in some cases,  
23 stage of management (e.g., commercial thinning) is provided. For the shelterwood  
24 silvicultural system, the area by stage of management (i.e., preparatory cut, seed cut, first  
25 removal harvest, last removal harvest) is provided.

26  
27  
28 **CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR PROPOSED MANAGEMENT STRATEGY**

29  
30  
31 1.2.6.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

32  
33 The achievement of individual management objectives will be assessed using the results of  
34 forest modeling for the management strategy. Achievement of objectives directly affected by  
35 spatial aspects of forest operations are described in Part A, Sections 1.2.6.4 and 1.3.9.

36  
37 For the proposed management strategy, each objective will be assessed individually, in  
38 relation to the indicators and desirable levels that have been established. The management  
39 objective information and an assessment of objective achievement will be documented in  
40 FMP-13.

41  
42 For some management objectives, the implementation timeframe (i.e., the timeframe for  
43 achievement of the target) may be greater than the ten-year period of the forest management  
44 plan.

1 The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

- 2
- 3 (a) Is the desirable level achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or
- 4 some time in the future? When will the desirable level be achieved?
- 5 (b) If the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan period:
- 6 (i) What is the difference between the desirable level and the target, and is
- 7 the difference substantial?
- 8 (ii) If there is a substantial difference, will progress be made towards
- 9 achievement of the desirable level?
- 10 (iii) Is the difference a result of balancing the achievement of multiple
- 11 objectives?
- 12 (iv) Is the difference due to the current forest condition?
- 13 (v) Are there trends in objective achievement which raise concerns?
- 14
- 15

#### 16 1.2.6.4 Preliminary Spatial Assessment

17

18 Management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas or the

19 frequency distribution of forest disturbances, will be assessed for objective achievement

20 following the identification of preferred harvest areas.

21

22

#### 23 Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

24

25 Consistent with the management strategy, criteria will be developed to identify the areas that

26 could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the forest management plan. The

27 criteria will also be consistent with the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest

28 management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

29

30 Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

- 31
- 32 (a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
- 33 (b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic
- 34 constraints);
- 35 (c) emulation of natural disturbance patterns;
- 36 (d) wildlife habitat requirements;
- 37 (e) industrial wood requirements;
- 38 (f) opportunities for harvesting fuelwood;
- 39 (g) visual aesthetics;
- 40 (h) previous commitments to harvest areas;
- 41 (i) provision for continuity of operations; and
- 42 (j) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.
- 43

44 All areas that meet the criteria will be eligible for harvest. The preferred areas for harvest for

45 the ten-year period will be identified and mapped up to the level of the available harvest area

46 for each forest unit, and portrayed separately for each five-year term. In the identification of

1 the preferred areas, the retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet  
2 objectives or guide requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered.  
3 The preferred harvest areas will match, as closely as possible, the projections of forest  
4 operations in the management strategy, in terms of age class and/or stage of management.

5  
6 All eligible areas that are not preferred areas for harvest are considered to be optional harvest  
7 areas for the ten-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified on the preferred  
8 and optional areas maps, and may be ranked in order of preference.

9  
10  
11 Spatial Assessment

12  
13 The landscape pattern of the preferred harvest areas will be examined to assess whether the  
14 harvest areas provide for the achievement of spatial management objectives. The  
15 examination and assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the  
16 locations of harvest areas, will be documented in FMP-13.

17  
18 The frequency distribution of forest disturbances at the start and the end of the plan period,  
19 and the desired frequency distribution required by MNR's applicable forest management  
20 guide, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be documented in FMP-  
21 12. An examination of the frequency distribution of forest disturbances will assess whether  
22 the frequency distribution template will be achieved over time. The forest disturbance  
23 frequency distribution assessment will be documented and included in the summary of the  
24 long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.8).

25  
26 Changes to the preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments.

27  
28 The preliminary assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated  
29 after the planning of operations has been completed to reflect changes to the areas of  
30 operations (Part A, Section 1.3.9).

31  
32  
33 1.2.6.5 Social and Economic Assessment

34  
35 A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed management strategy.  
36 The assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the  
37 management strategy. The assessment will examine how the quantity of timber supplied to  
38 the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements for the proposed  
39 management strategy, may affect the communities identified in the social and economic  
40 description (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10).

41  
42 The assessment will be prepared using a social and economic model, or a qualitative analysis  
43 based on the data in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10, Appendix  
44 IV). The methodology used will be documented.

1 1.2.6.6 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

2  
3 The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of  
4 objectives (using the assessment of objective achievement), the preliminary spatial  
5 assessments and the social and economic assessment, and examine whether the proposed  
6 management strategy provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of  
7 the Crown forest on the management unit. The preliminary determination of sustainability  
8 will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made  
9 towards the desired forest and benefits.

10  
11 The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

- 12  
13 (a) Are the objective achievement levels within, or moving towards, the desirable  
14 levels for the indicators?  
15 (b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within the desirable levels for  
16 the indicators (e.g., are the objective achievement levels related to a common  
17 forest type, or a particular *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category  
18 (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?  
19 (c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the  
20 desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?  
21 (d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the  
22 desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?  
23

24 If the preliminary determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an  
25 indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale supporting the proposed  
26 management strategy will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement  
27 towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be  
28 achieved.  
29

30 The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented and included in the  
31 summary of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.8). The documentation  
32 of the preliminary determination of sustainability will:

- 33  
34 (a) describe how the long-term management direction provides for the  
35 sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;  
36 (b) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide  
37 rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not  
38 achieved; and  
39 (c) provide a conclusion that the long-term management direction has provided  
40 for the sustainability of the Crown forest.  
41

42 The planning team will present the preliminary determination of sustainability to the local  
43 citizens committee.



1 1.2.7 Primary Road Corridors  
2

3 Primary roads are roads that provide principal access for the management unit, and are  
4 constructed, maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary  
5 roads are normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when  
6 specific primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of  
7 roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

8  
9 Primary road corridors in the previous forest management plan within which a road has not  
10 yet been constructed will be reviewed. If a corridor is confirmed, no further corridor planning  
11 will be required, but if changes to the use management strategy for the road are required, the  
12 planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 will apply.

13  
14 If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning  
15 requirements in this section will apply. The planning requirements in this section will also  
16 apply to any corridors for new primary roads which are required for forest management  
17 purposes for a 20-year horizon, including extensions to existing primary roads. The planning  
18 requirements involve the consideration and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of  
19 practical alternative one kilometre wide corridors.

20  
21 In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be  
22 consideration of:

- 23  
24 (a) the degree to which physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural  
25 resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the  
26 management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act  
27 as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development  
28 of other resources;
- 29 (b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's  
30 Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park  
31 management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship  
32 agreements); and
- 33 (c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and  
34 organizations.

35  
36 The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

- 37  
38 (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
- 39 (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending  
40 operations;
- 41 (ii) potential effects on non-timber values; and
- 42 (iii) providing access to any remote Aboriginal communities which were  
43 previously inaccessible by road;
- 44 (b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section  
45 1.3.6.6), which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance

- 1 provisions, and where appropriate, abandonment and decommissioning  
2 provisions; and  
3 (c) an estimate of relative costs related to road construction and use management,  
4 including maintenance, abandonment and decommissioning costs.  
5

6 Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new  
7 primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII.  
8

9 If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial  
10 park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR  
11 policy, the applicable policy and *Environmental Assessment Act* requirements for parks and  
12 protected areas will apply.  
13

14 The confirmed corridors from the previous forest management plan, and the alternative  
15 corridors for each new primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified on the preferred  
16 and optional harvest areas maps. The maps and documentation of the environmental analysis  
17 of the alternative corridors will be available at Stage Two.  
18

#### 19 20 1.2.8 Summary of the Long-Term Management Direction 21

22 A summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest will be produced.  
23 The summary will include:  
24

- 25 (a) forest management plan tables for:  
26 (i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement (FMP-6, FMP-13);  
27 (ii) spatial assessments (FMP-12, FMP-13); and  
28 (iii) available harvest area and volume (FMP-9, FMP-10);  
29 (b) text to describe:  
30 (i) the assessment of objective achievement;  
31 (ii) the spatial assessments; and  
32 (iii) the preliminary determination of sustainability; and  
33 (c) a summary map that portrays:  
34 (i) preferred and optional harvest areas, for each five-year term; and  
35 (ii) alternative primary road corridors.  
36

37 The summary will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the public review of  
38 the long-term management direction. The summary of the long-term management direction  
39 will be available for public distribution, upon request. For designated areas under the *French*  
40 *Language Services Act*, the French language version of the summary of the long-term  
41 management direction will be available for public distribution, upon request.

1 1.2.9 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

2  
3 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
4 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.2,  
5 and the Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.  
6

7  
8 **1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations**

9  
10 1.3.1 Introduction

11  
12 This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the first five-year  
13 term of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Three of public consultation  
14 (Part A, Section 3.3.3.3). Figure A-6 provides an overview of these requirements in the  
15 context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.  
16

17 In addition to the most current versions of the information and products which were available  
18 at Stage Two of public consultation, the information and products described in this section  
19 will be available at the information centre for the review of proposed operations (Part A,  
20 Section 3.3.3.3).  
21

22 The confirmation and selection of areas of operations is an iterative process. There will be  
23 adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNR approval.  
24 Areas of operations will be adjusted to respond to public comments and the planning of  
25 operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and to incorporate spatial requirements.  
26

27  
28 1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

29  
30 Upon completion of the public review of the proposed long-term management direction for  
31 the forest (Part A, Section 3.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A,  
32 Section 1.2, appropriate MNR district and regional staff will review the proposed long-term  
33 management direction, the analysis package, and any comments received as a result of the  
34 public review. A list of required modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will  
35 be prepared, and must be signed and certified by an MNR registered professional forester.  
36 The MNR District Manager will provide the list of required modifications, and the  
37 accompanying rationale, to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public review  
38 of the proposed long-term management direction.  
39

40 The plan author will address MNR's list of required modifications, which may require further  
41 analysis and modeling, because assumptions that were used in the development of the  
42 proposed long-term management direction may no longer be valid. The MNR Regional  
43 Director will provide preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction after  
44 the required modifications have been satisfactorily addressed. After the MNR Regional  
45 Director's preliminary endorsement, the planning team will proceed with the planning of  
46 operations.

1 The MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of  
2 operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the long-term  
3 management direction in the draft forest management plan. However, circumstances may  
4 arise which require further re-examination of the long-term management direction (e.g.,  
5 major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling).  
6

7 A summary of the long-term management direction, for which the MNR Regional Director  
8 has provided preliminary endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated  
9 version of the summary of the proposed long-term management direction that was previously  
10 prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.8).  
11

12  
13 **CHECKPOINT: PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM**  
14 **MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**  
15

16  
17 1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations  
18

19 Based on the public comments at Stage Two, harvest and contingency areas will be selected,  
20 and renewal and tending areas will be identified. Areas selected for harvest may include  
21 areas for salvage harvest.  
22

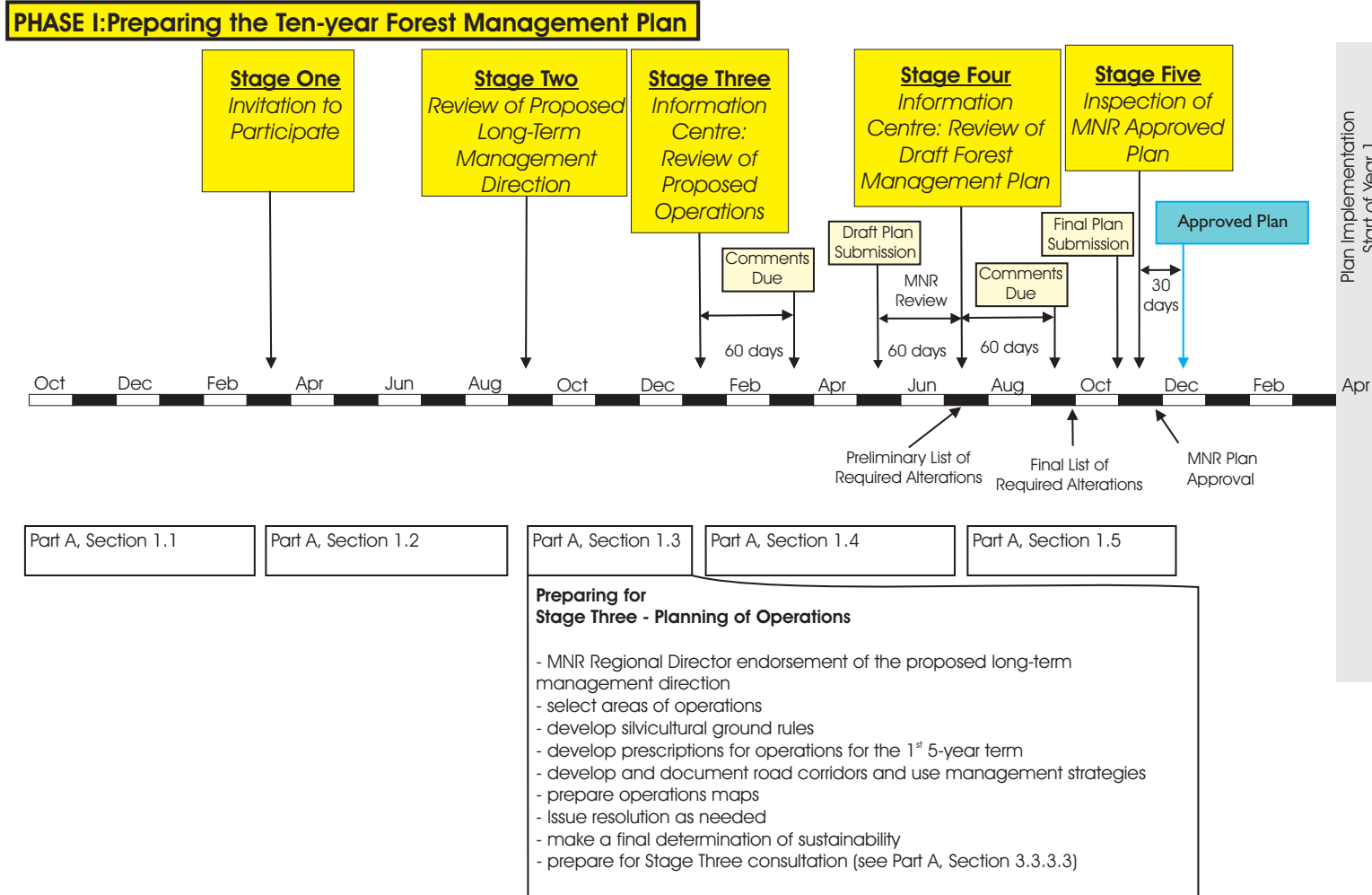
23  
24 1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas  
25

26 Based on public comments on the preferred and optional harvest areas at Stage Two, areas  
27 will be selected for harvest for the ten-year period. Areas not selected for harvest from the  
28 preferred and optional harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The selected harvest areas and  
29 the optional harvest areas will be portrayed on the selected and optional harvest areas map.  
30 The selected harvest areas will be portrayed separately for each five-year term.  
31

32 The selected harvest areas for the ten-year period will normally be equally balanced between  
33 the two five-year terms, and will not exceed the available harvest area for each forest unit.  
34 The selected harvest areas will match, as closely as possible, the projections of forest  
35 operations in the management strategy, in terms of age class and/or stage of management. If  
36 the selected harvest area by forest unit is not closely balanced between the two five-year  
37 terms, the rationale must be documented, and the appropriate MNR staff, as identified in the  
38 planning team terms of reference, must support the approach. The rationale for the selected  
39 harvest areas for the ten-year period, and for each five-year term, will be documented.  
40

41 In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and standards in MNR’s approved forest  
42 management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be  
43 considered. For clearcuts that do not contribute to the frequency distribution template  
44 required by the guide, the rationale will be documented. For clearcuts which exceed 260  
45 hectares, each such clearcut will be recorded, with the accompanying silvicultural or  
46 biological rationale.

1 **Figure A-6: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Three**



2

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

1 The selected harvest areas required to meet projected industrial wood requirements and wood  
2 supply commitments are the planned harvest areas. The planned harvest areas for each five-  
3 year term will be portrayed separately on the operations maps. The selected harvest areas in  
4 excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the  
5 management unit, will be clearly identified and mapped as surplus areas on the operations  
6 maps. If salvage operations are proposed, salvage harvest areas will be portrayed separately  
7 on the operations maps.

8  
9 The selected harvest areas will be summarized as forecast harvest area in FMP-15. The  
10 planned harvest area for the first five-year term will also be summarized in FMP-15. For  
11 forest units managed using the shelterwood silvicultural system, the forecast harvest area  
12 includes each stage of management (i.e., preparation cut, seed cut, removal cut). For forest  
13 units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, the forecast harvest area includes  
14 commercial thinnings.

15  
16 The area and volume of the available harvest area and forecast harvest area will be  
17 summarized in FMP-17. The area and volume of the planned harvest area will be  
18 summarized in FMP-18.

#### 19 20 21 1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

22  
23 During the ten-year period of the forest management plan, unforeseen circumstances (e.g.,  
24 wildfire, blowdown) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for  
25 harvest. In order to accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest  
26 operations will be identified, and portrayed separately on the operations maps. Sufficient  
27 contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a minimum of  
28 one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The contingency area will  
29 serve as replacement area for harvest during the ten-year period of the forest management  
30 plan, and will only be used if required.

31  
32 The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in FMP-20.

33  
34 An amendment to the forest management plan will be required to permit forest operations to  
35 proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 1.0).

#### 36 37 38 1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

39  
40 Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed on the operations  
41 maps for each of the two five-year terms. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected  
42 for harvest; areas previously harvested during the term of the current or previous forest  
43 management plan(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural disturbances which require  
44 renewal; and areas which require tending.

1 The analysis of renewal and tending requirements (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2), will be used in  
2 the planning of renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending  
3 operations forecasted for the ten-year period, and the proposed levels for the first five-year  
4 term, will be summarized in FMP-21. The levels of renewal and tending operations will be  
5 consistent with the projected levels of the proposed management strategy and the results of  
6 the renewal and tending analysis.

#### 9 1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

11 There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved forest  
12 management plan are not completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging  
13 operations and second-pass harvest operations allow for harvest to continue in the new plan.

##### 16 1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

18 Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the completion of harvest  
19 operations from the current approved forest management plan. Candidate areas for bridging  
20 operations will be identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the last  
21 annual work schedule of the current approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations  
22 will be portrayed on the operations maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the  
23 forest management plan.

25 Areas of bridging operations will be included in the first annual work schedule for the forest  
26 management plan. Bridging operations will be limited to three months of harvest operations  
27 and must be completed by June 30.

##### 30 1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

32 For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in  
33 two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the current  
34 approved forest management plan. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the  
35 first pass has occurred by the expiry of the current forest management plan, will be identified  
36 to allow for completion of harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest  
37 operations will be portrayed on the operations maps, and will be updated during the  
38 preparation of the forest management plan.

40 An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.

1 1.3.5 Prescriptions for Operations  
2

3 For the areas of operations for the first five-year term, including any surplus harvest areas  
4 and contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Prescriptions will be developed for  
5 areas of concern, and harvest, renewal and tending areas.  
6

7  
8 1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern  
9

10 An area of concern is a defined geographic area adjacent to an identified natural resource  
11 feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management activities. These natural  
12 resource features, land uses and values are portrayed on the values map(s) for the  
13 management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8), and include parks and protected areas and all  
14 lakes and streams (i.e., permanent and intermittent) on the operations maps. An operational  
15 prescription is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse  
16 effects of forest management operations on the natural resource feature, land use or value.  
17

18 Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of  
19 operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or  
20 regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules), individually or in  
21 combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing,  
22 equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific natural  
23 resource features, land uses or values. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern that are  
24 unique prescriptions will describe the forest operations that are permitted in the area of  
25 concern.  
26

27 The proposed operational prescriptions will be documented in FMP-14. All areas of concern  
28 will be clearly identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the proposed  
29 operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on the maps. All areas of concern  
30 documented in FMP-14 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable,  
31 the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix VIII).  
32

33 For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest  
34 areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the  
35 current approved forest management plan will be documented in the preliminary version of  
36 FMP-14. The areas of concern will be identified on the operations maps, and where practical,  
37 the operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on the maps.  
38

39 Operational prescriptions will be developed for individual areas of concern, or groups of  
40 areas of concern with a common natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), using the  
41 forest management guides identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit. An  
42 operational prescription may also be proposed from another planning exercise for inclusion  
43 in the forest management plan. In some situations, the planning team will develop an  
44 operational prescription.



1 Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide

2  
3 If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or  
4 guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription to be used for a particular natural resource  
5 feature, land use or value, that specific direction or recommendations (standards or  
6 guidelines) will be the operational prescription. Documentation of the operational  
7 prescription, and the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in  
8 FMP-14.

9  
10 If a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a  
11 forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational  
12 prescription, in accordance with the requirements for Operational Prescriptions Developed by  
13 the Planning Team. In such situations, the operational prescription will be recorded in FMP-  
14 14 as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the supplementary  
15 documentation, and the monitoring program for the forest management plan will describe the  
16 methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section  
17 4.7.2).

18  
19 Operational Prescriptions from Other Planning Exercises

20  
21 An operational prescription that directly relates to forest management activities may have  
22 been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning exercise (e.g.,  
23 development of a resource stewardship agreement).

24  
25 The proposed operational prescription will be made available for public review. If the public  
26 review supports the proposed operational prescription, no further planning will be required.  
27 The proposed operational prescription, and its source, will be documented in FMP-14. The  
28 rationale for that operational prescription, including the consideration of the comments  
29 received from interested and affected persons and organizations at Stage Three, will be  
30 documented in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan, in the form  
31 prescribed in Appendix VIII.

32  
33 If the public review at Stage Three does not support the proposed operational prescription,  
34 the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the  
35 requirements for Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team.

36  
37  
38 Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team

39  
40 For some natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), an existing forest management  
41 guide may not provide specific direction or recommendations, no forest management guide  
42 exists, or a proposed operational prescription may not have been developed in another  
43 planning exercise. In addition, as described in the requirements for Operational Prescriptions  
44 from a Forest Management Guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations  
45 (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired.  
46 In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription.

1 In the development of the operational prescription, there will be consideration and  
2 environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, and participation of interested  
3 and affected persons and organizations. For an operational prescription that is developed for  
4 an area of concern that involves a cultural heritage, tourism or recreational value, there will  
5 be consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis  
6 techniques, in the development of the operational prescription.

7  
8 The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription will include:

- 9  
10 (a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest  
11 management operations on the natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or  
12 value(s) in the area of concern; and  
13 (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative  
14 operational prescription in preventing, minimizing or mitigating those  
15 potential effects.

16  
17 The selection of the proposed operational prescription will be based on a comparison of the  
18 environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions.

19  
20 The proposed operational prescription will be documented in FMP-14. Documentation of the  
21 consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, the  
22 participation of interested and affected persons and organizations, and the rationale for the  
23 proposed operational prescription, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of  
24 the forest management plan, in the form prescribed in Appendix VIII.

#### 25 26 27 1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

28  
29 For harvest, renewal and tending areas, silvicultural ground rules will be developed; the  
30 locations for silvicultural treatments of special public interest will be identified; and  
31 requirements for proposed clearcuts will apply.

#### 32 33 34 Silvicultural Ground Rules

35  
36 A silvicultural ground rule identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system, future  
37 forest condition, development information, management standards, regeneration standards,  
38 and acceptable alternative harvest, renewal and tending treatments for a specific forest unit –  
39 ecosite combination. Silvicultural ground rules will be developed for all forest unit – ecosite  
40 combinations on the management unit. The silvicultural ground rules will serve as the  
41 prescriptions for the areas of operations, and naturally depleted areas, for the ten-year period  
42 of the forest management plan.

43  
44 The silvicultural ground rules will be prepared and certified by a registered professional  
45 forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guides identified by

1 MNR as applicable to the management unit. Local knowledge and the experience gained by  
2 the planning team from past management practices will also be considered.

3  
4 For each silvicultural ground rule, the preferred silvicultural treatment package that is most  
5 commonly used on the management unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative  
6 silvicultural treatments for each of the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a  
7 silvicultural ground rule includes a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable  
8 silvicultural guide, that treatment will be recorded as an exception. The rationale for that  
9 exception will be provided, and the monitoring program for the forest management plan will  
10 describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part  
11 B, Section 4.7.2).

12  
13 The silvicultural ground rules will be documented in FMP-5. For the proposed areas of  
14 operations for the first five-year term, the applicable silvicultural ground rules will be  
15 identified on the operations maps. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section  
16 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the applicable silvicultural  
17 ground rules from the current approved forest management plan will be identified on the  
18 operations maps.

19  
20 The information on the operations maps represents the best estimate of the site conditions  
21 that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the  
22 planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the  
23 actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in  
24 the forest management plan, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the  
25 silvicultural ground rules can be selected.

### 26 27 28 Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

29  
30 In the planning of operations for the first five-year term, locations where the following  
31 silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be portrayed on the  
32 operations maps:

- 33  
34 (a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;  
35 (b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;  
36 (c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest  
37 management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a  
38 result of the application of the planning procedure for insect pest management  
39 programs; and  
40 (d) areas available for fuelwood.

41  
42 This information will represent the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of  
43 operational planning, and will not limit the selection of any other approved alternative  
44 silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of  
45 operations.

1 Proposed Clearcuts

2  
3 As described in Part A, Section 1.2.6.4, areas for clearcut harvest operations have been  
4 selected in accordance with the direction and standards in MNR’s applicable forest  
5 management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

6  
7 FMP-16, which identifies the proposed clearcuts for the five-year term, will be prepared.  
8 Each proposed clearcut that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-16, with the  
9 accompanying silvicultural or biological rationale.

10  
11 For each proposed clearcut, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, in  
12 accordance with the directions and standards in MNR’s approved forest management guide  
13 relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns. The required area of stand level  
14 residual will be identified. Where practical, area that will be retained as stand level residual  
15 will be identified on the operations maps. If the area identified as stand level residual on the  
16 operations maps does not meet the requirements of the guide, the amount of additional area  
17 to be retained during the implementation of harvest operations, will be identified.

18  
19  
20 1.3.6 Roads

21  
22 The corridor planning requirements for new primary and branch roads that will be  
23 constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan are described in this  
24 section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of  
25 concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within the areas of operations, for  
26 the first five-year term, including any surplus areas and contingency areas, are also described.  
27 Planning requirements for existing roads are also described. The planning of roads will be  
28 completed by a registered professional forester.

29  
30  
31 1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

32  
33 Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at Stage  
34 Two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road that is required for  
35 the 20 year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The  
36 rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be  
37 documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the  
38 restriction must be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix  
39 VII.

40  
41 Based on the public comments at Stage Two, any changes to the use management strategy for  
42 a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous forest management plan will be finalized,  
43 and documented in the format prescribed in Appendix VII.

44  
45 Each proposed new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the  
46 road will be recorded, in FMP-22. The proposed corridor for each new primary road will be

1 portrayed on the selected and optional harvest areas map, and the portion of the corridor  
2 within which a road will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management  
3 plan will be identified. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed  
4 during the first five-year term of the forest management plan will be identified on the  
5 operations maps. The maps, FMP-22 and documentation of the rationale for the proposed  
6 corridor and the associated use management strategy will be available at Stage Three.

### 9 1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

11 Branch roads are roads that branch off existing or new primary or branch roads, providing  
12 access to and through areas of operations on a management unit. Whenever a new road is  
13 required to provide access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will  
14 be classified as a branch road.

16 The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads  
17 which are required for forest management purposes for the ten-year period of the forest  
18 management plan, including extensions to existing branch roads.

20 For each new branch road and extension to an existing branch road, a one kilometre-wide  
21 corridor will be identified, based on consideration of:

- 23 (a) the degree to which the physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural  
24 resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the  
25 management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act  
26 as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development  
27 of other resources;
- 28 (b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's  
29 Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park  
30 management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship  
31 agreements); and
- 32 (c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and  
33 organizations.

35 The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for  
36 each new or extended branch road. For each new or extended branch road, a use management  
37 strategy will also be developed, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A,  
38 Section 1.3.6.6. Documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor, and associated use  
39 management strategy for the road, will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix  
40 VII.

42 A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads.  
43 If so, the rationale can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary  
44 documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new branch road to which it applies. A  
45 common use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads. If so,

1 the use management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary  
2 documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new branch road to which it applies.

3  
4 If a new branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial  
5 park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR  
6 policy, the applicable policy and *Environmental Assessment Act* requirements for parks and  
7 protected areas will also apply.

8  
9 Each proposed new branch road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the  
10 road will be recorded, in FMP-22. The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the  
11 ten-year period will be identified on the selected and optional harvest areas maps. The  
12 portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the first five-year term  
13 of the forest management plan will be identified on the operations maps. The maps, FMP-22  
14 and documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use  
15 management strategy will be available at Stage Three.

#### 16 17 18 1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

19  
20 The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern  
21 (Part A, Section 1.3.5) by a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the  
22 preparation of the forest management plan, these crossings will be planned for the portion of  
23 the road that will be constructed during the first five-year term.

24  
25 For each area of concern crossing, there will be a determination and documentation of:

- 26  
27 (a) a 100 metre wide location for the road;  
28 (b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure,  
29 construction methods, mitigative measures, etc.); and  
30 (c) acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location within the corridor, and  
31 the conditions on the construction, of the crossing.

32  
33 The determination of the crossing location, construction conditions and acceptable variations  
34 will involve consideration and documentation of:

- 35  
36 (a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map  
37 for the management unit;  
38 (b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and  
39 organizations; and  
40 (c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

41  
42 Acceptable variations to locations may include other crossing locations which may be  
43 acceptable as a result of the considerations in the determination of the crossing location.  
44 Acceptable variations to conditions on construction may include acceptable optional water  
45 crossing structures, alternative construction methods and alternative mitigative measures.

1 For each area of concern crossing that involves a cultural heritage site or feature, including  
2 an area of high archeological potential, an archeological review will be completed, in  
3 accordance with MNR's applicable forest management guide relating to cultural heritage  
4 values.

5  
6 If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a  
7 provincial park or conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with  
8 MNR policy, the applicable policy and *Environmental Assessment Act* requirements for parks  
9 and protected areas will also apply.

10  
11 The 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management  
12 plan are preliminary locations and conditions. Those locations and conditions will be  
13 finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.6), consistent with the  
14 acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

15  
16 The proposed 100 metre wide location, and where practical, acceptable variations on the  
17 location, for each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed  
18 corridor will be identified on the operations maps. The conditions on construction, and  
19 acceptable variations to the locations and conditions, will be documented in FMP-23.  
20 Detailed documentation of the determination of the preliminary crossing location,  
21 construction conditions and acceptable variations will be produced in the format prescribed  
22 in Appendix VIII. The maps, FMP-23 and documentation of the determination of the  
23 preliminary crossing location, construction conditions and acceptable variations will be  
24 available at Stage Three.

#### 25 26 27 1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

28  
29 Operational roads are roads within areas of operations that provide short-term access for  
30 harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after  
31 they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and  
32 regenerated.

33  
34 The planning requirements in this section will apply to new operational road crossings of  
35 areas of concern, and the development of a use management strategy for the new network of  
36 operational roads within each area of operations.

37  
38 For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, any necessary conditions on the  
39 location(s) and/or construction of the crossings will be identified for individual areas of  
40 concern or groups of areas of concern. The determination of the conditions will involve  
41 consideration and documentation of:

- 42  
43 (a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map  
44 for the management unit;  
45 (b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and  
46 organizations; and

1 (c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

2  
3 Conditions may include: specified water crossing structures and methods of construction;  
4 timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or flagging of crossing locations prior  
5 to construction; and notification to directly affected persons in advance of crossing  
6 construction.

7  
8 For each area of concern that involves a cultural heritage site or feature, including an area of  
9 high archeological potential, if conditions on new operational road crossings permit  
10 crossings, an archeological review will be completed, in accordance with MNR's applicable  
11 forest management guide relating to cultural heritage values.

12  
13 The conditions on the locations and/or construction of new operational road crossings of  
14 areas of concern will be documented in FMP-23, and where practical, portrayed on the  
15 operations maps. Detailed documentation of the conditions will be produced in the format  
16 prescribed in Appendix VIII.

17  
18 A use management strategy will be developed for each operational road or network of  
19 operational roads within each area of operations, in accordance with the requirements  
20 described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6. Documentation of the use management strategy will be  
21 produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII. A common use management strategy  
22 may apply to a number of new operational roads or networks of operational roads. If so, the  
23 use management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary  
24 documentation form (Appendix VII) for each new operational road or network of operational  
25 roads to which it applies.

26  
27 Each operational road or network of operational roads will be identified, and the use  
28 management strategy for the road or network of roads will be recorded, in FMP-22.

29  
30 The maps, FMP-22, FMP-23, documentation of the conditions on the locations and/or  
31 construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern, and documentation of the  
32 use management strategy for each new operational road or network of operational roads  
33 within each area of operations will be available at Stage Three.

#### 34 35 36 1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

37  
38 As described in Part A, Section 1.1.7.9, existing roads that are the responsibility of the  
39 sustainable forest licensee will be identified on the values maps. Each existing road or road  
40 network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and the associated use  
41 management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table, in the format  
42 prescribed in Appendix II. Each road or road network documented in the Existing Roads  
43 Table will be cross-referenced to the values maps.

44  
45 If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an  
46 existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section



1 1.3.6.6 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or  
2 road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix VII. Each proposed or  
3 changed use management strategy will be documented in the Existing Roads Table.

4  
5 The Existing Roads Table, and documentation of proposed or changed use management  
6 strategies, will be available at Stage Three.

7  
8  
9 1.3.6.6 Use Management Strategies

10  
11 For each existing and new road or road network on Crown land that is the responsibility of  
12 the sustainable forest licensee, a use management strategy is required. A use management  
13 strategy includes:

- 14  
15 (a) maintenance provisions;  
16 (b) monitoring provisions;  
17 (c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial  
18 resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;  
19 (d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee to transfer the  
20 responsibility for the road or road network to MNR in the next 20 years, and  
21 the 5-year term in which the transfer is intended to occur; and  
22 (e) where applicable, MNR's preliminary indication on decommissioning  
23 provisions for the road or road network prior to transfer to MNR, including the  
24 potential removal of water crossings, and MNR's preliminary indication on  
25 whether the road will be abandoned.

26  
27 A use management strategy will be developed for each new primary and branch road, each  
28 new network of operational roads, and each existing road or road network which does not yet  
29 have a use management strategy or which requires changes to an existing use management  
30 strategy.

31  
32 In the planning of corridors for new or extended primary roads for the next 20 years (Part A,  
33 Section 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.1), a use management strategy will be developed for each alternative  
34 corridor and finalized for the selected corridor. If a primary road corridor from a previous  
35 forest management plan is confirmed, but changes to the use management strategy are  
36 required, a revised use management strategy will be developed. For each new or extended  
37 branch road for the ten-year period of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2), a  
38 use management strategy will be developed. For each area of operations for the first five-year  
39 term (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4), a use management strategy will be developed for the new  
40 network of operational roads within the area of operations.

41  
42 As described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.5, if a use management strategy does not exist for an  
43 existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, a  
44 new or revised use management strategy will be developed.

1 Documentation of each new or revised use management strategy will be provided in the  
2 supplementary documentation. The format for the supplementary documentation is  
3 prescribed in Appendix VII. For new branch roads, new networks of operational roads, and  
4 existing roads or road networks, a common use management strategy may apply to a number  
5 of roads or road networks. For each new road or road network, the individual components of  
6 the use management strategy will be described in FMP-22. For each existing road, the  
7 individual components of the use management strategy will be described in the Existing  
8 Roads Table.

### 11 1.3.7 Revenues and Expenditures

13 The projected revenues from harvest, and projected expenditures required for renewal and  
14 maintenance operations, will be identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate  
15 revenues and expenditures associated with the implementation of harvest, renewal and  
16 tending operations will be described. The forecast of revenues from harvest operations, and  
17 the forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source, will be summarized in FMP-24.

### 20 1.3.8 Assessment of Regeneration Success

22 The monitoring program to assess regeneration success for naturally and artificially  
23 regenerated areas will be developed. A summary of the area to be assessed for the  
24 determination of regeneration success will be provided in FMP-25.

### 27 1.3.9 Spatial Assessment

29 The assessments of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of  
30 harvest areas and roads, and frequency distribution of forest disturbances, described in Part  
31 A, Section 1.2.6.4, will be updated to reflect the selected harvest areas and the placement of  
32 roads.

34 The landscape pattern of the selected harvest areas will be examined to assess whether the  
35 harvest areas provide for the achievement of spatial management objectives. The  
36 examination and assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the  
37 locations of harvest areas and roads, will be documented by updating FMP-13.

39 The frequency distribution of forest disturbances at the start and the end of the plan period,  
40 and the desired frequency distribution required by MNR's approved forest management  
41 guide, as revised from time to time, relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns,  
42 will be documented by updating FMP-12. An examination of the frequency distribution of  
43 forest disturbances will assess whether the planned frequency distribution will be achieved  
44 over time. The documentation of the forest disturbance frequency distribution assessment  
45 will be updated.

1 1.3.10 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

2  
3 An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types and levels of harvest, renewal and  
4 tending operations on the achievement of progress towards long-term management direction  
5 will be prepared. The assessment will:

- 6  
7 (a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the  
8 projections in the long-term management direction;  
9 (b) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the  
10 selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;  
11 (c) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest  
12 volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the long-term  
13 management direction; and  
14 (d) examine the effect of the amount of surplus harvest area on the achievement  
15 of the long-term management direction.  
16

17 The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the  
18 development of the long-term management direction. The proposed operations for the ten-  
19 year period will be incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.  
20

21 If proposed types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term  
22 management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability  
23 will be provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or  
24 sustainability, it may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the ten-year period,  
25 and complete the required planning and assessment of operations.  
26

27  
28 1.3.11 Determination of Sustainability

29  
30 In the preparation of a forest management plan, the last step in the determination of  
31 sustainability involves updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A,  
32 Section 1.2.6.6), based on the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the  
33 forest management plan provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health)  
34 of the Crown forest on the management unit.  
35

36 The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3) will be updated to reflect  
37 changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments (Part  
38 A, Section 1.3.9).  
39

40 The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives and  
41 the comparison of proposed operations to the long-term management direction (Part A,  
42 Section 1.3.10), and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and  
43 progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

1 The determination of sustainability will consider:

- 2
- 3 (a) Are the objective achievement levels within, or moving towards, the desirable
  - 4 levels for the indicators?
  - 5 (b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within the desirable levels for
  - 6 the indicators (e.g., are the objective achievement levels related to a common
  - 7 forest type, or a particular *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category
  - 8 (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?
  - 9 (c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the
  - 10 desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
  - 11 (d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the
  - 12 desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
- 13

14 If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not

15 achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine

16 whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the

17 desirable levels will be achieved.

18

19 The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- 20
- 21 (a) describe how the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the
  - 22 Crown forest on the management unit;
  - 23 (b) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide
  - 24 rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not
  - 25 achieved; and
  - 26 (c) provide a conclusion that the forest management plan has provided for the
  - 27 sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.
- 28
- 29

### 30 1.3.12 Summary Map

31

32 A summary map(s) will be prepared and available at Stage Three. The summary map(s) will

33 include:

34

- 35 (a) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first
- 36 five-year term of the plan;
- 37 (b) the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second
- 38 five-year term of the plan;
- 39 (c) the optional areas for harvest operations;
- 40 (d) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are
- 41 required for the next 20 years;
- 42 (e) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year
- 43 period of the plan; and
- 44 (f) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest
- 45 management plan, and the previous ten years.

1 1.3.13 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

2  
3 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
4 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.3,  
5 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.  
6

7  
8 **1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft**  
9 **Forest Management Plan**

10  
11 1.4.1 Introduction

12  
13 This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of  
14 the draft forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Four of public consultation (Part  
15 A, Section 3.3.3.4). Figure A-7 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of  
16 the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.  
17

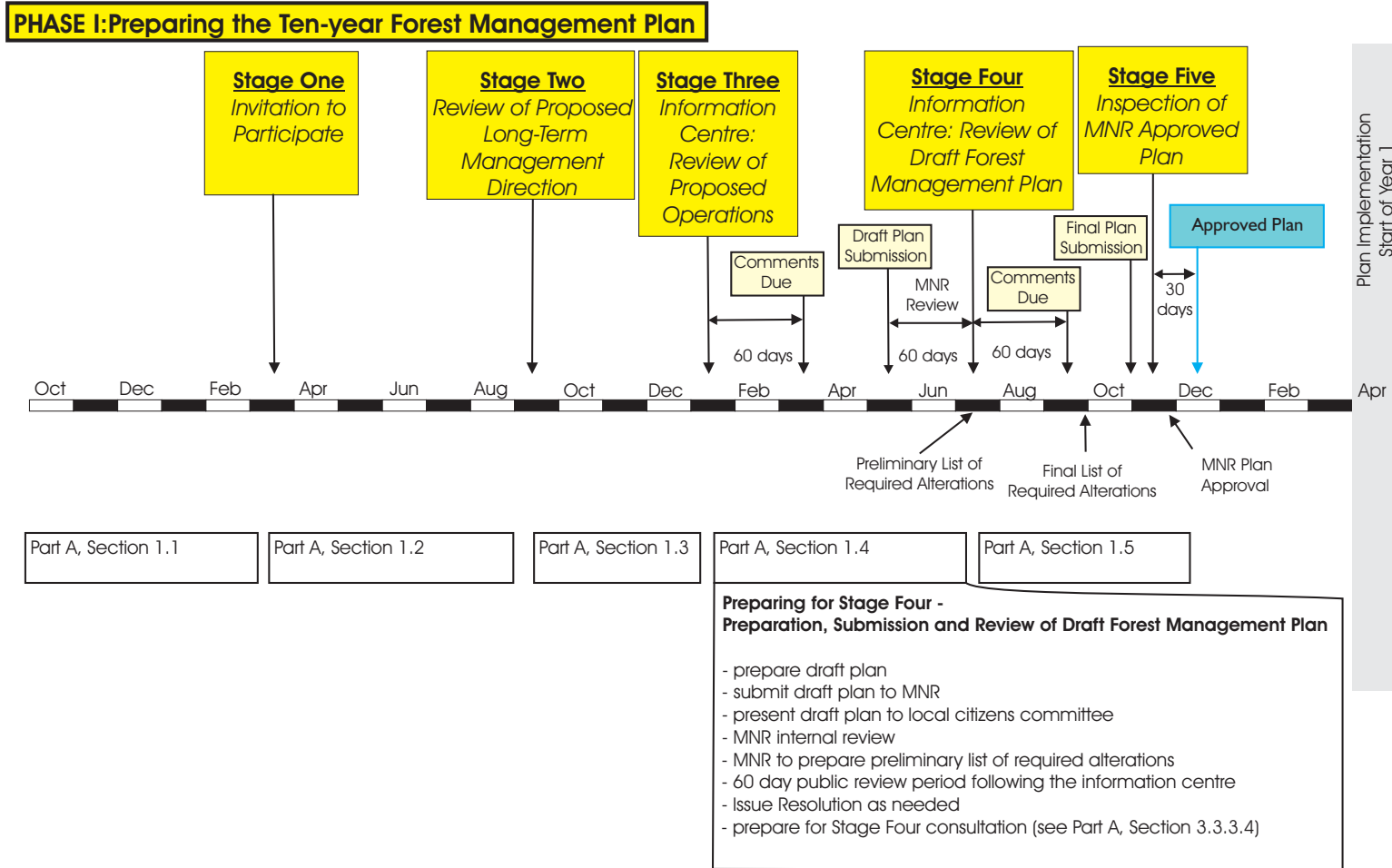
18  
19 1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

20  
21 Following the public review of proposed operations for first five-year term, the planning  
22 team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile  
23 comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon  
24 consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the  
25 consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the  
26 comments, consider if changes to the proposed operations are required, make the necessary  
27 changes, and produce the draft forest management plan in accordance with the  
28 documentation requirements prescribed in Part B.  
29

30 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title,  
31 Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the draft forest management plan.  
32 For those components of the draft forest management plan that require expertise beyond the  
33 expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete  
34 and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure  
35 B-1B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the  
36 sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR  
37 District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval  
38 page for the draft forest management plan.  
39

40 A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-2. The  
41 List of Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which  
42 are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational  
43 prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or  
44 recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides.  
45 The List of Exceptions will accompany the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and  
46 Approval Page.

1 **Figure A-7: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Four**



2

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

1 Prior to submission of the draft forest management plan to MNR, the plan author will ensure  
2 that:

- 3
- 4 (a) the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the
- 5 *Forest Management Planning Manual*;
- 6 (b) all calculations are correct;
- 7 (c) the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
- 8 (d) the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.
- 9

#### 10

#### 11 1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

#### 12

13 The plan author will submit at least three (3) copies of the draft forest management plan to  
14 the MNR District Manager on or before the scheduled date for draft plan submission.

15  
16 The copies of the draft forest management plan will be distributed as follows:

- 17
- 18 (a) one copy will be retained at the MNR district office for district staff review
- 19 and subsequent public review;
- 20 (b) one copy will be forwarded to the appropriate MNR regional office for
- 21 regional staff review and subsequent public review;
- 22 (c) one copy will be retained at the MNR district office, and forwarded at a later
- 23 date with MNR's preliminary list of required alterations to a location in
- 24 Toronto provided by MNR for public review; and
- 25 (d) any other copies will be distributed to the locations identified in the planning
- 26 team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).
- 27

28 The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft forest management  
29 plan to the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, a copy of  
30 the draft forest management plan, or copies of specified sections of the draft plan, will be  
31 provided to the local citizens committee for review. After that review, the local citizens  
32 committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or  
33 disagreement with the draft forest management plan. The statement will accompany the list  
34 of Forest Management Plan - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-3) in the draft forest  
35 management plan that is available for public review.

#### 36

#### 37

#### 38 1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

#### 39

40 The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft forest management plan is complete  
41 before the commencement of the MNR review.

42  
43 A period of 60 days is provided for the MNR review of the draft forest management plan by  
44 appropriate MNR staff, including MNR regional staff. In most situations, MNR reviewers  
45 will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning  
46 team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have received

1 preliminary MNR support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the plan (Part A,  
2 Section 1.1.5). MNR district and regional staff will also have reviewed the long-term  
3 management direction, as part of the MNR Regional Director’s preliminary endorsement of  
4 the long-term management direction, prior to the planning of operations for the first five-year  
5 term (Part A, Section 1.3.2).  
6

7 The purpose of the MNR review of the draft forest management plan is to confirm that the  
8 plan meets the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The review will  
9 also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that forest  
10 management guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable.  
11

12 The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the  
13 consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft forest management plan. MNR  
14 district reviewers will confirm that the plan is complete; that all calculations are correct; and  
15 that the plan is understandable by those who must refer to, implement and monitor the  
16 implementation of the plan.

17 The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad  
18 regional implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides.  
19 Regional reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in  
20 the draft forest management plan.  
21  
22

#### 23 1.4.4.1 MNR’s Preliminary List of Required Alterations 24

25 The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons  
26 for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR  
27 district and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local  
28 citizens committee.  
29

30 The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the planning team terms of reference  
31 (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required  
32 alterations. The required alterations from MNR regional reviewers will be compiled and  
33 forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 60-day  
34 MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required  
35 alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to  
36 clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will  
37 be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.  
38

39 In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager  
40 will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will  
41 provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review  
42 of the draft forest management plan.



1 1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary

2  
3 A draft forest management plan summary will be prepared by the planning team member  
4 assigned the responsibility in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
5 The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft forest management  
6 plan, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The  
7 content requirements of the forest management plan summary are prescribed in Part B,  
8 Section 7.0.

9  
10 The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 30 days before the  
11 information centre to review the draft forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4). For  
12 designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, a French language version of the  
13 summary will be prepared.

14  
15  
16 1.4.6 Distribution of the Draft Forest Management Plan

17  
18 As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, the draft forest management plan, the preliminary list  
19 of required alterations, and the draft forest management plan summary, will be available for  
20 public review at:

- 21  
22 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;  
23 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
24 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and  
25 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

26  
27 The draft forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon  
28 request. For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, the French language  
29 version of the draft forest management plan summary will be available for public  
30 distribution, upon request.

31  
32  
33 1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management  
34 Plan

35  
36 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
37 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.4,  
38 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

1 **1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management**  
2 **Plan**

3  
4 1.5.1 Introduction

5  
6 This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft forest management plan,  
7 and MNR review and approval of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Five  
8 of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.5). Figure A-8 provides an overview of these  
9 requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the forest management plan.

10  
11 During the public review of the draft forest management plan, MNR reviewers will meet  
12 with the plan author to discuss the draft forest management plan and the preliminary list of  
13 required alterations, and to determine how the required alterations will be addressed in the  
14 revision of the forest management plan.

15  
16  
17 1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations

18  
19 Following the public review of the draft forest management plan and MNR’s preliminary list  
20 of required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator  
21 of the list of required alterations in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section  
22 1.1.2.1) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile  
23 comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon  
24 consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the  
25 consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

26  
27 Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft forest management plan,  
28 the plan author and planning team will review the comments from the public and Aboriginal  
29 communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list of  
30 required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether or not to  
31 incorporate comments from the public and Aboriginal communities in the final list of  
32 required alterations, the MNR District Manager will decide. An issue resolution decision  
33 (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public review of the draft forest management  
34 plan will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNR staff person  
35 designated as coordinator in the planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1)  
36 will make the necessary changes to the list of required alterations. Required alterations  
37 relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional  
38 forester.

39  
40 The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- 41  
42 (a) the sustainable forest licensee;  
43 (b) the plan author;  
44 (c) the local citizens committee;  
45 (d) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan;

- 1           (e)     any person who has been involved in an issue resolution decision during the  
2                     public review of the draft forest management plan; and  
3           (f)     any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a  
4                     requested change has been addressed.  
5

6     The final list of required alterations that is provided will be accompanied by a notification  
7     which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the  
8     forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 10 to 12 of  
9     the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.  
10

### 11     1.5.3   Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary 12

13     The forest management plan will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based  
14     on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that  
15     summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the forest  
16     management plan to facilitate the MNR review. A list of major changes to the draft forest  
17     management plan will be prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation  
18     of the forest management plan.  
19

20     The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the forest management plan to  
21     the local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will  
22     confirm or update the brief statement of the committee’s general agreement or disagreement  
23     with the forest management plan. The statement will accompany the list of Forest  
24     Management Plan - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-3) in the forest management plan that is  
25     available for public inspection.  
26

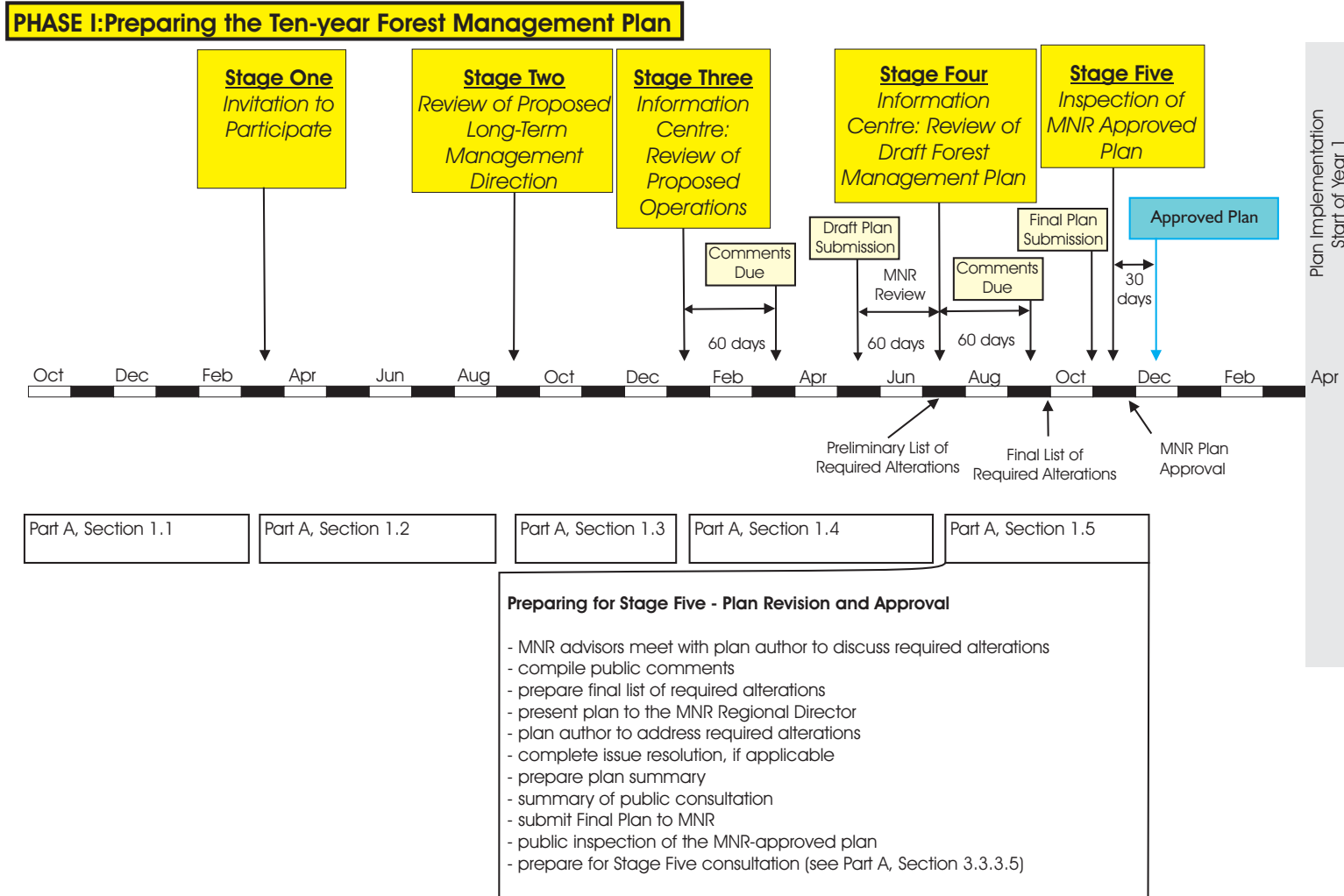
27     Prior to submission of the forest management plan to MNR for review and approval, the plan  
28     author and planning team, including the representative of the local citizens committee, will  
29     make a presentation of the forest management plan to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR  
30     District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will attend the  
31     presentation.  
32

33     The draft forest management plan summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the  
34     forest management plan.  
35

### 36     1.5.4   Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan 37

38     The plan author will submit at least four (4) copies of the forest management plan to the  
39     MNR District Manager. Three (3) of these copies are required for MNR review of the revised  
40     forest management plan, and distribution to the required locations for the public inspection of  
41     the MNR-approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.5). The fourth copy will be  
42     forwarded to MNR’s Forest Management Branch after public inspection of the MNR-  
43     approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.5).  
44  
45

1 **Figure A-8: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Stage Five**



2

**NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

1 The plan author will also submit two (2) copies of the documentation that summarizes how  
2 the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the forest management plan to  
3 the MNR District Manager to facilitate the MNR review of the forest management plan. A  
4 period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the forest  
5 management plan.

6  
7 After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District  
8 Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Forest Management Plan - Title,  
9 Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A), and recommend the forest  
10 management plan for approval by the MNR Regional Director.

11  
12 The MNR District Manager's signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies  
13 that:

- 14  
15 (a) the forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the *Forest*  
16 *Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including  
17 any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people, and the applicable  
18 implementation manuals and forest management guides;  
19 (b) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are  
20 exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been  
21 identified; and  
22 (c) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the  
23 specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the  
24 applicable forest management guides have been identified.  
25

26 If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager's recommendation, the  
27 MNR Regional Director will approve the forest management plan. The approval of the forest  
28 management plan by the MNR Regional Director confirms that the forest management plan  
29 provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.  
30

### 31 32 1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

33  
34 As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5, the MNR-approved forest management plan and the  
35 forest management plan summary will be available for public inspection at:

- 36  
37 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;  
38 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
39 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and  
40 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.  
41

42 For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, the French language version of  
43 the forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.  
44

45 A copy of the forest management plan summary will be provided to the Environmental  
46 Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, and the appropriate  
47 Ministry of the Environment regional office.

1 A copy of the MNR-approved forest management plan will be provided to MNR's Forest  
2 Management Branch. Additional copies of the forest management plan may be provided to  
3 other locations (e.g., adjacent MNR districts or regions), as specified in the planning team  
4 terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).  
5  
6

#### 7 1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

8

9 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
10 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.5,  
11 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.  
12  
13

### 14 **1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan**

15

16 After the public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan, a copy will be  
17 available for public viewing for the ten-year period of the forest management plan at each of  
18 the following locations:  
19

- 20 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
- 21 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
- 22 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
- 23 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

1 **2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-**  
2 **YEAR TERM**

3  
4 If the MNR Regional Director’s decision on endorsement of the year three management unit  
5 annual report supports the continuation of the long-term management direction for the  
6 management unit, the planning of operations for the second five-year term will proceed in the  
7 fifth year of the forest management plan. Part B, Section 8.0 describes the documentation  
8 requirements for the planned operations for the second five-year term. After the operations  
9 have been approved for implementation, the operations will be added to the forest  
10 management plan.

11  
12 Any approved access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of  
13 the forest management plan, that are not completed during the first five-year term, remain  
14 approved for implementation during the second five-year term, with no further planning or  
15 approval requirements.

16  
17  
18 **2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations**

19  
20 2.1.1 Introduction

21  
22 This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the second five-year  
23 term, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.1). Figure A-9  
24 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production  
25 of the planned operations for the second five-year term.

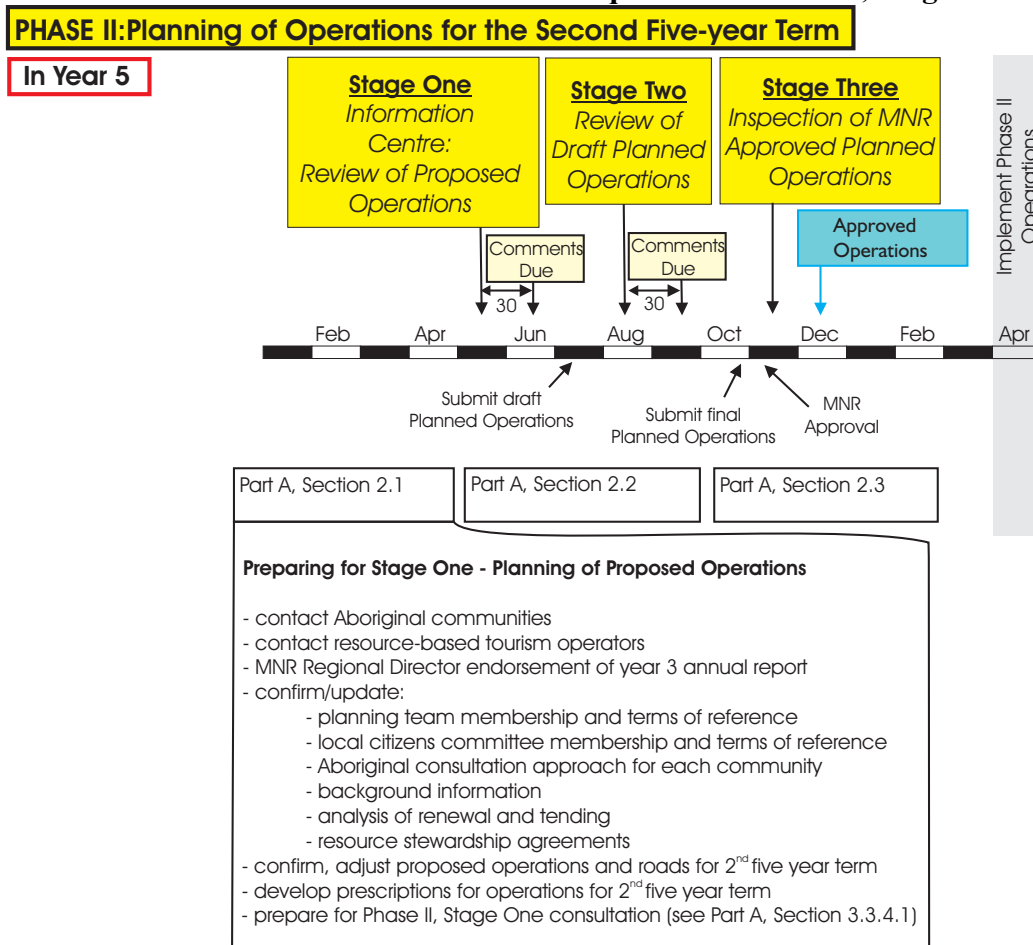
26  
27  
28 2.1.2 Updates

29  
30 The plan author, in conjunction with the MNR District Manager and planning team, will  
31 review and update the organizational structure and resources to support the planning of  
32 operations for the second five-year term, and update the background information. In those  
33 cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on  
34 the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

35  
36  
37 2.1.2.1 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee

38  
39 The membership and terms of reference of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1) will be  
40 reviewed and updated to reflect changes in membership, to assign team member  
41 responsibilities, and to define the planning schedule for the preparation, review and approval  
42 of operations for the second five-year term. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional  
43 Director will approve the updated terms of reference.

1 **Figure A-9: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage One**



2 **NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

3  
4 The membership and terms of reference of the local citizens committee (Part A, Section 3.2)  
5 will also be reviewed and updated.

6  
7  
8 **2.1.2.2 Resource Stewardship Agreements**

9  
10 One year before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the  
11 sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator  
12 in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or uses may be affected by the  
13 production and implementation of the forest management plan. For operators with an existing  
14 resource stewardship agreement, the letter will invite the operator to review and update the  
15 agreement, and provide a reminder of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal  
16 communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in the agreement related to forest  
17 management activities. For operators without a resource stewardship agreement, the letter will  
18 invite the operator to discuss the development of a resource stewardship agreement. Specific  
19 proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for the  
20 review at Phase II: Stage One of public consultation.



1 The values map for resource-based tourism values produced by MNR for the forest  
2 management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8), will be updated to support the review and/or  
3 development of resource stewardship agreements.

4  
5 An up-to-date list of licensed resource-based tourism operators with facilities on the  
6 management unit, and licensed resource-based tourism operators without facilities who use  
7 the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to MNR by the Ministry of  
8 Tourism and Recreation.

#### 10 2.1.2.3 Background Information

11 Relevant background information used in the production of the forest management plan will  
12 be reviewed and updated. MNR will update and provide the most current, relevant  
13 information available on natural resource features, land uses and values for the management  
14 unit.  
15

16 MNR will provide updated background information that will include:  
17

- 18 (a) updated values maps;
- 19 (b) new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation; and
- 20 (c) the Aboriginal Background Information Report for the current forest  
21 management plan.  
22

23 The updated background information will also include:  
24

- 25 (a) the year three management unit annual report for the current forest  
26 management plan; and
- 27 (b) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest  
28 management plan (or Report of Past Forest Operations, if applicable).  
29

#### 30 2.1.2.4 Roads Inventory

31 The planning team will assemble information on existing roads on the management unit,  
32 using the most up-to-date information available. The information will include existing  
33 information on the location, responsibility assignment and use management strategy for each  
34 road or road network.  
35

36 Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the updated values  
37 maps (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3). Primary roads, and roads that are the responsibility of the  
38 sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also identify roads with  
39 access restrictions.

40 The planning team will update the information in the Existing Roads Table of the current  
41 forest management plan (Part B, Section 2.3), using the most up-to-date information  
42 available. Roads and road networks which were constructed by the sustainable forest licensee  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

1 during the first five-year term of the forest management plan will be added to the Existing  
2 Roads Table. Roads and road networks that are no longer the responsibility of the sustainable  
3 forest licensee will be removed from the Existing Roads Table. Each road or road network  
4 documented in the Existing Roads Table will be cross-referenced to the values maps.  
5  
6

#### 7 2.1.2.5 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Requirements

8

9 The analysis of renewal and tending activities undertaken in the development of the long-term  
10 management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2), will be reviewed and updated. The updated  
11 analysis will use the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest  
12 management plan and the year three management unit annual report for the current forest  
13 management plan as sources of information. The updated analysis will be used in the planning  
14 of renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term.  
15  
16

#### 17 2.1.2.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach

18

19 Before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR  
20 District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management  
21 unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities. The  
22 purpose of this contact is to confirm the continued use of the consultation approach developed  
23 with the community for the forest management plan (Part A, Section 4.4).  
24

25 In those circumstances where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not  
26 been developed, prior to the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-  
27 year term, the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the  
28 community to discuss the development of develop a consultation approach suitable to the  
29 community.  
30

31 Any changes to an existing consultation approach, or any new consultation approach, will be  
32 developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.  
33  
34

#### 35 2.1.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

36

37 Selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year  
38 term, which were identified and portrayed on the operations maps in the forest management  
39 plan (Part A, Sections 1.3.3.1 and 1.3.3.3), will be confirmed or changed if necessary.  
40

41 If there are changes to the selected harvest areas, any new areas must be selected from the  
42 optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan, and a rationale for those new  
43 areas must be documented. The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1 will apply.

1 If additional contingency area is required, any new contingency area must be selected from  
2 the optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan. The requirements  
3 described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2 will apply.

4  
5 The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3 will apply to the selection of areas for  
6 renewal and tending.

7  
8 Selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year  
9 term will be portrayed on the operations maps.

#### 10 11 12 2.1.4 Prescriptions for Operations

13  
14 For the areas of operations for the second-year term, including any surplus harvest areas and  
15 new contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Prescriptions will be developed for  
16 areas of concern, and harvest, renewal and tending areas.

##### 17 18 19 2.1.4.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

20  
21 The planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern will include confirming  
22 operational prescriptions that were developed in the forest management plan, where  
23 appropriate, and developing new operational prescriptions, where necessary. If new  
24 operational prescriptions or changes to the existing operational prescriptions are required, the  
25 same planning requirements which applied to the planning of operational prescriptions for  
26 areas of concern within the areas selected for operations in the forest management plan, as  
27 described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, will apply.

##### 28 29 30 2.1.4.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

31  
32 The silvicultural ground rules that were developed in the production of the forest management  
33 plan (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) will be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new silvicultural  
34 ground rules or changes to the existing silvicultural ground rules are required, the same  
35 planning requirements which applied to the development of silvicultural ground rules in the  
36 production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2,  
37 Silvicultural Ground Rules, will apply.

38  
39 Locations where silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be  
40 identified in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, Silvicultural  
41 Treatments of Special Public Interest.

42  
43 For proposed clearcuts for the second five-year term, the requirements identified in Part A,  
44 Section 1.3.5.2, Proposed Clearcuts will apply.

1 2.1.5 Roads

2  
3 The corridor planning requirements for new primary and branch roads that will be constructed  
4 during the second five-year term are described in this section. Planning requirements for new  
5 primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new  
6 operational roads within the areas of operations, for the second five-year term, including any  
7 surplus areas and contingency areas, are also described. Planning requirements for existing  
8 roads are also described.

9  
10  
11 2.1.5.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors

12  
13 Each one-kilometre wide primary road corridor within which a road will be constructed  
14 during the second five-year term will be confirmed, or changed if necessary.

15  
16 Each one-kilometre wide branch road corridor within which a road will be constructed during  
17 the second five-year term will be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new areas have been  
18 selected for operations, new corridors for branch roads, which are required to access the new  
19 areas of operations, will be identified.

20  
21 If changes to previously planned corridors are required, or new corridors are required, the  
22 same planning requirements which applied to the planning of new primary and branch road  
23 corridors in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Sections  
24 1.2.7 and 1.3.6, will apply.

25  
26 For each confirmed primary or branch road corridor, the existing use management strategy  
27 will also be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new corridors are required for branch roads  
28 to access new areas of operations, a use management strategy will be developed for each new  
29 corridor. The same planning requirements which applied to the development of use  
30 management strategies in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part  
31 A, Section 1.3.6.6, will apply.

32  
33  
34 2.1.5.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

35  
36 Each crossing of an area of concern within the one kilometre-wide corridor for a new primary  
37 or branch road that will be constructed during the second five-year term will be planned. The  
38 same planning requirements which applied to the planning of area of concern crossings by  
39 new primary and branch roads for the first five-year term in the production of the forest  
40 management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3, will apply.

41  
42  
43 2.1.5.3 Operational Roads

44  
45 For the selected harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second  
46 five-year term, conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern will be

1 developed. The planning of conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern will  
2 include confirming conditions which were developed in the forest management plan, where  
3 appropriate, and developing new conditions, where necessary. If new conditions or changes to  
4 the existing conditions are required, the same planning requirements which applied to the  
5 planning of conditions on new operational roads within areas of concern in the forest  
6 management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.4, will apply.

7  
8 A use management strategy will be developed for the new network of operational roads  
9 within each area of operations, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A,  
10 Section 1.3.6.6.

#### 11 12 13 2.1.5.4 Existing Roads

14  
15 If an existing use management strategy will be changed for an existing road or road network,  
16 the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use  
17 management strategy for the road or road network will be produced in the format prescribed  
18 in Appendix VII. Each changed use management strategy will be documented in the Existing  
19 Roads Table (Appendix II).

#### 20 21 22 2.1.6 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values

23  
24 The Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be reviewed and updated, as  
25 described in Part A, Section 4.6.3, to address the proposed operations for the second five-year  
26 term.

#### 27 28 29 2.1.7 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

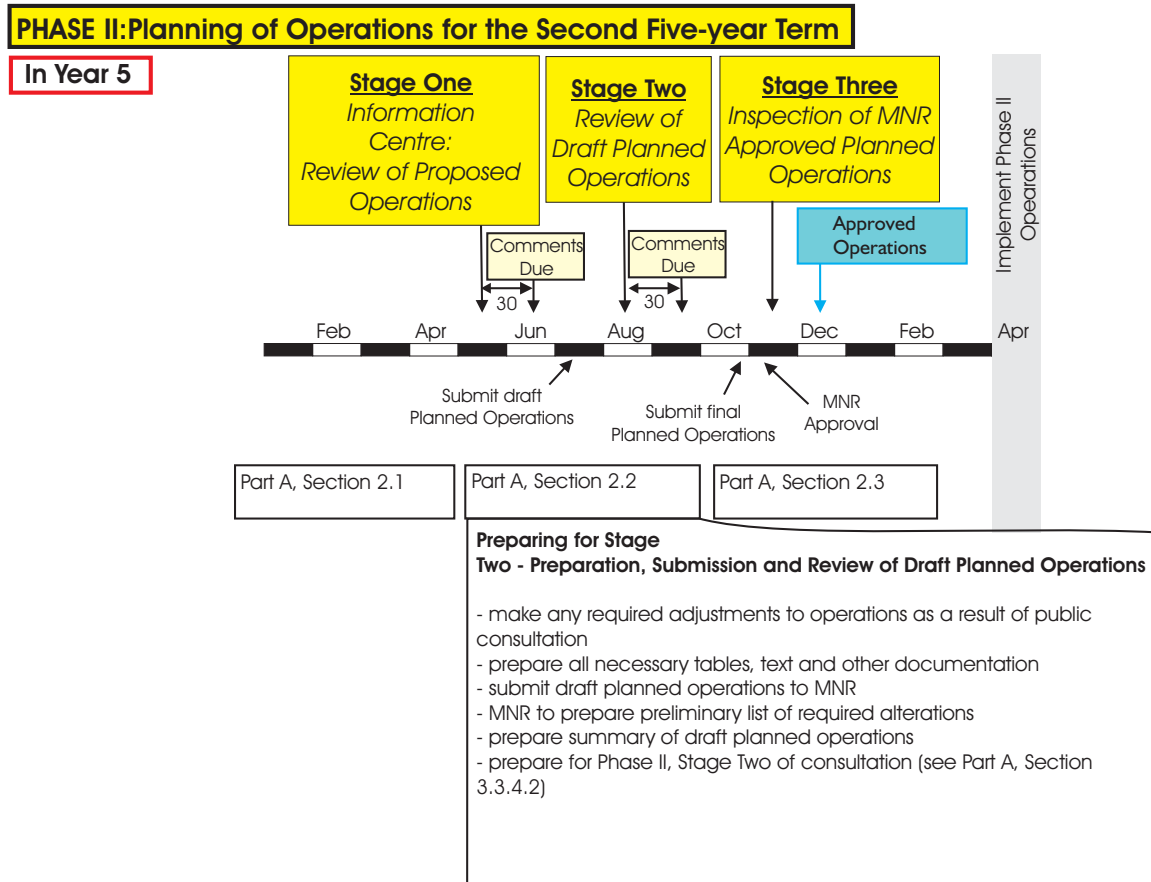
30  
31 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
32 commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.1,  
33 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

### 34 35 36 **2.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft** 37 **Planned Operations**

#### 38 39 2.2.1 Introduction

40  
41 This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of  
42 the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, in preparation for Stage Two of  
43 public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). Figure A-10 provides an overview of these  
44 requirements in the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for  
45 the second five-year term.

1 **Figure A-10: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Two**  
 2



3 **NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

4  
5  
6 **2.2.2 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations**

7  
8 Following the public review of proposed operations for second five-year term, the planning  
9 team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile  
10 comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon  
11 consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the  
12 consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the  
13 comments, consider if changes to the proposed operations are required, make the necessary  
14 changes to the proposed operations, and produce the draft planned operations in accordance  
15 with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B, Sections 8.0 and 9.0.

16  
17 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Phase II Planned Operations - Title,  
18 Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A) of the draft planned operations. For  
19 those components of the draft planned operations that require expertise beyond the expertise  
20 of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign

1 the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B. If a  
2 sustainable forest licensee has prepared the draft planned operations, a senior official of the  
3 sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR  
4 District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval  
5 page for the draft planned operations.  
6

7 A List of Exceptions, as described in Part A, Section 1.4.2, will be produced, in the format  
8 described in Part B, Figure B-6. The List of Exceptions will accompany the Phase II Planned  
9 Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

10  
11 Prior to submission of the draft planned operations to MNR, the plan author will ensure that:

- 12
- 13 (a) the draft planned operations is complete and meets the content requirements of
  - 14 Part B of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*;
  - 15 (b) all calculations are correct;
  - 16 (c) the draft planned operations is edited for ease of understanding; and
  - 17 (d) the draft planned operations contains page numbers and line numbers.
- 18

### 19 20 2.2.3 Submission of the Draft Planned Operations

21  
22 The plan author will submit at least three (3) copies of the draft planned operations to the  
23 MNR District Manager on or before the scheduled submission date. The copies of the draft  
24 planned operations will be distributed to the same locations, and in the same manner, as the  
25 draft forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.4.3.  
26

27 The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft planned operations to  
28 the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, a copy of the draft  
29 planned operations, or copies of specified sections of the draft planned operations, will be  
30 provided to the local citizens committee for review. After that review, the local citizens  
31 committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or  
32 disagreement with the draft planned operations. The statement will accompany the list of  
33 Phase II Planned Operations - Contributors (Part B, Figure B-7) in the draft planned  
34 operations that is available for public review.  
35

### 36 37 2.2.4 MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations

38  
39 The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete before  
40 the commencement of the MNR review.  
41

42 A period of 30 days is provided for the MNR review of the draft planned operations by MNR  
43 district and regional staff. In most situations, MNR reviewers will be familiar with the draft  
44 planned operations, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team.

1 The purpose of the MNR review of the draft planned operations is to confirm that the planned  
2 operations meet the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The review  
3 will also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that the planned  
4 operations are consistent with the approved forest management plan; that forest management  
5 guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable  
6

7 The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the  
8 consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft planned operations. District  
9 reviewers will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete; that all calculations are  
10 correct; and that the draft planned operations is understandable by those who must refer to,  
11 implement and monitor the implementation of the planned operations.  
12

13 The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad regional  
14 implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides. Regional  
15 reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in the draft  
16 planned operations.  
17

#### 18 19 2.2.4.1 MNR's Preliminary List of Required Alterations 20

21 The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons  
22 for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR district  
23 and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local citizens  
24 committee.  
25

26 The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated planning team terms of  
27 reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required  
28 alterations. The required alterations from MNR regional reviewers will be compiled and  
29 forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 30-day  
30 MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations,  
31 edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify  
32 required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be  
33 certified by an MNR registered professional forester.  
34

35 In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager  
36 will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will  
37 provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review  
38 of the draft planned operations.  
39

#### 40 41 2.2.5 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary 42

43 A draft planned operations summary will be prepared by the planning team member assigned  
44 the responsibility in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1).  
45 The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft planned operations, by  
46 having a summary of the planned operations available for reviewers to keep for their own use.



1 The content requirements of the planned operations summary are prescribed in Part B, Section  
2 8.9.

3  
4 The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 10 days before the  
5 public review of the draft planned operations (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). For designated areas  
6 under the *French Language Services Act*, a French language version of the summary will be  
7 prepared.

#### 10 2.2.6 Distribution of the Draft Planned Operations

11  
12 As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, the draft planned operations, the preliminary list of  
13 required alterations, and the draft planned operations summary, will be available for public  
14 review at:

- 16 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
- 17 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
- 18 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
- 19 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

20  
21 The draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.  
22 For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, the French language version of  
23 the draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

#### 26 2.2.7 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

27  
28 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
29 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.2,  
30 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

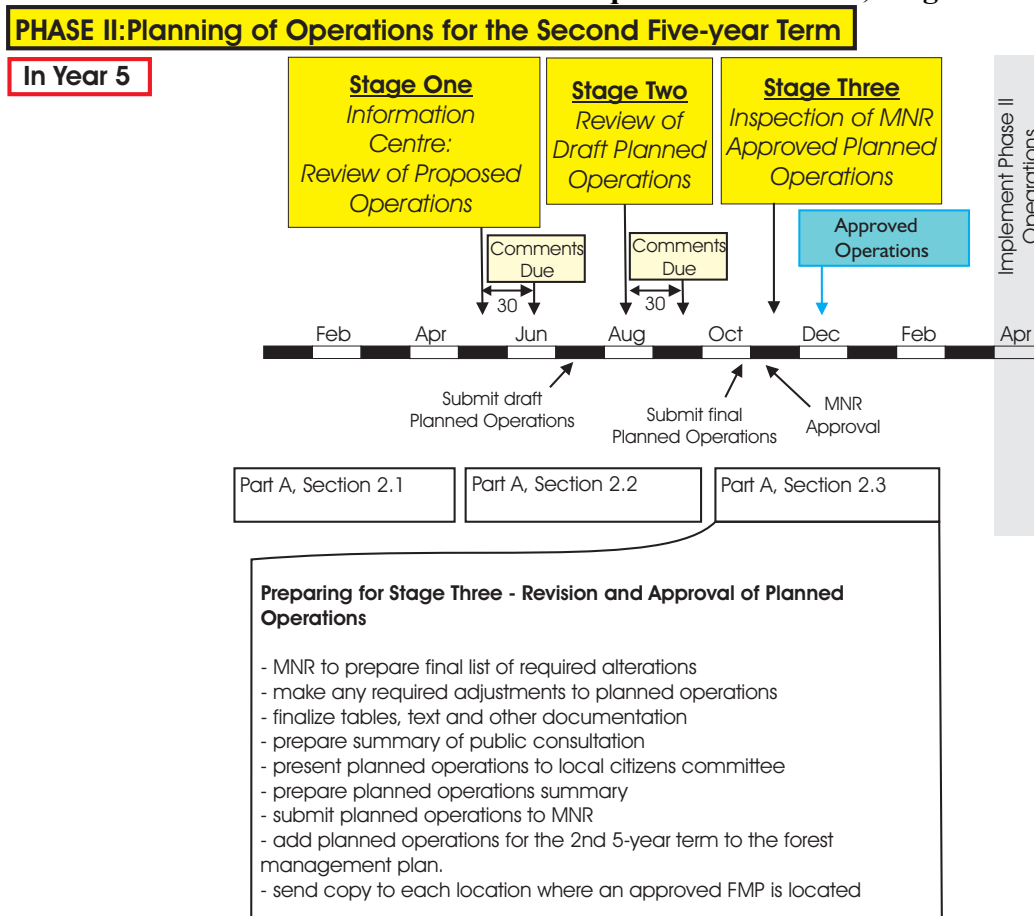
### 33 **2.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations**

#### 35 2.3.1 Introduction

36  
37 This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft planned operations for the  
38 second five-year term, and MNR review and approval of the planned operations, in  
39 preparation for Stage Three of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.3). Figure A-11  
40 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of the schedule for the production  
41 of the planned operations for the second five-year term.

42  
43 During the public review of the draft planned operations, MNR reviewers will meet with the  
44 plan author to discuss the draft planned operations and the preliminary list of required  
45 alterations, and to determine how the required alterations will be addressed in the revision of  
46 the planned operations.

1 **Figure A-11: Overview of Tasks and Products Required for Phase II, Stage Three**



2 **NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

3  
4  
5 **2.3.2 Final List of Required Alterations**

6  
7 Following the public review of the draft planned operations and MNR’s preliminary list of  
8 required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator of  
9 the list of required alterations in the updated planning team terms of reference (Part A,  
10 Section 2.1.2.1) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also  
11 compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed  
12 upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the  
13 consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

14  
15 Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft planned operations, the  
16 plan author and planning team will review the comments and determine if any changes or  
17 additions are required to the preliminary list of required alterations. If the plan author and  
18 planning team cannot decide on whether or not to incorporate comments from the public and  
19 Aboriginal communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager  
20 will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public

1 review of the draft planned operations will be reflected in the final list of required alterations.  
2 The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated planning team terms of  
3 reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will make the necessary changes to the list of required  
4 alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an  
5 MNR registered professional forester.

6  
7 The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- 8  
9 (a) the sustainable forest licensee;  
10 (b) the plan author;  
11 (c) the local citizens committee;  
12 (d) any person who has requested a change to the draft planned operations;  
13 (e) any person who has been involved in an issue resolution decision during the  
14 public review of the draft planned operations; and  
15 (f) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a  
16 requested change has been addressed.  
17

18 The final list of required alterations that is provided will be accompanied by a notification  
19 which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the  
20 planned operations by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 10 to 12 of the  
21 issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.  
22

### 23 24 2.3.3 Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary

25  
26 The planned operations will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the  
27 final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes  
28 how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the planned operations to  
29 facilitate the MNR review. A list of major changes to the draft planned operations will be  
30 prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the planned operations.  
31

32 The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the planned operations to the  
33 local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will confirm or  
34 update the brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the  
35 planned operations. The statement will accompany the list of Phase II Planned Operations -  
36 Contributors (Part B, Figure B-7) in the planned operations that is available for public  
37 inspection.  
38

39 Prior to submission of the planned operations to MNR for review and approval, the plan  
40 author and planning team, including the representative of the local citizens committee, will  
41 make a presentation of the planned operations to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR  
42 District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will attend the  
43 presentation.

1 The draft planned operations summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the planned  
2 operations.

3  
4  
5 2.3.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations  
6

7 The plan author will submit at least four (4) copies of the planned operations to the MNR  
8 District Manager. Three (3) of these copies are required for the MNR review of the revisions  
9 to the planned operations and distribution to the required locations for the public inspection of  
10 the MNR-approved planned operations (Part A, Section 3.3.4.3). The fourth copy will be  
11 forwarded to MNR's Forest Management Branch after completion of the public inspection of  
12 the MNR-approved planned operations (Part A, Section 2.3.5).

13  
14 The plan author will also submit two (2) copies of the documentation that summarizes how  
15 the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the planned operations to the  
16 MNR District Manager to facilitate the MNR review of the planned operations. A period of  
17 approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the planned operations.  
18

19 After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District  
20 Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Phase II Planned Operations - Title,  
21 Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A), and recommend the planned  
22 operations for approval by the MNR Regional Director.

23  
24 The MNR District Manager's signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies  
25 that:

- 26  
27 (a) the planned operations has been prepared in accordance with the *Forest*  
28 *Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including  
29 any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people, and the applicable  
30 implementation manuals and forest management guides;  
31 (b) the planned operations are consistent with the approved forest management  
32 plan;  
33 (c) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are  
34 exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been  
35 identified; and  
36 (d) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the  
37 specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the  
38 applicable forest management guides have been identified.  
39

40 If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager's recommendation, the  
41 MNR Regional Director will approve the planned operations, and the approved operations  
42 will be added to the approved forest management plan.

1 2.3.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations

2  
3 As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3, the MNR-approved planned operations and the  
4 planned operations summary will be available for public inspection at:

- 5  
6 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;  
7 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
8 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and,  
9 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

10  
11 For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, the French language version of  
12 the planned operations summary will be available for distribution to the public upon request.  
13

14 A copy of the planned operations summary will be provided to the Environmental Assessment  
15 and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, and the appropriate Ministry of the  
16 Environment regional office.  
17

18 A copy of the MNR-approved planned operations will be provided to MNR's Forest  
19 Management Branch. Additional copies of the planned operations may be provided to other  
20 locations (e.g., adjacent MNR districts or regions), as specified in the updated planning team  
21 terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1).  
22  
23

24 2.3.6 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

25  
26 After the requirements described in this section have been completed, the planning team will  
27 continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.3,  
28 and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.  
29  
30

31 **2.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations**

32  
33 After the public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations, a copy will be available  
34 for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the same  
35 locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.6).

## 1 **3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

### 2 **3.1 Introduction**

3  
4  
5 The forest management plan will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A local citizens  
6 committee must be in place to assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in  
7 the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.2).  
8

9 Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the forest management plan by  
10 interested and affected persons and organizations, and by the general public, are provided  
11 through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 3.3). As described in Part A,  
12 Section 1.0, there are two planning phases in the forest management planning process. Formal  
13 public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning and three  
14 stages in Phase II planning (Part A, Section 3.3). In addition, members of the public can  
15 consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local citizens committee  
16 during the preparation of the forest management plan.  
17

18 A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation  
19 of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.1). As well, a formal process is provided  
20 for any persons to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual  
21 environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest  
22 management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.2).  
23

24 By January 31st of each year, MNR's Forest Management Branch will produce a list of all  
25 management units. This list will identify all forest management plans currently in preparation,  
26 all forest management plans expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units  
27 where operational planning for the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. The list  
28 will be provided to any person who requests a copy, and will be available at each of MNR's  
29 area, district and regional offices, as well as MNR's Forest Management Branch, and a  
30 location in Toronto provided by MNR. The list will also be provided to the regional offices,  
31 and the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, of the Ministry of Environment.  
32  
33

### 34 **3.2 Local Citizens Committee**

#### 35 **3.2.1 Introduction**

36  
37  
38 A local citizens committee, comprised of local citizens representing a range and balance of  
39 interests, will be established by the MNR District Manager, in accordance with the  
40 requirements of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, for the applicable MNR district or  
41 management unit. The local citizens committee will assist the plan author, the  
42 interdisciplinary planning team and the MNR District Manager in the preparation and  
43 implementation of the forest management plan. For some management units, the MNR  
44 District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees, or sub-committees.

1 3.2.2 Purpose  
2

3 The local citizens committee will participate as an integral part of the preparation and  
4 implementation of the forest management plan by:

- 5
- 6 (a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the  
7 planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may  
8 attend planning team meetings as observers;
  - 9 (b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon  
10 stages of the planning process;
  - 11 (c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others  
12 involved in forest management planning;
  - 13 (d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:
    - 14 (ii) participating in its implementation;
    - 15 (iii) providing advice on public notices;
    - 16 (iv) participating in developing and/or issuing supplemental notices;
    - 17 (v) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation  
18 of information and maps at information centres;
    - 19 (vi) having representatives attend and participate at information centres;  
20 and
    - 21 (vii) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities  
22 that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
  - 23 (e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest  
24 and benefits;
  - 25 (f) participating in the development, identification and description of management  
26 objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
  - 27 (g) participating in the development of values maps;
  - 28 (h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-  
29 offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of  
30 problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;
  - 31 (i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
  - 32 (j) providing opportunities for a representative of the committee to attend the  
33 presentation of the draft forest management plan to the MNR Regional  
34 Director;
  - 35 (k) providing advice to the MNR District Manager when discretionary decisions  
36 must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and responses to requests  
37 for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest  
38 management operations in the forest management plan);
  - 39 (l) producing regular reports of the committee's activities;
  - 40 (m) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
  - 41 (n) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:
    - 42 (i) to provide comments on forest operations;
    - 43 (ii) to identify concerns and issues;
    - 44 (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
    - 45 (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and

- 1 (o) providing input to the development of district insect pest management  
2 programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the local citizens  
3 committee(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a  
4 district insect pest management program.  
5  
6

7 3.2.3 Membership and Organization  
8

9 The local citizens committee will be a standing committee with members appointed by the  
10 MNR District Manager. Where a management unit crosses MNR administrative boundaries,  
11 the MNR District Manager from the lead district will establish the local citizens committee in  
12 consultation with the other MNR District Manager(s).  
13

14 Normally, there will be a single local citizens committee for a management unit. However, the  
15 MNR District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees or sub-committees,  
16 where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.  
17

18 The MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee(s) will develop a protocol which  
19 describes how multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees will function. The  
20 protocol will address the roles and inter-relationships of the multiple committees or sub-  
21 committees in public consultation, development of the long-term management direction,  
22 planning of operations, preparation of local citizens committee reports and independent forest  
23 audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of a lead committee will be  
24 considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference for the local citizens  
25 committee(s) (Part A, Section 3.2.4).  
26

27 The membership of the local citizens committee will include a number of local citizens  
28 representing a range and balance of interests from the communities within or adjacent to the  
29 management unit. The majority of appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by  
30 local interest groups. Persons directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing  
31 the forest management plan are eligible to be members, but will not make up the majority of  
32 the committee.  
33

34 Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the local citizens  
35 committee should include:  
36

- 37 (a) local business;  
38 (b) tourism industry;  
39 (c) anglers and hunters;  
40 (d) Aboriginal communities;  
41 (e) forest industry;  
42 (f) naturalists;  
43 (g) municipalities;  
44 (h) trappers and other resource users;  
45 (i) other Crown land recreationalists;  
46 (j) forest industry trade unions;



- 1 (k) woodworkers;
- 2 (l) small independent loggers;
- 3 (m) mineral sector;
- 4 (n) waterpower sector;
- 5 (o) Chamber of Commerce member or Economic Development Officer;
- 6 (p) local environmental groups;
- 7 (q) local heritage groups or organizations;
- 8 (r) other interest groups; and
- 9 (s) the general public.

10  
11  
12 3.2.4 Terms of Reference

13  
14 Terms of reference for the local citizens committee will be prepared (or updated for an  
15 existing committee) at the beginning of Phase I planning, and will be updated at the beginning  
16 of Phase II planning (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1). For each management unit, the local citizens  
17 committee, with assistance from MNR and the plan author, will develop a single terms of  
18 reference. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

19  
20 The terms of reference will contain:

- 21
- 22 (a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
- 23 (b) the date of each member's appointment to the committee;
- 24 (c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee  
25 members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or  
26 obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
- 27 (d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of  
28 how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
- 29 (e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the forest management plan,  
30 (e.g., meetings prior to information centres and submission of draft and final  
31 plans, dates for committee reports, etc.);
- 32 (f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
- 33 (g) required funding;
- 34 (h) rules, developed by and for the local citizens committee, with respect to any  
35 procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management  
36 planning and plan implementation, including:
  - 37 (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
  - 38 (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
  - 39 (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
  - 40 (iv) attendance at information centres by committee members;
  - 41 (v) circulation of information among committee members;
  - 42 (vi) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member  
43 of the planning team;
  - 44 (vii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the  
45 representative to the planning team;

- (viii) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
- (ix) preparation of committee reports;
- (i) background material and training required to assist committee members with their roles and responsibilities and forest management planning matters; and
- (j) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 3.2.3).

### 3.2.5 Administration

Members of the local citizens committee will be reimbursed by MNR for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan. The committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team will be provided a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings.

MNR will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), in order to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. MNR will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The MNR District Manager will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, in order to ensure achievement of the local citizens committee purposes.

For Phase I planning, the following materials for the management unit will be provided to the committee in summary form, prior to the commencement of public consultation:

- (a) background information;
- (b) data describing non-timber resources; and
- (c) data describing the timber resource.

At the commencement of Phase II planning, the material will be updated and provided in summary form to the committee.

### 3.2.6 Reports and Records

During the preparation of the forest management plan, the local citizens committee will produce reports of its activities. These reports will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the local citizens committee. In situations where multiple local citizens

1 committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will  
2 be prepared.

3  
4 The local citizens committee report for each of Phase I and Phase II planning will include:

- 5  
6 (a) a list of all members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if  
7 any;  
8 (b) the committee's activities during the preparation of the forest management  
9 plan, such as:  
10 (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during  
11 the planning process;  
12 (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;  
13 (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members  
14 and recommendations for improvements;  
15 (iv) participation in the development of the values maps and the long-term  
16 management direction;  
17 (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., supplemental notices,  
18 information centres); and  
19 (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;  
20 (c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;  
21 (d) an assessment of the co-operation provided to the committee by MNR and the  
22 plan author;  
23 (e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any  
24 recommendations for change; and  
25 (f) a discussion of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the  
26 forest management plan.

27  
28 For Phase I planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of  
29 public consultation:

- 30  
31 (a) Stage Two – a report of committee activities to date;  
32 (b) Stage Three – an updated report of committee activities to date;  
33 (c) Stage Four  
34 (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the  
35 supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan; and  
36 (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management  
37 plan summary; and  
38 (d) Stage Five  
39 (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the  
40 supplementary documentation of the approved forest management plan;  
41 and  
42 (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the forest management  
43 plan summary.

44  
45 For Phase II planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of  
46 public consultation:

- 1 (a) Stage One – a report of committee activities to date;
- 2 (b) Stage Two
- 3 (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the
- 4 supplementary documentation of the draft planned operations; and
- 5 (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft summary of
- 6 planned operations; and
- 7 (c) Stage Three
- 8 (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the
- 9 supplementary documentation of the planned operations; and
- 10 (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the summary of
- 11 planned operations.
- 12

13 The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee, will be available for  
14 public review. The final reports of the committee for each of Phase I and Phase II planning  
15 will form part of the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

### 18 3.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

19  
20 Each forest management plan and forest management plan summary will contain a list of all  
21 members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if any.

22  
23 Each forest management plan will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that  
24 reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan. A separate  
25 statement will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning, and included as part of  
26 Part B, Figure B-3. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the  
27 supplementary documentation of the forest management plan. In situations where multiple  
28 local citizens committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement  
29 that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared for each of  
30 Phase I and Phase II planning.

## 33 **3.3 Public Consultation Requirements**

### 35 3.3.1 Introduction

36  
37 Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning  
38 (Figure A-12) and three stages in Phase II planning (Figure A-13). The requirements for  
39 Aboriginal involvement in Phase I and Phase II planning are described in Part A, Sections 4.4  
40 and 4.5.

### 43 3.3.2 General Requirements

44  
45 This section describes general requirements of public consultation which apply in Phase I and  
46 Phase II planning. These general requirements address public notices, communications with

1 the planning team and local citizens committee, MNR's obligations to respond to public  
2 comments and submissions, the *French Language Services Act* and the *Environmental Bill of*  
3 *Rights*.

#### 6 3.3.2.1 Public Notices

8 Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation, in accordance with  
9 responsibilities outlined in the terms of reference for the planning team. The timing and  
10 contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4, which also  
11 describe the information that will be available at each stage of public consultation. Public  
12 notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-  
13 technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of,  
14 public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

16 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on  
17 MNR's mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

- 19 (a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and  
20 their successors, and in particular:
  - 21 (i) local school boards;
  - 22 (ii) local medical officers of health;
  - 23 (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local  
24 services board and Chamber of Commerce;
  - 25 (iv) Manager, Operational Services, Regional Office, Ministry of  
26 Transportation;
  - 27 (v) Programs Officer, Provincial Lines and Forestry Services, Hydro One;
  - 28 (vi) Regional Office, Ministry of the Environment;
  - 29 (vii) Regional Office, Ministry of Culture;
  - 30 (viii) Regional Office, Ministry of Tourism and Recreation;
  - 31 (ix) Regional Office, Ministry of Northern Development and Mines;
  - 32 (x) Department of Indian Affairs (Canada);
  - 33 (xi) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic  
34 Region;
  - 35 (xii) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
  - 36 (xiii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;
- 37 (b) each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose  
38 interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and  
39 implementation of the forest management plan;
- 40 (c) appropriate Aboriginal treaty organizations and tribal councils;
- 41 (d) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an  
42 interest in forest management planning for the management unit;
- 43 (e) members of the local citizens committee; and
- 44 (f) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management  
45 planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly  
46 affected by forest management operations during the ten-year period of the

1 forest management plan, such as private land owners, tourist operators and  
2 trappers. MNR will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who  
3 may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting  
4 records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

5  
6 As additional interested and affected persons and organizations are identified, MNR will  
7 update the mailing list.

8  
9 Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media. Direct verbal  
10 communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers  
11 necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

12  
13 Each public notice will contain the following information:

- 14  
15 (a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;  
16 (b) a description of the subject matter of the public consultation opportunity;  
17 (c) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
18 identification of the location of the management unit;  
19 (d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available,  
20 including the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and the appropriate  
21 MNR district or area office during normal business hours, and during non-  
22 business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District Manager;  
23 (e) a statement that the values maps may be obtained from the appropriate MNR  
24 district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
25 (f) a summary of the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation  
26 opportunities;  
27 (g) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under  
28 relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*  
29 *Act*; and  
30 (h) the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and  
31 information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District  
32 Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee.

33  
34 Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation are  
35 described in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4.

36  
37  
38 Additional Information Centres

39  
40 The planning team, with advice from the local citizens committee, may choose to hold  
41 information centres in addition to the required information centres. If an additional  
42 information centre(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be  
43 issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

1 Supplemental Notices

2  
3 For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental  
4 notice will be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and  
5 Aboriginal communities of the information centre. This notice will normally be issued by  
6 MNR; however, the sustainable forest licensee and/or the local citizens committee may  
7 provide this notice. The local citizens committee will be consulted on the appropriate format  
8 for the supplemental notice (e.g., local radio or television announcement, flyers, etc.).  
9

10  
11 3.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication

12  
13 The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and affected  
14 persons and organizations to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact  
15 between them and the local citizens committee. For example, the planning team will consult  
16 with affected trappers and recreationalists in order to identify recreational trails and trails used  
17 for accessing working traplines.  
18

19 Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange for meetings with  
20 representatives of the planning team and the local citizens committee at any time during the  
21 planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members during non-  
22 business hours will be provided.  
23

24  
25 3.3.2.3 Responses to Comments

26  
27 MNR, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all  
28 written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the  
29 preparation of a forest management plan. This requirement will also apply to all verbal  
30 comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the  
31 comments and submissions have been considered. All comments, submissions and responses  
32 will be summarized in the public consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary  
33 documentation of the forest management plan (Part B, Section 6.0)  
34  
35

36 3.3.2.4 *French Language Services Act*

37  
38 The *French Language Services Act*, will govern the public consultation requirements for  
39 forest management planning in designated areas under the act.  
40

41 At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

- 42  
43 (a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French,  
44 which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be  
45 obtained in the French language;

- 1 (b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French language  
2 media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which indicates where  
3 information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the English  
4 language;
- 5 (c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at  
6 all information centres or other consultation forums;
- 7 (d) comment forms will be available in both the English and French languages;
- 8 (e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French  
9 language comments and submissions; and
- 10 (f) the summary of the long-term management direction available at Stages Two  
11 and Three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.3.3.3), and the  
12 forest management plan summary available at Stages Four and Five of public  
13 consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5), will be prepared in both the  
14 English and French languages, and will be available simultaneously for public  
15 distribution, upon request.  
16

17  
18 *3.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights*

19  
20 Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, MNR will place Registry  
21 Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the  
22 public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation in Phase I and Phase II planning.  
23

24 For each of Phase I and Phase II planning, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the  
25 EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public  
26 consultation. At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated Registry Information  
27 Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry.  
28

29 MNR's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for  
30 policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.  
31

32  
33 *3.3.3 Phase I Consultation*

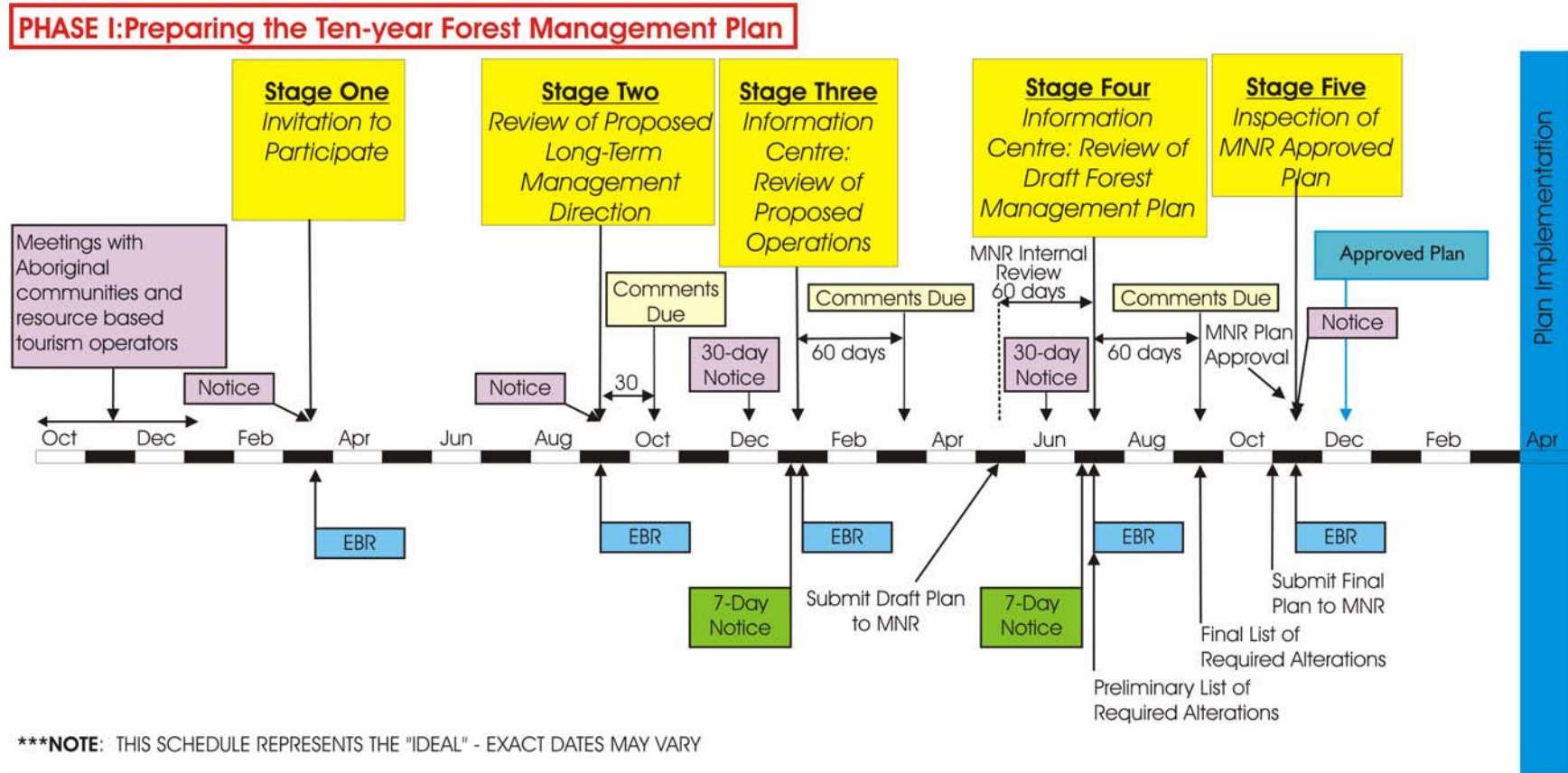
34  
35 Phase I planning involves the determination of the long-term management direction for the  
36 forest and the detailed planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest  
37 management plan. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in  
38 Phase I planning. Figure A-12 provides an overview of these requirements in the context of  
39 the schedule for the production of the ten-year forest management plan.  
40

41  
42 *3.3.3.1 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate*

43  
44 Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
45 to participate in the development of the forest management plan. This notice will be issued



1  
2  
3  
**Figure A-12: Overview of Phase I Public Consultation**



4

1 after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work to enable the  
2 commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

3  
4 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 5  
6 (a) to advise the public that the preparation of the forest management plan for the  
7 management unit is beginning;
- 8 (b) to provide access to information to be used in the forest management planning  
9 process;
- 10 (c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning;
- 11 (d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit, and  
12 desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the  
13 management of forest cover; and
- 14 (e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the  
15 planning team, plan author and local citizens committee.
- 16

17  
18 Public Notice Requirements

19  
20 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
21 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 22
- 23 (a) an outline of the subject matter of the forest management plan (i.e., the long-  
24 term management direction for the forest; the details of access, harvest,  
25 renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term; and the proposed  
26 areas of operations for the second five-year term);
- 27 (b) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the  
28 planning process;
- 29 (c) a statement that further information about the forest management planning  
30 process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan,  
31 is available for the period of plan preparation;
- 32 (d) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background  
33 information, or to state issues or concerns which need to be addressed during  
34 the planning process, to the plan author, the MNR District Manager and/or the  
35 local citizens committee; and
- 36 (e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning  
37 process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District  
38 Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process  
39 described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).
- 40

41  
42 Information and Maps Available

43  
44 The following information and maps will be available in a display at the appropriate MNR  
45 district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice  
46 is issued:

- 1 (a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
2 identification of the location of the management unit;
- 3 (b) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e.,  
4 responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if  
5 any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is  
6 supplied from the management unit;
- 7 (c) the current version of the values maps for the management unit, including the  
8 resource-based tourism values map;
- 9 (d) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values  
10 maps or otherwise available in the data base; identification of the  
11 methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for  
12 which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
- 13 (e) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to  
14 natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be  
15 affected by forest management activities, where such information is not  
16 displayed on the values maps;
- 17 (f) the Planning Inventory for the management unit;
- 18 (g) a list of the sources of the information used to update the Planning Inventory;
- 19 (h) FMP-1 and FMP-2;
- 20 (i) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility  
21 assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;
- 22 (j) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;
- 23 (k) the year seven management unit annual report for the current forest  
24 management plan and the year ten management unit annual report for the  
25 previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for the  
26 previous 15 years;
- 27 (l) a copy of the current forest management plan for the management unit, and  
28 copies of all annual work schedules with respect to that current plan which  
29 have been prepared to date;
- 30 (m) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to the  
31 management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and a copy of each of those  
32 audits or reports;
- 33 (n) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management  
34 generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest  
35 Management and State of the Forest Report) and a copy of each of those audits  
36 or reports;
- 37 (o) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.7.1), and any other relevant  
38 information available with respect to existing management objectives for non-  
39 timber values in the geographical area of the management unit;
- 40 (p) a list of MNR's forest management guides which are applicable to the  
41 management unit, and a copy of each of those guides;
- 42 (q) the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report for the current  
43 approved forest management plan;
- 44 (r) copies of MNR's brochure on forest management planning; and  
45 (s) a comment form.

1 3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

2  
3 Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
4 public to review the proposed long-term management direction for the forest. A display of  
5 information and maps will be available for public review and comment at the appropriate  
6 MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the  
7 planning team will be available to discuss the material. A summary of the proposed long-term  
8 management direction for the forest will be available for public distribution, upon request.  
9

10 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 11
- 12 (a) for the public to review and comment on:
    - 13 (i) the proposed long-term management direction for the forest;
    - 14 (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred areas  
15 for harvest operations, during the ten-year period of the plan;
    - 16 (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new  
17 primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and
  - 18 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.  
19
- 20

21 Public Notice Requirements

22  
23 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
24 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 25
- 26 (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review (i.e., the long-term  
27 management direction for the forest);
  - 28 (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the  
29 appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest  
30 licensee:
    - 31 (i) a summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the  
32 forest; and
    - 33 (ii) a summary map(s) of:
      - 34 • the preferred and optional areas for harvest operations during the  
35 ten-year period of the plan; and
      - 36 • the alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary  
37 road which is required for the next 20 years;
  - 38 (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
39 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
40 date will be provided);
  - 41 (d) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
42 recommendations from the local citizens committee; and
  - 43 (e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning  
44 process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District  
45 Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process  
46 described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

### Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage One of public consultation, the following information and maps will also be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

- (a) the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
- (b) any public comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
- (c) a summary of the long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2.8);
- (d) the analysis package;
- (e) FMP-3 through FMP-13;
- (f) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the plan;
- (g) preferred and optional areas maps which portray:
  - (i) the preferred and optional areas for harvest operations during the ten-year period of the plan; and
  - (ii) alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
- (h) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;
- (i) a summary map(s) of:
  - (i) the preferred and optional areas for harvest, during the ten-year period of the plan;
  - (ii) alternative one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are required for the next 20 years; and
  - (iii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years;
- (j) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
- (k) a summary report of the activities of the local citizens committee to date; and
- (l) a comment form.

#### 3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

1 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 2
- 3 (a) for the public to review and comment on:
- 4 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the
- 5 first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest,
- 6 renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the
- 7 plan;
- 8 (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and
- 9 branch road for the ten-year period of the plan; and
- 10 (iii) the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations, and proposed
- 11 road locations/conditions, for the first five-year term of the plan; and
- 12 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.
- 13
- 14

### 15 Public Notice Requirements

16

17 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section

18 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

19

- 20 (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e.,
- 21 the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-
- 22 year term; and the proposed areas of operations for the second five-year term);
- 23 (b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);
- 24 (c) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information
- 25 centre:
- 26 (i) a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term
- 27 management direction for the forest; and
- 28 (ii) a summary map(s) of:
- 29 • the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for
- 30 the first five-year term of the plan;
- 31 • the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for
- 32 the second five-year term of the plan;
- 33 • the optional areas for harvest operations; and
- 34 • the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and
- 35 branch road which is required for the ten-year period of the plan;
- 36 (d) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre
- 37 will also be available for review, for a 60-day period after the information
- 38 centre;
- 39 (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day
- 40 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific
- 41 date will be provided);
- 42 (f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of
- 43 recommendations from the local citizens committee;
- 44 (g) the projected date for draft plan submission; and
- 45 (h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning
- 46 process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District

1                   Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process  
2                   described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

3  
4  
5   Information and Maps Available

6  
7   In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at  
8   Stage Two of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the  
9   information centre:

- 10  
11           (a)    the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);  
12           (b)    any public comments and submissions which have been received to date, and  
13                   any responses to those comments and submissions;  
14           (c)    a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term management  
15                   direction;  
16           (d)    the proposed silvicultural ground rules;  
17           (e)    the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first  
18                   five-year term of the plan; the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending  
19                   operations for the second five-year term of the plan; the optional areas for  
20                   harvest operations; the proposed surplus harvest areas (if any); areas of  
21                   bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any);  
22                   and the proposed contingency areas;  
23           (f)    the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary and branch  
24                   road which is required for the ten-year period of the plan;  
25           (g)    for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for  
26                   the first five-year term of the plan:  
27                   (i)    the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing  
28                           within the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary  
29                           and branch road;  
30                   (ii)   proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational  
31                           road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;  
32                   (iii)  the proposed areas where silvicultural treatments of special public  
33                           interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and  
34                   (iv)  the proposed operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of,  
35                           areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), the  
36                           environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;  
37           (h)    the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of  
38                   roads which will be constructed, maintained, monitored or abandoned during  
39                   the period of the plan;  
40           (i)    FMP-14 through FMP-25;  
41           (j)    the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A,  
42                   Section 4.6.3); and  
43           (k)    a summary map(s) of:  
44                   (i)    the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
45                           first five-year term of the plan;

- 1 (ii) the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the
- 2 second five-year term of the plan;
- 3 (iii) the optional areas for harvest operations;
- 4 (iv) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for primary roads which are
- 5 required for the next 20 years;
- 6 (v) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch
- 7 roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
- 8 (vi) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest
- 9 management plan and the previous ten years; and
- 10 (l) a comment form.

11  
12 At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon  
13 request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the  
14 public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and  
15 values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such  
16 information is not displayed on the values map(s).

17  
18 The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the  
19 local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately  
20 identified.

#### 21 22 23 3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

24  
25 Stage Four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
26 public to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the MNR review of  
27 the draft forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days  
28 before the information centre.

29  
30 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment  
31 on the draft forest management plan and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations.  
32 Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required  
33 alterations to the draft forest management plan.

#### 34 35 36 Public Notice Requirements

37  
38 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
39 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 40  
41 (a) a statement that the draft forest management plan and MNR's preliminary list
- 42 of required alterations will be available at the information centre;
- 43 (b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);
- 44 (c) a statement that indicates the other location(s), date(s) and time(s) that the draft
- 45 forest management plan can be reviewed after the scheduled information



- 1 centre(s) has been held, including the appropriate MNR regional office and a  
2 location in Toronto provided by MNR;
- 3 (d) a statement that the draft forest management plan summary may be obtained at  
4 the information centre, or from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and  
5 the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
- 6 (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day  
7 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
8 date will be provided);
- 9 (f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
10 recommendations from the local citizens committee;
- 11 (g) the projected date for MNR approval of the plan; and
- 12 (h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning  
13 process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the  
14 MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A,  
15 Section 3.4.1).
- 16  
17

#### 18 Information and Maps Available

19  
20 In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at  
21 Stage Three of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at  
22 the information centre:  
23

- 24 (a) the draft forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
- 25 (b) the draft forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.4.5), which  
26 includes a summary map(s) of:
- 27 (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
28 first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest,  
29 renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the  
30 plan; and
- 31 (ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch  
32 roads for the ten-year period of the plan;
- 33 (c) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
- 34 (d) the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section  
35 4.6.3);
- 36 (e) if applicable, a map of areas of the management unit which have been  
37 identified as eligible for insect pest management, as a result of application of  
38 the planning process for insect pest management programs for major insect  
39 pest infestations (Part D, Section 6.0); and
- 40 (f) a comment form.
- 41

42 The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the  
43 local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately  
44 identified.

45

46 The information and maps will also be available for public review at the appropriate MNR  
47 district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business

1 hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a  
2 location in Toronto provided by MNR.

3  
4  
5 Final List of Required Alterations

6  
7 As described in Part A, Section 1.5.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft  
8 forest management plan, the MNR District Manager will consider the comments that were  
9 received and produce a final list of required alterations. MNR's final list of required  
10 alterations will be provided to any person who has requested a change to the draft forest  
11 management plan, and any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which  
12 a requested change has been addressed. When the final list of required alterations is provided  
13 to those persons, it will be accompanied by notification which specifies that any person may  
14 request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR  
15 Regional Director, in accordance with steps 10 to 12 of the issue resolution process described  
16 in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

17  
18  
19 3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

20  
21 Stage Five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
22 to inspect the MNR-approved forest management plan. This notice will be issued upon  
23 approval of the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director.

24  
25 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the forest  
26 management plan has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an  
27 opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved forest management plan.

28  
29  
30 Public Notice Requirements

31  
32 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
33 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 34  
35 (a) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the MNR-approved forest  
36 management plan can be inspected, including the appropriate MNR regional  
37 office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;
- 38 (b) a statement that the forest management plan summary may be obtained from  
39 the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable  
40 forest licensee; and
- 41 (c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any  
42 person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an  
43 individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management  
44 activities in the forest management plan, and that a response to the request will  
45 normally be provided by the Minister of the Environment after the completion  
46 of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in  
47 Part A, Section 3.4.2).

1 Information and Maps Available

2  
3 The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the appropriate  
4 MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-  
5 business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional  
6 office, and a location in Toronto provided by the MNR:

- 7  
8 (a) the MNR-approved forest management plan, including the supplementary  
9 documentation;
- 10 (b) the forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3), which includes a  
11 summary map(s) of:
- 12 (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
13 first five-year term of the plan, and the preferred areas for harvest,  
14 renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the  
15 plan; and
- 16 (ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch  
17 roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
- 18 (c) a list of the major changes to the draft forest management plan.
- 19  
20

21 3.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

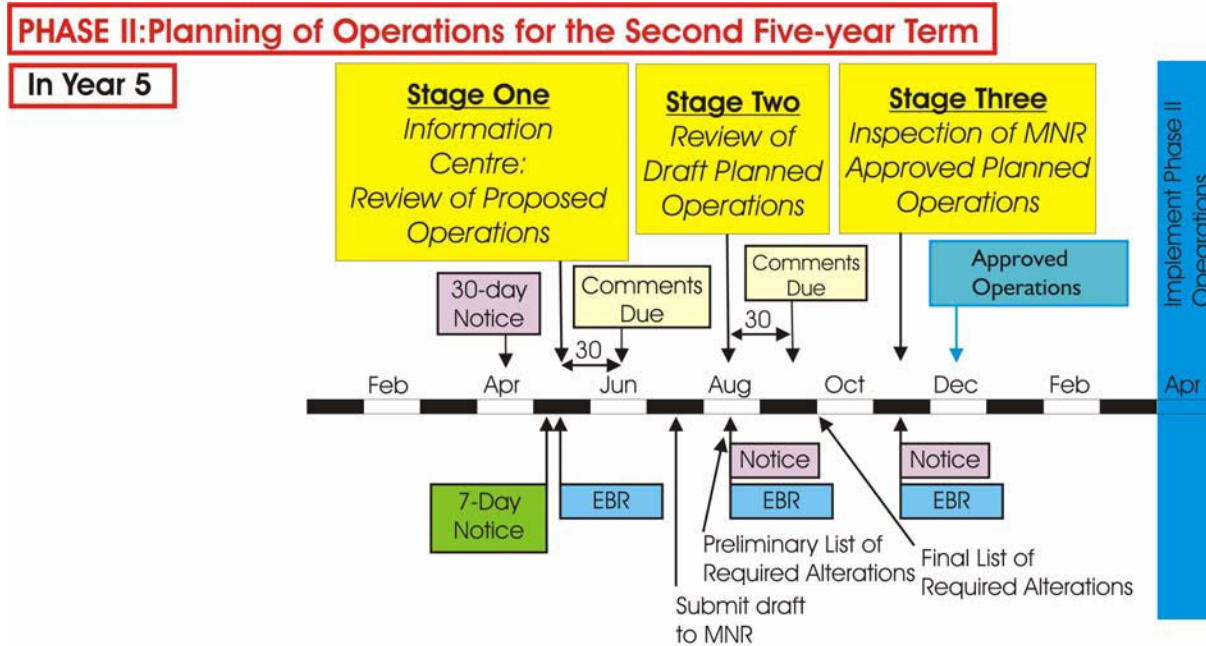
22  
23 After public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan, a copy of the  
24 approved forest management plan will be available for public viewing for the ten-year period  
25 of the forest management plan at each of the following locations:

- 26  
27 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
- 28 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
- 29 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
- 30 (d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.
- 31  
32

33 3.3.4 Phase II Consultation

34  
35 Phase II planning involves the detailed planning of operations for the second five-year term of  
36 the forest management plan. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at  
37 three stages in Phase II planning. Figure A-13 provides an overview of these requirements in  
38 the context of the schedule for the production of the planned operations for the second five-  
39 year term.

1 **Figure A-13: Overview of Phase II Public Consultation**  
 2



3 **\*\*\*NOTE:** THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

4  
 5  
 6 **3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations**

7  
 8 Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
 9 to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning  
 10 of operations for the second five-year term. The public notice will normally be issued at least  
 11 30 days before the information centre.  
 12

13 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- 14  
 15 (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the second  
 16 five-year term, including:  
 17 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;  
 18 (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and  
 19 branch road for the second five-year term, and proposed road  
 20 locations/conditions; and  
 21 (iii) the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations; and  
 22 (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.  
 23

24  
 25 Public Notice Requirements

26  
 27 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
 28 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 1 (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e.,  
2 the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second  
3 five-year term);
- 4 (b) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) of the information centre(s);
- 5 (c) a statement that a summary map may be obtained at the information centre,  
6 which portrays:
- 7 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
8 second five-year term; and
- 9 (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary and  
10 branch road which is required for the second five-year term;
- 11 (d) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre  
12 will also be available for review for a 30-day period after the information  
13 centre;
- 14 (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
15 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
16 date will be provided);
- 17 (f) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
18 recommendations from the local citizens committee;
- 19 (g) the projected date for submission of the draft planned operations for the second  
20 five-year term; and
- 21 (h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning  
22 process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District  
23 Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process  
24 described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).  
25  
26

### 27 Information and Maps Available

28

29 The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:  
30

- 31 (a) the current version of the following information for the management unit:
- 32 (i) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
33 identification of the location of the management unit;
- 34 (ii) a description of the management responsibilities for the management  
35 unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest  
36 companies (if any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest  
37 industry which is supplied from the management unit;
- 38 (iii) the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based  
39 tourism values maps;
- 40 (iv) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the  
41 values maps or otherwise available in the data base; identification of  
42 the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those  
43 subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
- 44 (v) the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A,  
45 Section 4.6.1);

- 1 (vi) a list of MNR's forest management guides which are applicable to the  
2 management unit, and a copy of each of those guides; and  
3 (vii) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to  
4 the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and a copy of  
5 each of those audits or reports;
- 6 (b) a copy of the current approved forest management plan for the management  
7 unit, including the supplementary documentation, and the forest management  
8 plan summary;
- 9 (c) copies of all annual work schedules with respect to the current approved forest  
10 management plan which have been prepared to date;
- 11 (d) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest  
12 management plan, or Report of Past Forest Operations, whichever is  
13 applicable;
- 14 (e) the year three management unit annual report for the current approved forest  
15 management plan;
- 16 (f) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second  
17 five-year term; the optional areas for harvest operations (previously identified  
18 in Phase I planning); the proposed surplus harvest areas (if any); areas of  
19 second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas.  
20 For the proposed areas of operations, any changes to the areas which were  
21 previously proposed for the second five-year term in Phase I planning will be  
22 clearly identified;
- 23 (g) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary and branch  
24 road which is required for the second five-year term;
- 25 (h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for  
26 the second five-year term:
- 27 (i) the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing  
28 within the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary  
29 and branch road;
- 30 (ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational  
31 road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
- 32 (iii) the proposed areas where silvicultural treatments of special public  
33 interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and
- 34 (iv) the proposed operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of,  
35 areas of concern, and where required, the environmental analysis of  
36 alternative operational prescriptions;
- 37 (i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of  
38 roads which will be constructed, maintained, monitored or abandoned during  
39 the second five-year term;
- 40 (j) updated versions of FMP-14 through FMP-25;
- 41 (k) the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A,  
42 Section 4.6.3);
- 43 (l) a summary map(s) of:
- 44 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
45 second five-year term;

- 1 (ii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for primary roads which are  
2 required for the next 15 years;  
3 (iii) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch  
4 roads for the second five-year term; and  
5 (iv) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest  
6 management plan and the previous ten years;  
7 (m) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management  
8 generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest  
9 Management and State of the Forest Report) and a copy of each of those audits  
10 or reports;  
11 (n) copies of MNR's brochure on forest management planning; and  
12 (o) a comment form.  
13

14 At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon  
15 request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the  
16 public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and  
17 values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such  
18 information is not displayed on the values map(s).  
19

20 The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the  
21 local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately  
22 identified.  
23

#### 24 3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations 25

26  
27 Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
28 public to review the draft planned operations for the second five-year term. This public  
29 review, for a period of 30 days, will follow the MNR review of the draft planned operations  
30 for the second five-year term.  
31

32 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment  
33 on the draft planned operations for the second five-year term and MNR's preliminary list of  
34 required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the  
35 list of required alterations to the draft planned operations.  
36

#### 37 Public Notice Requirements 38

39  
40 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
41 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:  
42

- 43 (a) a statement that indicates the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the draft  
44 planned operations for the second five-year term and MNR's preliminary list of  
45 required alterations can be reviewed, including the appropriate MNR regional  
46 office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;

- 1 (b) a statement that the draft planned operations summary for the second five-year  
2 term may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the  
3 office of the sustainable forest licensee;
- 4 (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
5 public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific  
6 date will be provided);
- 7 (d) details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of  
8 recommendations from the local citizens committee;
- 9 (e) the projected date for MNR approval of the planned operations for the second  
10 five-year term; and
- 11 (f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning  
12 process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the  
13 MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A,  
14 Section 3.4.1).
- 15  
16

17 Information and Maps Available

18  
19 The following information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area  
20 office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:

- 21  
22 (a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary  
23 documentation;
- 24 (b) the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, including the  
25 supplementary documentation;
- 26 (c) the draft planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A,  
27 Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
- 28 (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the  
29 second five-year term, and the optional areas for harvest operations;  
30 and
- 31 (ii) the planned one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch  
32 roads for the second five-year term;
- 33 (d) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
- 34 (e) the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section  
35 4.6.3);
- 36 (f) if applicable, a map of areas of the management unit which have been  
37 identified as eligible for insect pest management, as a result of application of  
38 the planning process for insect pest management programs for major insect  
39 pest infestations (Part D, Section 6.0); and
- 40 (g) a comment form.
- 41

42 This information will also be available for public review at the appropriate MNR district or  
43 area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the  
44 office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location  
45 in Toronto provided by MNR.



1 Final List of Required Alterations

2  
3 As described in Part A, Section 2.3.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft  
4 planned operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will consider the  
5 comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations. MNR's final list  
6 of required alterations will be provided to any person who has requested a change to the draft  
7 planned operations for the second five-year term, and any other person known to be directly  
8 affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed. When the final list of  
9 required alterations is provided to those persons, it will be accompanied by notification which  
10 specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest  
11 management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with steps 10 to 12 of the  
12 issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

13  
14  
15 3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

16  
17 Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
18 public to inspect the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term. This  
19 notice will be issued upon approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term by  
20 the MNR Regional Director.

21  
22 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the operations  
23 for the second five-year term have been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to  
24 provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved planned operations.

25  
26  
27 Public Notice Requirements

28  
29 In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section  
30 3.3.2.1, the notice will contain:

- 31  
32 (a) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) where the MNR-approved planned  
33 operations for the second five-year term can be inspected, including the  
34 appropriate MNR regional office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR;  
35 (b) a statement that the planned operations summary for the second five-year term  
36 may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the  
37 office of the sustainable forest licensee; and  
38 (c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any  
39 person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an  
40 individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management  
41 activities in the planned operations for the second five-year term, and that a  
42 response to the request will normally be provided by the Minister of the  
43 Environment after the completion of the 30-day inspection period (in  
44 accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2).

## Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR:

- (a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
- (b) the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term, including the supplementary documentation;
- (c) the planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
  - (i) the approved areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; and
  - (ii) the approved one kilometre wide corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term; and
- (d) a list of the major changes to the draft planned operations for the second five-year term.

### 3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

After public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations, a copy of the approved planned operations will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the same locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.3.6).

## **3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment**

### 3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

During the preparation of a forest management plan, a concerned person(s) may identify an issue for specific attention. If an issue is identified early in the planning process, the plan author and planning team may attempt to address the issue informally with the concerned person(s). Often, these informal discussions can resolve the issue. However, if discussions between the plan author, the planning team and the concerned person(s) do not lead to a remedy within a reasonable amount of time, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) that the formal issue resolution process is available to address the issue. The plan author will advise the concerned person(s) to make a written submission requesting issue resolution, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution.

During the preparation and review of a forest management plan for the ten-year period (Phase I), if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft forest management plan being available for public review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required,

1 starting with the plan author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan  
2 author, the process will proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR  
3 Regional Director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft  
4 forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to  
5 the MNR District Manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day period  
6 for public review of the draft forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the  
7 request for issue resolution to the MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue  
8 resolution process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the  
9 draft forest management plan.

10  
11 During the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), if a request for  
12 issue resolution is received prior to the draft planned operations being available for public  
13 review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required, starting with the plan  
14 author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan author, the process will  
15 proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR Regional Director. If a  
16 request is received during the period for public review of the draft planned operations, the  
17 concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR District Manager.  
18 If a request is received after the completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft  
19 planned operations, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the  
20 MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days  
21 after the completion of the period for public review of the draft planned operations.

22  
23 If a concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process, there  
24 is an opportunity to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an  
25 individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities, as  
26 described in Part A, Section 3.4.2.

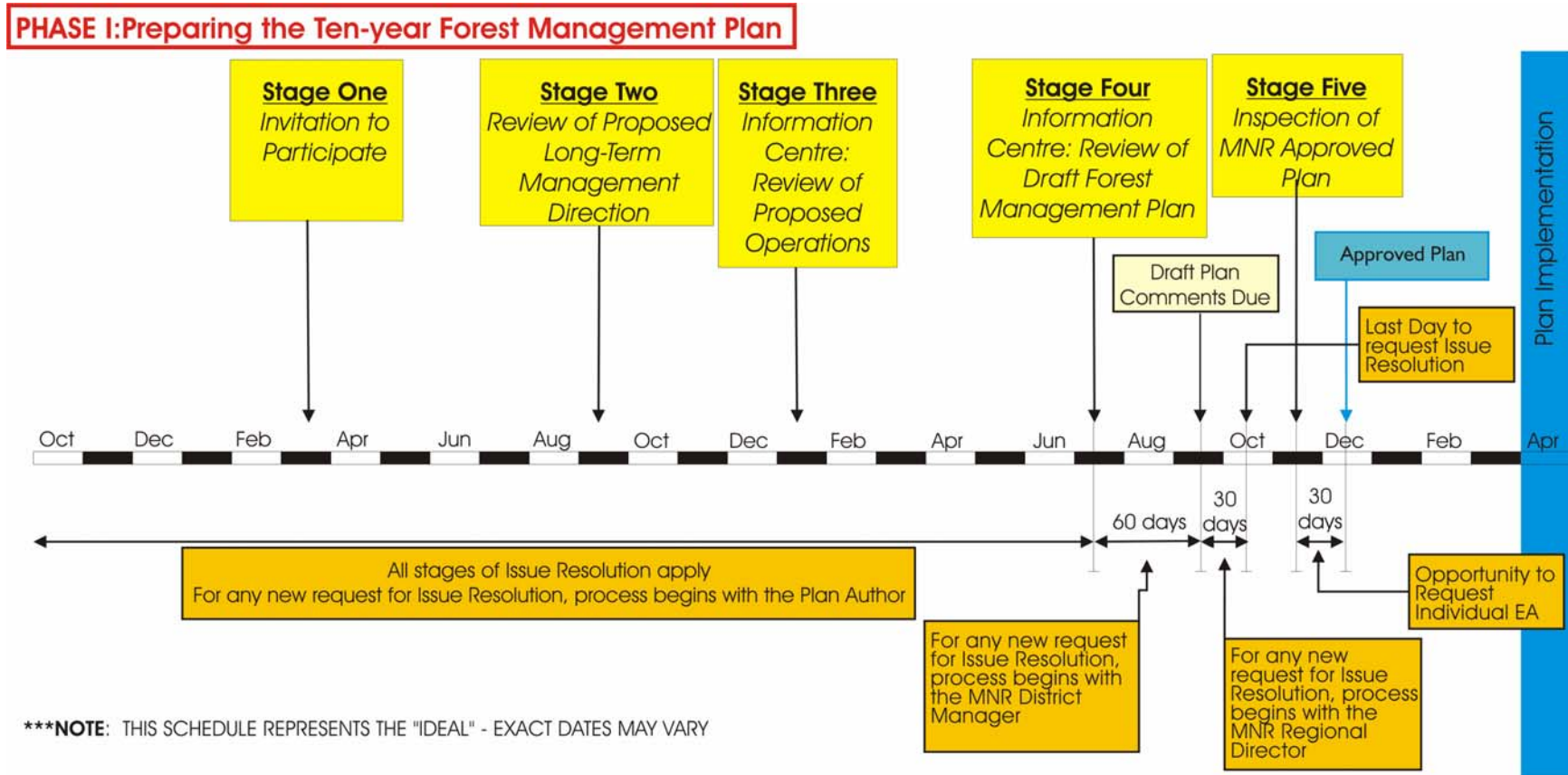
27  
28 Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned  
29 person(s), the plan author, and where applicable, the MNR District Manager and the MNR  
30 Regional Director, with opportunities for the involvement of the local citizens committee. For  
31 each issue, documentation will be produced for each step in the issue resolution process, and  
32 the rationale for the decision will be provided, to demonstrate how the issue was addressed  
33 and resolved. The documentation will be included in the supplementary documentation of the  
34 forest management plan.

35  
36 Figure A-14 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the  
37 opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase I.

38  
39 Figure A-15 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the  
40 opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase II.

1 **Figure A-14: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning**

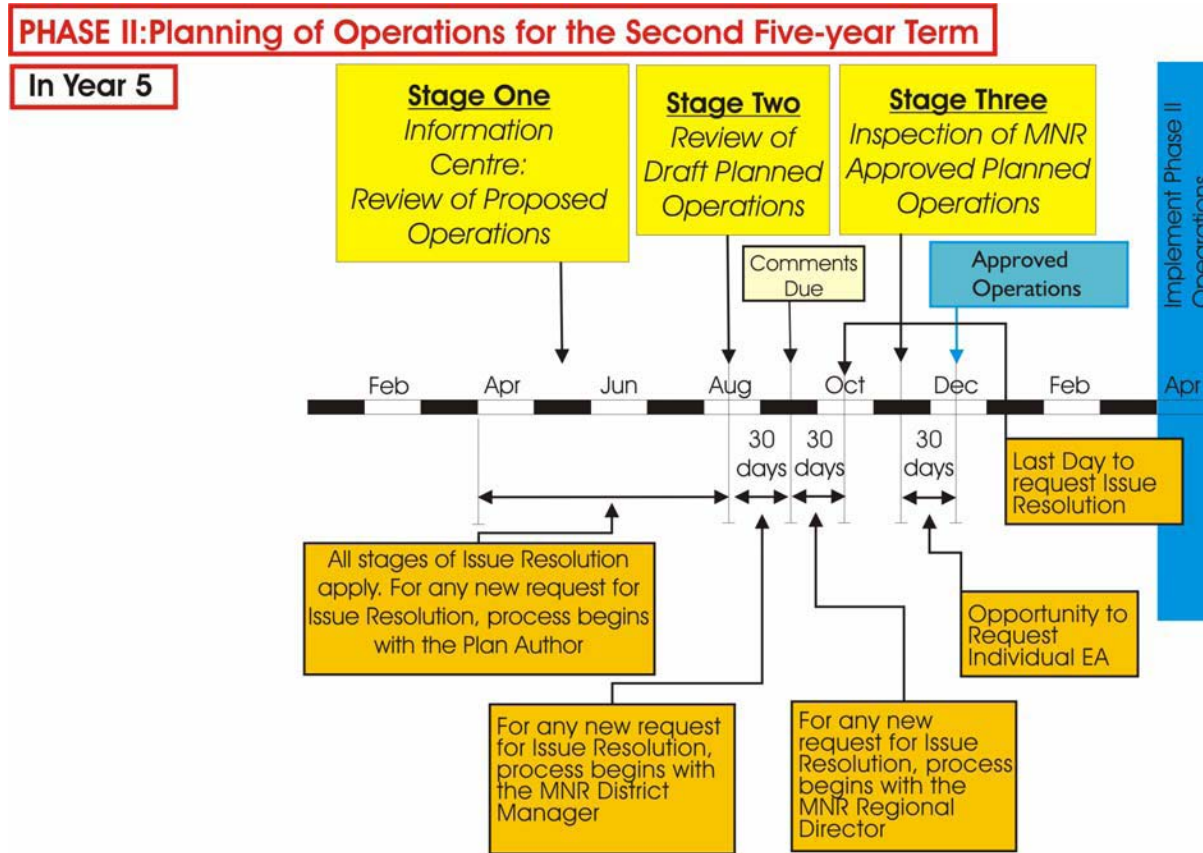
2



3

1 **Figure A-15: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning**

2



\*\*\*NOTE: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS THE "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

3

4

1 Plan Author Stage

2  
 3 The plan author stage applies to a request that is received prior to the public review of the  
 4 draft forest management plan (Phase I), or a request that is received prior to the public review  
 5 of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).  
 6

<b>Step 1</b> Request	The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the plan author, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution.
<b>Step 2</b> Meeting	The plan author will contact the concerned person(s), normally within 15 days, to arrange a meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve, the issue.
<b>Step 3</b> Issue resolved	If discussions produce a resolution, the plan author will seek the agreement of the planning team, and provide a written response to the concerned person(s) which documents resolution of the issue. The resolution of the issue will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.
<b>Step 4</b> Issue not resolved	If discussions do not produce a resolution, the plan author will communicate the issue in writing to the MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee. [Go to <b>Step 5.</b> ]

7  
 8  
 9 MNR District Manager Stage

10  
 11 The MNR District Manager stage applies to an issue that is not resolved during the plan  
 12 author stage. The MNR District Manager stage also applies to a request that is received  
 13 during the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or a  
 14 request that is received during the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned  
 15 operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).  
 16

<b>Step 5</b> Request	For an issue that is not resolved during the plan author stage, the MNR District Manager will receive notification of the issue in writing from the plan author.  For a request that is received during the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or during the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), the concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR District Manager, and include a description of the issue and, preferably, a proposed solution.
--------------------------	--

<p><b>Step 6</b> Meeting</p>	<p>Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNR District Manager will arrange and attend a meeting of the plan author, the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, and one or more members of the local citizens committee, in order to seek resolution of the issue. If it is helpful, the MNR District Manager may arrange a site visit.</p> <p>If the concerned person(s) cannot be contacted or has not responded, the MNR District Manager will send a letter to the concerned person(s) to provide an additional 15 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter) in order to attempt to arrange and hold a meeting with the concerned person(s).</p>
<p><b>Step 7</b> Issue resolved</p>	<p>If a meeting resulted in resolution of the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.</p>
<p><b>Step 8</b> No meeting or Issue not resolved</p>	<p>If there was no meeting because the concerned person(s) was not available, or a meeting resulted in no resolution of the issue, the MNR District Manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s) and the local citizens committee, to recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNR District Manager.</p>
<p><b>Step 9</b> District Manager Decision</p>	<p>The MNR District Manager will consider the results of the meeting and the submissions, and produce a written decision on the issue, with reasons, normally within 15 days of the meeting or receipt of the written submissions.</p> <p>At the latest, the MNR District Manager’s decision will be made within 15 days after the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or the public review of the draft planned operations (Phase II), in order to reflect the decision in the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.5.2 and 2.3.2).</p> <p>The MNR District Manager will provide a copy of the written decision to the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee and the MNR Regional Director.</p> <p>The MNR District Manager’s written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNR Regional Director within 30 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).</p>

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6

MNR Regional Director Stage

The MNR Regional Director stage applies if a concerned person(s) requests a review of the MNR District Manager’s decision.

1 The MNR Regional Director stage also applies to a request that is received during the 30  
 2 days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest  
 3 management plan (Phase I), or a request that is received during the 30 days following the  
 4 completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations for the  
 5 second five-year term (Phase II).  
 6

<p><b>Step 10</b> Request</p>	<p>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR Regional Director, and include a description of the issue, preferably a proposed solution, and possible dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.</p> <p>Upon receipt of the submission, any other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by the MNR District Manager that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or the draft planned operations (Phase II), has been requested.</p>
<p><b>Step 11</b> Meeting</p>	<p>Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNR Regional Director will arrange and attend a meeting of the plan author, the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, and one or more members of the local citizens committee, in order to seek resolution of the issue.</p> <p>If there was no meeting because the concerned person(s) could not be contacted within the 15 days, or was not available to meet, the MNR Regional Director will solicit the views and comments from the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee, and the MNR District Manager, to assist in making a decision.</p>
<p><b>Step 12</b> Regional Director Decision</p>	<p>The MNR Regional Director will consider the results of the meeting and the written submissions, and produce a written decision on the issue, with reasons, normally within 15 days of the meeting, or within 30 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution. The MNR Regional Director will provide a copy of the written decision, with reasons, to the concerned person(s), any other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee and the MNR District Manager.</p> <p>The MNR Regional Director's decision will include a statement that if the concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the MNR Regional Director's decision, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment during the period for public inspection of the MNR-approved plan (Phase I), or the MNR-approved planned operations (Phase II), for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan (Phase I) or the planned operations (Phase II).</p>



1 3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment  
2

3 Any person may make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual  
4 environmental assessment under the *Environmental Assessment Act* of specific proposed  
5 forest management activities in a forest management plan. A request is normally made when  
6 a concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process.  
7

8 The process for a request for an individual environmental assessment applies in the  
9 preparation of the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I) and the planning of operations  
10 for the second five-year term (Phase II). For Phase I, the timeframe in which a request can be  
11 made is the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management  
12 plan. For Phase II, the timeframe in which a request can be made is the 30-day period for  
13 public inspection of the MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term.  
14

15 For any request for an individual environmental assessment, the following process will  
16 apply:  
17

- 18 1. At the commencement of public inspection of an MNR-approved forest management  
19 plan for the ten-year period, and at the commencement of public inspection of the  
20 MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term, there shall be a 30-day  
21 period for any person(s) to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment  
22 for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management  
23 activities in the plan.  
24
- 25 2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District  
26 Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally  
27 have 15 days to respond to the Minister of the Environment on the request.  
28
- 29 3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 45 days  
30 of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of Environmental  
31 Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit additional necessary  
32 information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the  
33 documentation submitted by MNR.  
34
- 35 4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 45 days of  
36 receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and  
37 Approvals Branch, shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe  
38 for a decision, to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and  
39 MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person(s) requesting an individual  
40 environmental assessment.  
41
- 42 5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that  
43 approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or  
44 conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director,  
45 upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of  
46 Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations  
47 to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

- 1  
2 6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental  
3 assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require  
4 an individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the  
5 Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional  
6 Director, the plan author and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental  
7 assessment that the request has been denied, with reasons.  
8
- 9 7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment,  
10 the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural  
11 Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author  
12 and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will  
13 be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review  
14 and approval under the *Environmental Assessment Act*. The specific proposed forest  
15 management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the  
16 individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the  
17 Minister of the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given  
18 written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management  
19 activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the  
20 individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be  
21 granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of  
22 Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch.

1 **4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT**  
2 **PLANNING**

3  
4 **4.1 Introduction**  
5

6 For the purposes of this section, the reference to an Aboriginal community means an  
7 Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional  
8 uses may be affected by forest management activities.  
9

10 This section describes the requirements for the involvement of Aboriginal communities, and  
11 consideration of their interests, in forest management planning.  
12

13 This section describes the requirements to develop a consultation approach with each  
14 Aboriginal community. This section also describes consultation efforts that will be required  
15 if a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been agreed upon, or the  
16 Aboriginal community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.  
17

18 The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least six months prior  
19 to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the  
20 forest management plan to discuss the opportunities to be involved in the planning and  
21 implementation of the forest management plan.  
22

23 The consideration of Aboriginal interests through the involvement of Aboriginal  
24 communities in forest management planning as described in this section is intended, in part,  
25 to assist the Crown in addressing obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the  
26 *Constitution Act, 1982*.  
27

28  
29 **4.2 Planning Team**  
30

31 When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNR District  
32 Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to offer an opportunity for a representative  
33 of the community to participate on the planning team.  
34

35 The Aboriginal member(s) of the planning team will be reimbursed by the MNR for  
36 reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and will be provided a reasonable per diem for  
37 attendance at planning team meetings.  
38

39 If an Aboriginal community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a  
40 consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the requirements  
41 of Part A, Section 4.4, the approach may describe how the community will interact with the  
42 planning team.

1 **4.3 Local Citizens Committee**  
2

3 When reviewing the membership of the local citizens committee (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the  
4 MNR District Manager will invite each Aboriginal community to nominate a representative,  
5 and will consider the nominations when appointing a member or members to the local  
6 citizens committee.  
7

8  
9 **4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning**  
10

11 A consultation approach will describe the involvement of the Aboriginal community, and the  
12 consideration of the community's interests, in the production and implementation of the  
13 forest management plan, and will provide a process for exchanging necessary information in  
14 a timely manner.  
15

16 The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least 6 months prior  
17 to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the  
18 forest management plan to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation  
19 approach for forest management planning with the community (Part A, Section 1.1.8) The  
20 MNR District Manager will make ongoing reasonable efforts to engage each Aboriginal  
21 community in the development of an agreed upon consultation approach.  
22

23 If a consultation approach is prepared, it will be developed jointly by representatives of the  
24 community, MNR representatives and the plan author. In the development of the approach,  
25 the Aboriginal community may choose to co-ordinate efforts with other Aboriginal  
26 communities, or seek advice from the applicable treaty organization. If the MNR District  
27 Manager and the Aboriginal community agree, an existing approach for consultation may be  
28 considered in the development of the consultation approach.  
29

30 Normally, the consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and MNR prior  
31 to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a forest management plan  
32 (Phase I, Stage One). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of  
33 Stage One, the requirements described in Part A, Section 4.5 will apply until an agreed upon  
34 approach is developed.  
35

36 The consultation approach for each community will normally address the community's  
37 involvement in the production of the forest management plan, the planning of operations for  
38 the second five-year term, contingency plans, amendments to forest management plans and  
39 contingency plans, annual work schedules and insect pest management programs. In the  
40 development of the consultation approach, the information and timing requirements of the  
41 formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that the schedule for plan  
42 production and implementation is maintained.  
43

44 The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices, consultation  
45 forums, information availability, written responses to comments and submissions, and

1 opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local  
2 citizens committee. The consultation approach will normally also address:

- 3
- 4 (a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;
  - 5 (b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;
  - 6 (c) specific information or summaries which require translation;
  - 7 (d) contents and formats of notices;
  - 8 (e) identification of local publications in the Aboriginal media which are used by the  
9 community;
  - 10 (f) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as  
11 community meetings or special information centres;
  - 12 (g) involvement in the preparation and update of the Aboriginal Background  
13 Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), including the Aboriginal values map,  
14 and conditions on the public availability of Aboriginal values information;
  - 15 (h) method and timing for review and comment on the Aboriginal Background  
16 Information Report;
  - 17 (i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect Aboriginal values;
  - 18 (j) involvement in the preparation and update of the Report on the Protection of  
19 Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);
  - 20 (k) method and timing for review and comment on the Report on the Protection of  
21 Identified Aboriginal Values; and
  - 22 (l) the update of the consultation approach prior to the planning of operations for the  
23 second five-year term.
- 24

25 If MNR and the Aboriginal community agree, changes to the consultation approach may be  
26 made during the production and implementation of the forest management plan.

27

28 Before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR  
29 District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to confirm the continued use of the  
30 consultation approach developed with the community. In those circumstances where a  
31 consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been developed, the MNR  
32 District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the community to discuss  
33 the development of a consultation approach with the community. The MNR planning team  
34 member(s) assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison will follow-up with each Aboriginal  
35 community within 15 days to confirm the approach or discuss changes to the approach, or to  
36 develop an approach.

37

38 If an agreed upon consultation approach is developed, the consultation approach will apply  
39 during the production and implementation of the forest management plan. If an agreed upon  
40 consultation approach has been developed, but the Aboriginal community chooses not to use  
41 the approach, the following requirements will apply:

42

- 43 (a) Part A, Section 4.5, for forest management plans;
- 44 (b) Part C, Section 6.0, for amendments to forest management plans and contingency  
45 plans, and contingency plans; and
- 46 (c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

1 **4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach**

2  
3 If a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community is not agreed upon in accordance  
4 with Part A, Section 4.4, or if an agreed upon consultation approach has been developed, but  
5 the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in  
6 this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the *Constitution Act,*  
7 *1982,* may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

8  
9 For each notice required for a forest management plan and the planning of operations for the  
10 second-five year term, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community  
11 in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A  
12 media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

13  
14 If a public information centre is scheduled, the MNR District Manager will contact each  
15 Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information  
16 centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

17  
18  
19 **4.5.1 Forest Management Plans**

20  
21 The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3 will apply, with  
22 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to  
23 the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

24  
25  
26 **4.5.1.1 Phase I Consultation**

27  
28 Stage One – Invitation to Participate

29  
30 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.1, and  
31 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
32 community will contain:

- 33  
34 (a) an invitation to participate in the review and update of the existing Aboriginal  
35 Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), and the community  
36 demographic profile (Part A, Section 4.6.2); and  
37 (b) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the  
38 review and update of the report.

39  
40  
41 Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

42  
43 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.2, and  
44 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
45 community will contain:

- 1 (a) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
2 the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report and the community  
3 demographic profile, within a 30-day review period (to advise the community  
4 when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);  
5 (b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations to  
6 address identified Aboriginal values; and  
7 (c) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the  
8 planning of forest management operations to address identified Aboriginal  
9 values.

10  
11  
12 Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

13  
14 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.3, and  
15 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
16 community will contain:

- 17  
18 (a) a request to inspect the Aboriginal Background Information Report and the  
19 community demographic profile;  
20 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
21 the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A,  
22 Section 4.6.3) within a 60-day review period (to advise the community when  
23 comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and  
24 (c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the  
25 Aboriginal community.

26  
27 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to  
28 remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

29  
30  
31 Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

32  
33 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, and  
34 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
35 community will contain:

- 36  
37 (a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal  
38 Values;  
39 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
40 the draft forest management plan within a 60-day review period (to advise the  
41 community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and  
42 (c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the  
43 Aboriginal community.

44  
45 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to  
46 remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

1 Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

2  
3 The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5 will apply, with  
4 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

5  
6  
7 4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation

8  
9 At the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR  
10 District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to invite their participation in the  
11 review and update of the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report and the Report  
12 on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.

13  
14  
15 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

16  
17 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.1, and  
18 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
19 community will contain:

- 20  
21 (a) a request to inspect the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report;  
22 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
23 the updated Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values within a 30-  
24 day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a  
25 specific date will be provided); and  
26 (c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the  
27 Aboriginal community.

28  
29 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to  
30 remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

31  
32  
33 Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

34  
35 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, and  
36 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
37 community will contain:

- 38  
39 (a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal  
40 Values; and  
41 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to provide comments on the draft  
42 planned operations within a 30-day review period (to advise the community  
43 when comments are due, a specific date will be provided).



## 1 Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

2  
3 The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3 will apply, with  
4 modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

### 5 6 7 **4.6 Documentation**

8  
9 During the preparation of a forest management plan, a number of documents related to  
10 Aboriginal involvement will be prepared. These documents include an Aboriginal  
11 Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values and  
12 a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement. MNR shall seek advice from each Aboriginal  
13 community regarding the public availability of Aboriginal values information in those  
14 documents.

#### 15 16 17 4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report

18  
19 MNR and representatives of participating Aboriginal communities will review and update the  
20 existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native Background Information  
21 Report, if applicable, for the current approved forest management plan, to produce an  
22 Aboriginal Background Information Report as part of the management unit description (Part  
23 B, Section 2.6). The existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native  
24 Background Information Report, if applicable, will be available at the commencement of  
25 formal public consultation (Phase I, Stage One) and a draft Aboriginal Background  
26 Information Report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed long-term  
27 management direction (Phase I, Stage Two).  
28

29 The Aboriginal Background Information Report summarizes, for each Aboriginal  
30 community, past and current resource use and recent forest management-related concerns,  
31 and includes an Aboriginal values map. Specifically, the report will contain:

- 32
- 33 (a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit by  
34 Aboriginal communities, in particular hunting, fishing, trapping and  
35 gathering;
  - 36 (b) forest management-related problems and issues for those Aboriginal  
37 communities;
  - 38 (c) an Aboriginal values map which identifies the locations\* of natural resource  
39 features, land uses and values which are used by, or of importance to, those  
40 Aboriginal communities. In particular, the following features, land uses and  
41 values will be mapped:
    - 42 (i) areas of significance to local Aboriginal communities, such as areas  
43 used for traditional or recreational activities;
    - 44 (ii) boundaries of trapline management areas of those Aboriginal  
45 communities (i.e., all registered trapline areas associated with  
46 individual Aboriginal communities);
    - 47 (iii) Reserves and Aboriginal communities;

- 1 (iv) areas that have been identified as being required as Reserve lands or  
2 for economic or capital development projects of those Aboriginal  
3 communities;  
4 (v) areas used by those Aboriginal communities for fuelwood or building  
5 materials;  
6 (vi) sites of local archaeological, historical, religious and cultural heritage  
7 significance to those Aboriginal communities, including Aboriginal  
8 cemeteries, spirit sites and burial sites; and  
9 (vii) areas of archaeological potential as a result of Aboriginal involvement  
10 in the archaeological predictive modelling; and  
11 (d) a summary of the negotiations between MNR and Aboriginal communities.  
12

13 *\* Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which  
14 case information would not normally be shown on the Aboriginal values map(s).*  
15

16 The report will be updated for use in the planning of operations for the second five-year term  
17 (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3).  
18  
19

#### 20 4.6.2 Social and Economic Description 21

22 The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will  
23 include a demographic profile for each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the  
24 management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management  
25 activities (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10). The MNR planning team representative, who is the  
26 liaison with Aboriginal communities, will contact each Aboriginal community to invite the  
27 community to provide, verify and update information in the community demographic profile.  
28  
29

#### 30 4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values 31

32 In the planning of operations in the forest management plan, the planning team, with the  
33 support of MNR, will produce a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values. The  
34 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values documents how Aboriginal interests,  
35 including values identified in the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A,  
36 Section 4.6.1) which are affected by the proposed operations, have been addressed.  
37

38 In the preparation of the forest management plan, a preliminary report will be available at the  
39 time of public review of the proposed operations for the first five-year term (Phase I, Stage  
40 Three), and will include:  
41

- 42 (a) a summary of proposed operations, and a discussion of proposed primary and  
43 branch road corridors of interest to the Aboriginal community;  
44 (b) the most current version of the values map(s) and the Aboriginal values map;  
45 (c) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of  
46 concern associated with identified Aboriginal values;

- 1 (d) a discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering  
2 activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations; and  
3 (e) a comment sheet, and the names of an Aboriginal community contact person  
4 and an MNR contact person.  
5

6 The final report will be available at the time of public review of the draft Forest Management  
7 Plan (Phase I, Stage Four), and will include:  
8

- 9 (a) the draft Forest Management Plan Summary;  
10 (b) the updated current version of the values map(s) and the updated Aboriginal  
11 values map;  
12 (c) a discussion of proposed primary branch road corridors of interest to the  
13 Aboriginal community;  
14 (d) a discussion of the updated operational prescriptions for specific areas of  
15 concern associated with identified Aboriginal values; and  
16 (e) an updated discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and  
17 gathering activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations.  
18

19 In the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the report will be updated to  
20 address the proposed operations for the second five-year term. The updated Report on  
21 Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be prepared and reviewed in accordance with  
22 the agreed upon consultation approach developed for each Aboriginal community.  
23

24 During the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan (Part C, Section 1.0),  
25 the Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be updated, if proposed forest  
26 operations in the amendment potentially affect Aboriginal interests.  
27

28 For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the  
29 preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part  
30 C, Section 2.2).  
31

#### 32 33 4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement 34

35 A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement in the production of the forest management plan will  
36 be prepared by the MNR planning team member assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison. The  
37 summary will include:  
38

- 39 (a) a list of the Aboriginal communities, and the primary contact person for each  
40 community;  
41 (b) a list of the communities' representatives on the planning team and local  
42 citizens committee;  
43 (c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;  
44 (d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;  
45 (e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and  
46 planning team responses;

- 1 (f) a summary of participation at public information centres and special  
2 information centres for the community; and  
3 (g) a summary of the implementation of the consultation approach for each  
4 Aboriginal community, where applicable.  
5

6 For the production of the forest management plan, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement  
7 will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan,  
8 and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the  
9 approved forest management plan. For the planning of operations for the second five-year  
10 term, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be included in the supplementary  
11 documentation of the draft planned operations, and an updated summary will be included in  
12 the supplementary documentation of the approved operations.  
13

14 A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be prepared for Aboriginal involvement in the  
15 preparation of a minor and major amendment to a forest management plan or a contingency  
16 plan (Part C, Sections 6.2 and 6.3), a contingency plan (Part C, Section 6.4), and annual  
17 operations (Part D, Section 8.0).

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1			
2	<b>PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS .....</b>	<b>4</b>	
3	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>11</b>	
4	<b>2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION.....</b>	<b>12</b>	
5	2.1 Administration .....	12	
6	2.2 Forest Description .....	12	
7	2.2.1 Geology, Soils and Sites .....	12	
8	2.2.2 Historic Forest.....	12	
9	2.2.3 Planning Inventory.....	13	
10	2.2.4 Fish and Wildlife Resources .....	13	
11	2.2.5 Other Forest Resources .....	14	
12	2.2.6 Landscape Pattern .....	14	
13	2.3 Existing Roads .....	15	
14	2.4 Land Use Description.....	15	
15	2.5 Social and Economic Description .....	16	
16	2.5.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context.....	16	
17	2.5.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles.....	16	
18	2.5.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest.....	16	
19	2.6 Aboriginal Background Information Report.....	17	
20	2.7 Values Maps.....	17	
21	<b>3.0 LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION .....</b>	<b>18</b>	
22	3.1 Introduction.....	18	
23	3.2 Current Forest Condition .....	18	
24	3.2.1 Forest Units .....	18	
25	3.2.2 Habitat.....	18	
26	3.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern .....	19	
27	3.2.4 Other Forest Classifications .....	19	
28	3.3 Silvicultural Ground Rules.....	19	
29	3.4 Management Considerations.....	19	
30	3.5 Desired Forest and Benefits .....	20	
31	3.6 Objectives and Indicators.....	20	
32	3.7 Management Strategy .....	20	
33	3.8 Available Harvest Area.....	22	
34	3.9 Selection of Areas for Operations.....	22	
35	3.10 Assessment of Objective Achievement.....	22	
36	3.11 Social and Economic Assessment.....	23	
37	<b>4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS.....</b>	<b>24</b>	
38	4.1 Introduction.....	24	
39	4.2 Prescriptions for Operations.....	24	
40	4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern .....	24	
41	4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas .....	25	
42	4.3 Harvest Operations.....	25	
43	4.3.1 Harvest Areas .....	26	
44	4.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area .....	27	

1	4.3.3	Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan .....	27
2	4.3.4	Planned Clearcuts.....	27
3	4.3.5	Harvest Volume .....	27
4	4.3.6	Wood Utilization.....	28
5	4.3.7	Salvage.....	28
6	4.3.8	Contingency Area and Volume.....	29
7	4.4	Renewal and Tending Operations.....	29
8	4.4.1	Renewal and Tending Areas .....	29
9	4.4.2	Renewal Support.....	29
10	4.5	Roads .....	30
11	4.5.1	Roads and Road Corridors .....	30
12	4.5.2	Roads and Areas of Concern.....	31
13	4.6	Revenues and Expenditures .....	31
14	4.7	Monitoring and Assessment.....	32
15	4.7.1	Forest Operations Inspections.....	32
16	4.7.2	Exceptions.....	33
17	4.7.3	Assessment of Regeneration Success .....	33
18	4.7.4	Roads and Water Crossings .....	33
19	4.8	Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction.....	33
20	<b>5.0</b>	<b>DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY.....</b>	<b>35</b>
21	<b>6.0</b>	<b>DOCUMENTATION.....</b>	<b>36</b>
22	6.1	Supplementary Documentation.....	36
23	6.2	Other Documentation.....	38
24	<b>7.0</b>	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>39</b>
25	<b>8.0</b>	<b>PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM.....</b>	<b>40</b>
26	8.1	Introduction.....	40
27	8.2	Prescriptions for Operations .....	45
28	8.3	Harvest Operations .....	45
29	8.4	Renewal and Tending Operations.....	46
30	8.5	Roads .....	46
31	8.6	Revenues and Expenditures .....	46
32	8.7	Monitoring and Assessment.....	47
33	8.8	Supplementary Documentation.....	47
34	8.9	Planned Operations Summary .....	48
35	<b>9.0</b>	<b>FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES.....</b>	<b>49</b>

**LIST OF TABLES**

1			
2			
3	FMP-1:	Management Unit Land Summary .....	50
4	FMP-2:	Summary of Crown Productive Forest by Provincial Forest Type .....	52
5	FMP-3:	Description of Forest Units .....	54
6	FMP-4:	Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit.....	56
7	FMP-5:	Silvicultural Ground Rules.....	58
8	FMP-6:	Summary of Management Objectives.....	60
9	FMP-7:	Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest.....	62
10	FMP-8:	Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species .....	64
11	FMP-9:	Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit.....	66
12	FMP-10:	Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group .....	68
13	FMP-11:	Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures.....	70
14	FMP-12:	Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances .....	72
15	FMP-13:	Assessment of Objective Achievement.....	74
16	FMP-14:	Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern .....	76
17	FMP-15:	Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area.....	78
18	FMP-16:	Planned Clearcuts (5-year).....	80
19	FMP-17:	Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year) .....	82
20	FMP-18:	Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year).....	84
21	FMP-19:	Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Wood Utilization by Mill .....	86
22	FMP-20:	Contingency Area: Harvest Area and Volume.....	88
23	FMP-21:	Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations .....	90
24	FMP-22:	Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management .....	92
25		.....	92
26	FMP-23:	Road Crossings of Areas of Concern .....	94
27	FMP-24:	Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year).....	96
28	FMP-25:	Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year).....	98

**LIST OF FIGURES**

29			
30			
31			
32			
33	Figure B-1A:	Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page.....	5
34	Figure B-1B:	Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page .....	6
35	Figure B-2:	Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions .....	7
36	Figure B-3:	Forest Management Plan Contributors.....	8
37	Figure B-4:	Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management .....	9
38		Plan .....	9
39	Figure B-5A:	Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page.....	41
40	Figure B-5B:	Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page .....	42
41	Figure B-6:	Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions.....	43
42	Figure B-7:	Phase II Planned Operations Contributors .....	44

1 **PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT**  
2 **REQUIREMENTS**

3  
4 All forest management plans scheduled for renewal and implementation commencing April 1,  
5 2007 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A and Part B of this *Forest*  
6 *Management Planning Manual*.

7  
8 Part B of this manual prescribes the plan content requirements for a forest management plan  
9 in Ontario. This part will act as a template for writing the forest management plan. A forest  
10 management plan is comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Forest  
11 management plans must contain page numbers and line numbers.

12  
13 During the preparation, review and approval of the forest management plan (Phase I), the  
14 documentation requirements of Part B will apply, with the exception of Section 8.0. During  
15 the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), the documentation  
16 requirements of Part B, Section 8.0 will apply.

17  
18  
19 **PLAN CERTIFICATION AND APPROVAL PAGE**

20  
21 The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-1A) will be  
22 located at the front of each draft and approved forest management plan.

23  
24 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the  
25 draft and final forest management plan. For plans prepared by an organization other than  
26 MNR, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title,  
27 certification and approval page. The approved forest management plan must also be signed by  
28 the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director.

29  
30 If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard  
31 expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a forest management plan,  
32 those people will certify the parts of the plan that they prepared, and that they have prepared  
33 those parts of the plan in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. Their  
34 certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B.

35  
36 A list of exceptions (Figure B-2) will follow the title and certification page.

37  
38 The list of forest management plan contributors (Figure B-3) will follow the list of exceptions.



1 **Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
4 for the  
5 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

6  
7 [MNR Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization]  
9 for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

10  
11 I hereby certify that I have prepared this forest management plan, including the Silvicultural  
12 Ground Rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the  
13 requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

14  
15  
16  
17 [R.P.F. seal] \_\_\_\_\_ [Plan Author]\* \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

18  
19  
20 Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
21 (where applicable) [Senior official of  
22 plan author's organization,  
23 if other than MNR]

24  
25 I recommend that this forest management plan be approved for implementation and certify  
26 that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management*  
27 *Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements  
28 with Aboriginal people. I also certify that the forest management plan has been prepared in  
29 accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In  
30 this forest management plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or  
31 recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached  
32 List of Exceptions.

33  
34 Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

35  
36  
37  
38 \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
39 [MNR District Manager]

40 Approved by:

41  
42  
43 \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
44 [MNR Regional Director]

**Figure B-1B: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page**

For Sections of the Forest Management Plan not Prepared by the Plan Author

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]

for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the forest management plan as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

**Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the forest management plan that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

Description of Exception	Specific Section of Plan

**Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

Plan Author	_____	_____
	_____	_____
	_____	_____

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

_____	_____
_____	_____

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

*A brief statement which reports on the local citizens committee's agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan:*

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PLAN REVIEWERS

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. It will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

**INDEX TO THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT COMPONENTS OF THE FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

The index to the environmental assessment components of the forest management plan (Figure B-4) will be located in the forest management plan, on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents. The page numbers of the forest management plan that address each of the environmental assessment components will be listed in the third column.

**Figure B-4: Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management Plan**

Environmental Assessment Component	Section of Forest Management Plan	Section Number
Background Information	Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ forest management guides used</li> <li>▪ values map</li> <li>▪ information on other forest resources</li> <li>▪ Forest Resource Inventory update sources</li> <li>▪ Aboriginal Background Information Report</li> <li>▪ recommendations from year seven management unit annual report</li> </ul>	
Description of the Environment Affected	Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0) Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3) Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4) Roads (Part B, Section 4.5) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ forest management guides used</li> <li>▪ values map</li> <li>▪ information on other forest resources</li> <li>▪ Forest Resource Inventory update sources</li> <li>▪ Aboriginal Background Information Report</li> <li>▪ digital stand list</li> </ul>	
Description of the Selection of Operations and the Alternatives which were Considered	Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0) Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3) Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4) Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2) Roads (Part B, Section 4.5) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ analysis package</li> <li>▪ road planning</li> <li>▪ area of concern planning</li> <li>▪ digital stand list</li> </ul>	

<b>Environmental Assessment Component</b>	<b>Section of Forest Management Plan</b>	<b>Section Number</b>
Description of the Proposed Activities	Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3) Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4) Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2) Roads (Part B, Section 4.5) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ road planning</li> <li>▪ area of concern planning</li> <li>▪ digital stand list</li> </ul>	
Description of the Expected Effects on the Environment and Proposed Mitigation Measures	Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0) Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1) Roads (Part B, Section 4.5) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ road planning</li> <li>▪ area of concern planning</li> </ul>	
Description of Proposed Monitoring	Silvicultural Ground Rules (Part B, Section 3.3) Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1) Roads (Part B, Section 4.5) Monitoring and Assessment (Part B, Section 4.7) Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ monitoring programs</li> <li>▪ road planning</li> <li>▪ area of concern planning</li> </ul>	
Description of Public Consultation and A Summary of the Results	Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ public consultation summary</li> <li>▪ report of the local citizens committee</li> <li>▪ issues addressed</li> <li>▪ required alterations from draft plan review</li> </ul>	
Any Other Environmental Assessment Matters		

1 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

2

3 The introduction will describe the purpose of the plan and set the context for the plan locally,  
4 regionally and provincially.

5

6 The introduction will also contain a brief description of how MNR's Statement of  
7 Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from  
8 time to time, has been considered in the development of the plan. The text will reference the  
9 section of the supplementary documentation that contains the SEV briefing note.

1   **2.0   MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION**

2  
3   **2.1   Administration**

4  
5   The plan text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A,  
6   Section 1.1.1.1), the tenure arrangements of the forest company(ies) which operate on the  
7   management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and  
8   arrangements.

9  
10   This section will also contain a management unit map, at a scale that will fit a standard page,  
11   containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit.  
12   The map must identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and where applicable,  
13   the location of the sustainable forest licensee’s office. The date that the present management  
14   unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last  
15   plan was prepared will be in the plan text.

16  
17  
18   **2.2   Forest Description**

19  
20   The plan text will describe the physical context within which forest management planning is  
21   carried out.

22  
23  
24   2.2.1   Geology, Soils and Sites

25  
26   The plan text will describe the geology, soils and sites which occur on the management unit.  
27   This information may also be presented in map format.

28  
29   The description of geology will include a discussion of the geological history and significant  
30   landforms on the management unit. The discussion of soils will address major soil types, in  
31   terms of their distribution and extent across the management unit. The description of sites will  
32   address major ecosites, in terms of their distribution and extent across the management unit,  
33   and describe the relevant site regions and site districts. A more detailed discussion of ecosites  
34   as they relate to silviculture is required in the silvicultural ground rules (Part B, Section 3.3).

35  
36   A discussion of the implications of geology, soil and site conditions on the development of  
37   the forest management plan will be provided.

38  
39  
40   2.2.2   Historic Forest

41  
42   The plan text will describe the forest types and conditions that occurred on the management  
43   unit in the past (Part A, Section 1.1.7.11), and will include the sources of information used to  
44   describe the historic forest. Factors which have resulted in changes in forest types (e.g.,  
45   species, homogeneity of stands) will be discussed, including man’s use and management of  
46   the forest, and natural processes with an emphasis on fire disturbance. Specific topics such as



1 disturbance sizes and patterns, flora and fauna, historic forest diversity, forest age, forest  
2 productivity, wildlife habitat, and social and economic matters, will be discussed if  
3 information is available.

4  
5 A discussion of the implications of the historic forest on the development of the forest  
6 management plan will be provided.

7  
8  
9 2.2.3 Planning Inventory

10  
11 The plan text will describe the planning inventory in terms of land ownership and discuss the  
12 implications of land ownership (e.g., large areas of private land within the management unit)  
13 and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the  
14 development of the forest management plan. A summary of the land types by land ownership  
15 for the management unit will be provided in FMP-1, which summarizes the status of the land  
16 base at the beginning of the period of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5).

17  
18 The plan text will describe the planning inventory in terms of provincial forest type and age  
19 class and discuss implications of the extent and distribution of provincial forest types and age  
20 classes on the development of the forest management plan. A summary of the Crown  
21 productive forest area on the management unit will be provided in FMP-2, by provincial  
22 forest type and age class. A separate table will be prepared for total Crown productive forest,  
23 managed Crown productive forest, and for other areas of Crown productive forest (Part A,  
24 Section 1.1.7.5).

25  
26 The information in FMP-1 and FMP-2 will be summarized in graphs that clearly display the  
27 information from each table.

28  
29 The plan text will contain a discussion of the information used to update the planning  
30 inventory, any assumptions used to predict the status of the inventory at the beginning of the  
31 plan period, and the reliability of those predictions. The text will reference the section of the  
32 supplementary documentation that contains the list of the sources of information used to  
33 update the planning inventory.

34  
35 If the vintage of the forest stand information in the forest resource inventory will reach 20-  
36 years of age during the period of the forest management plan, the strategy for re-inventory of  
37 the productive forest area on licensed Crown lands within the management unit will be  
38 documented in the text. This strategy will identify the area by forest type that requires re-  
39 inventory within the next ten years and how the Sustainable Forest Licensee intends to carry  
40 out the re-inventory process for these areas.

41  
42  
43 2.2.4 Fish and Wildlife Resources

44  
45 The plan text will describe the fish resources on the management unit, including a summary  
46 of available information on the occurrence of fish species and habitats (e.g., lake trout lakes,

1 brook trout streams) in district fisheries management plans, lake management plans and  
2 inventories (Part A, Section 1.1.7.6).

3  
4 Provincially featured wildlife species (e.g., moose, deer, caribou, pine marten and pileated  
5 woodpecker) that occur on the management unit, and locally featured wildlife species will be  
6 identified, and a general description of their habitat requirements provided.

7  
8 The contribution and importance of, the management unit in supporting the provincially and  
9 locally featured wildlife species, including species that are classified as special concern,  
10 threatened or endangered, will be described. Species for which the contribution to preferred  
11 habitat, on a regional basis, is lower than expected will be specifically identified. Where other  
12 resource management plans or inventories for these species provide information on the extent  
13 and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the  
14 information will be described.

15  
16 The plan text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the  
17 development of the forest management plan.

#### 18 19 20 2.2.5 Other Forest Resources

21  
22 The plan text will describe the other forest resources on the management unit which are  
23 dependent on forest cover (Part A, Section 1.1.7.7), and which are significant in the local,  
24 regional or provincial context.

25  
26 The plan text will contain a general description of special concern, threatened and endangered  
27 flora that is present on the management unit and their habitat.

28  
29 The plan text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g.,  
30 significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) which occur on the management unit.  
31 The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be, affected  
32 by forest management operations will be discussed.

33  
34 A discussion of the implications of the other forest resources on the development of the forest  
35 management plan will be provided.

#### 36 37 38 2.2.6 Landscape Pattern

39  
40 The plan text will describe the current forest landscape patterns (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3) and  
41 discuss the implications the forest landscape patterns have on the development of the forest  
42 management plan.

43  
44 The forest landscape patterns at the start of the plan are portrayed on the forest landscape  
45 patterns map, in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the  
46 supplementary documentation containing the forest landscape patterns map.

1   **2.3   Existing Roads**

2  
3   The plan text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section  
4   1.1.7.9). Existing roads and approved primary road corridors will be portrayed on the values  
5   maps in the supplementary documentation. Primary roads, and roads that are the  
6   responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, will be differentiated. The maps will also  
7   identify roads with access controls. The text will reference the section of the supplementary  
8   documentation that contains the values maps.

9  
10   Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee,  
11   and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table  
12   (Appendix II) in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the  
13   section of the supplementary documentation that contains the Existing Roads Table.

14  
15   If a new or changed use management strategy was developed for an existing road or road  
16   network (Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.6), documentation of the use management strategy  
17   development (Appendix VII) will be provided in the supplementary documentation. The text  
18   will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains Appendix VII.

19  
20  
21   **2.4   Land Use Description**

22  
23   The plan text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8) and  
24   their implications on the forest management plan. The text will reference the section of the  
25   supplementary documentation that contains the values maps of these land uses. The land uses  
26   include:

- 27  
28       (a)    resource-based tourism areas;  
29       (b)    mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;  
30       (c)    crown land recreation and cottaging;  
31       (d)    trapping (commercial fur); and  
32       (e)    private land.

33  
34   The plan text will describe the parks and protected areas within the boundary of the  
35   management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives. This  
36   description will include a list of the provincial parks, conservation reserves, and other  
37   protected areas (e.g., national parks, forest reserves), the management emphasis for the  
38   protected area and, if applicable, the class of park. In addition, the plan text will describe any  
39   management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity  
40   of these areas.

41  
42   The plan text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the  
43   Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have  
44   implications for forest management activities. The plan text will describe any management  
45   implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.

1 **2.5 Social and Economic Description**

2  
3 The social and economic description for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.7.10,  
4 Appendix IV) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The plan text  
5 will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the social and  
6 economic description.

7  
8  
9 2.5.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context

10  
11 The plan text will list communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other  
12 forest products from the management unit, communities that have substantial employment  
13 related to the forest industry and Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management  
14 unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

15  
16  
17 2.5.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

18  
19 Demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section 2.5.1 will be  
20 summarized in the text. The summary will include:

- 21  
22 (a) population trends for each community;  
23 (b) community diversity for each community;  
24 (c) income for each community; and  
25 (d) employment by industry for each community.

26  
27 The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities.

28  
29 The demographic profiles will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan.  
30 The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
31 complete profiles.

32  
33  
34 2.5.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

35  
36 The plan text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest  
37 organized by sector. The sectors include:

- 38  
39 (a) timber;  
40 (b) recreation and tourism;  
41 (c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and  
42 (d) other.

1   **2.6    Aboriginal Background Information Report**

2  
3   The plan text will summarize the use of natural resources on the management unit by  
4   Aboriginal communities and forest management-related problems and issues for those  
5   communities. The Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) will be  
6   included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section  
7   of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete report.  
8

9  
10   **2.7    Values Maps**

11  
12   The plan text will briefly describe the information portrayed on the values maps (Part A,  
13   Section 1.1.7.8), and how it was used in the preparation of the forest management plan. The  
14   values maps will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will  
15   describe how the information on the values maps is organized (e.g., one map, series of maps)  
16   and reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the values maps.  
17

18   Accompanying text in the supplementary documentation will include a list of sources of the  
19   information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the values data base; identification  
20   of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which  
21   data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.  
22

23   For cultural heritage values, including areas of archaeological potential, resource-based  
24   tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities, a brief description of  
25   the information portrayed on the values maps and the sources of the information will be  
26   provided in the supplementary documentation. Not all old growth red and white pine forest  
27   communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any  
28   such community will not be managed for old growth values must be provided in the  
29   supplementary documentation.  
30

31   The plan text will describe the management implications of natural resource features, land  
32   uses and values, on the development of the forest management plan.

## 1 **3.0 LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

### 2 **3.1 Introduction**

3  
4  
5 The plan text will outline the components of the long-term management direction. The text  
6 will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation that contain the supporting  
7 information.

### 8 **3.2 Current Forest Condition**

#### 9 3.2.1 Forest Units

10  
11  
12  
13 The plan text will describe the forest units used in the forest management plan (Part A,  
14 Section 1.2.2.1). The forest units for the management unit and the related provincial forest  
15 types, will be identified in FMP-3. The plan text will provide the rationale for the forest units,  
16 and if the forest units differ from those in past plans, the rationale for any changes will be  
17 provided.

18  
19 A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by  
20 forest unit will be provided in FMP-4. The production forest area that is available for timber  
21 production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be  
22 identified separately. The plan text will contain the reasons that production forest area is  
23 unavailable for timber production. The plan text will describe the management implications of  
24 the current area by forest unit, on the development of the forest management plan.

25  
26 The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest modeling  
27 assumptions related to forest units.

#### 28 29 30 3.2.2 Habitat

31  
32 The plan text will describe the habitat classifications used in the forest management plan (Part  
33 A, Section 1.2.2.2). The plan text will also describe any management implications concerning  
34 the distribution and abundance of habitat types that have influenced the long-term  
35 management direction.

36  
37 Where applicable, maps showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of special interest, will  
38 be included in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the  
39 supplementary documentation that contains these maps.

40  
41 The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest modeling  
42 assumptions related to habitat classification.

1 3.2.3 Forest Landscape Pattern

2  
3 The plan text will describe the forest landscape pattern classification and the current forest  
4 landscape pattern (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). Maps of the forest landscape pattern will be  
5 included in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of the  
6 supplementary documentation that contains these maps.

7  
8 The plan text will describe the management implications of the current forest landscape  
9 pattern on the development of the forest management plan.

10  
11  
12 3.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

13  
14 The plan text will describe any other forest classifications used in the development of the  
15 forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The plan text will also describe the  
16 management implications of the results of these classifications on the development of the  
17 forest management plan.

18  
19 The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with any forest modeling  
20 assumptions related to other classifications.

21  
22  
23 **3.3 Silvicultural Ground Rules**

24  
25 The silvicultural ground rules will be documented in FMP-5 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2). Any  
26 silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules that differs from the recommendations  
27 in the appropriate silvicultural guide will be recorded in FMP-5 as an exception, with the  
28 rationale for use of the treatment described in the text of the plan.

29  
30 The plan text will describe the strategic silvicultural options, used to represent silviculture in  
31 the analysis. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the forest  
32 modeling assumptions related to strategic silvicultural options, including rationale and details  
33 for each option, and any sensitivity analysis conducted during the development of the options.

34  
35  
36 **3.4 Management Considerations**

37  
38 The plan text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations  
39 affected the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

40  
41 The plan text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations,  
42 the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past  
43 management direction.

### 3.5 Desired Forest and Benefits

The plan text will describe the desired forest and benefits for the management unit. The text will include a description of how the planning team and local citizens committee considered the background information, the desires of the public and the Aboriginal communities in determining the desired forest and benefits. The plan text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting influenced the desired forest and benefits for the management unit. A summary of the results will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.2.5). The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the results of the meeting.

The plan text will describe the results and conclusions of scoping investigations undertaken to determine the extent to which the desired forest and benefits can be realized over time (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The scoping runs will be included in digital form in the analysis package contained in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the scoping investigations.

### 3.6 Objectives and Indicators

The plan text will describe the management objectives and indicators developed for the management unit. The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category will be identified in FMP-6 for each management objective developed to address the indicators identified in Figure A-5 (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1). For each management objective, the associated indicators, and the time when each indicator is to be assessed, will also be documented in FMP-6.

The plan text will document the desirable levels for indicators. The plan text will also document how desirable levels were established, in consideration of background information (Part A, Section 1.1.7), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5), and the results of the scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5).

Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be identified.

### 3.7 Management Strategy

The plan text will describe the management strategy associated with the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2). The types and levels of activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management objectives investigated during the development of the management strategy, will be described.



1 The plan text will contain a description of the future forest condition projected following  
2 implementation of the management strategy. The outputs of forest modelling for the  
3 management strategy will provide the source for the 100-year projections of quantifiable  
4 objectives, and will be documented in the plan. The projections in the plan include:

- 5
- 6 (a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-7);
- 7 (b) habitat for selected wildlife species (FMP-8);
- 8 (c) available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-9); and
- 9 (d) available harvest volume by species group (FMP-10).

10

11 The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected forest condition, and  
12 the implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit (FMP-7).

13

14 The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected level of habitat for  
15 each selected wildlife species, and the implications of the projected change (FMP-8).

16

17 The projected level of available harvest area (FMP-9) and available harvest volume (FMP-10)  
18 will be portrayed graphically in the plan. The volume graph will also present:

- 19
- 20 (a) projections from past forest management plans;
- 21 (b) historic wood utilization; and
- 22 (c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified  
23 in the *Regional Wood Supply Strategies*.

24

25 The plan text will describe the change from the current to the projected available harvest area  
26 by forest unit and volume by species group, and the implications of the projected change.

27

28 If desirable levels of all management objectives could not be achieved, the implications of not  
29 achieving the desirable levels will be discussed and rationale provided. The results of further  
30 analysis undertaken during development of the management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6)  
31 will be described in the text.

32

33 The projected level of operations, revenues and expenditures will be documented in FMP-11.  
34 The plan text will include a discussion of the analysis conducted by a registered professional  
35 forester to determine the necessary levels of renewal and tending activities and associated  
36 expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the forest management plan. The text  
37 will also describe how the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and associated  
38 expenditures, was used in the development of the management strategy.

39

40 The outputs of forest modelling for the management strategy will be included in digital form  
41 in the analysis package. The decisions made in the development of the management strategy  
42 will be documented in the analysis package. The text will reference the sections of the  
43 analysis package which contain the decisions made and the outputs of forest modeling.

1 The plan text will document any situations where analysis principles (Part A, Section 1.2.4.3)  
2 could not be followed, or were felt to be inappropriate. The documentation will include  
3 rationale for not following the principle.

4  
5 The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in Appendix III.  
6  
7

### 8 **3.8 Available Harvest Area** 9

10 The plan text will describe the levels of available harvest area for each forest unit and discuss  
11 any associated management implications (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2, FMP-9). The text will also  
12 discuss trends in available harvest area from previous plans.  
13  
14

### 15 **3.9 Selection of Areas for Operations** 16

17 The plan text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification of areas  
18 eligible for harvest and the selection of areas for harvest, for the ten-year period (Part A,  
19 Section 1.2.6.4). Areas selected for harvest for the ten-year period will not exceed the  
20 available harvest area by forest unit. The text will document how the criteria reflect upon the  
21 management strategy, and discuss the relative importance of each criterion and its role in  
22 selecting the areas for harvest. The rationale for the selected harvest areas for the ten-year  
23 period, and for each five-year term, will be documented in the plan text.  
24

25 The selected and optional harvest areas map will portray the areas selected for harvest for the  
26 ten-year period, by each five-year term, and the optional harvest areas. The maps will be  
27 contained in the supplementary documentation of the plan and the location of the maps will be  
28 referenced in the plan text. If the selected harvest area by forest unit is not closely balanced  
29 between the two five-year terms, the rationale will be documented in the plan text.  
30

31 The text will describe how the harvest areas selected contribute to the achievement of the  
32 frequency distribution of forest disturbance size class template (FMP-12). Rationale for  
33 harvest areas selected for the ten-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the  
34 template will be provided.  
35

36 The plan text will describe any factors which limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as  
37 unresolved conflicts over forest resource use, and the effects of these limitations on the  
38 achievement of forest management objectives.  
39

40 The text will document input from the public that influenced the selection of areas for harvest.  
41  
42

### 43 **3.10 Assessment of Objective Achievement** 44

45 For each management objective, the plan text will document the results of the assessment of  
46 objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.6.3 and 1.3.7). The levels of objective

1 achievement and their relationship to desirable levels, including any differences, will also be  
2 documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside of the desirable level for an  
3 objective, rationale will be provided. A summary of the management strategy's projected  
4 objective achievement, desirable levels and targets will be recorded in FMP-13.

5  
6  
7 **3.11 Social and Economic Assessment**

8  
9 The plan text will describe the results of the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section  
10 1.2.6.5). The plan text will also describe the methodology used to assess the social and  
11 economic impacts of the management strategy.

## 1   **4.0   PLANNED OPERATIONS**

### 2 3   **4.1   Introduction**

4  
5   The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will  
6   indicate the areas selected for operations for the first five-year term (Part B, Section 3.9) and  
7   will describe their detailed planning of operations.  
8  
9

### 10   **4.2   Prescriptions for Operations**

#### 11 12   4.2.1   Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

13  
14   The operational prescriptions for all areas of concern within the areas of operations for the  
15   five year term, which were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section  
16   1.3.5.1, will be documented in FMP-14.  
17

18   For areas of concern prescriptions that required the completion of supplementary  
19   documentation forms, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation  
20   that contains the additional information, including public and Aboriginal comments, for the  
21   operational prescriptions. Any objections to an operational prescription for an area of concern  
22   as a result of public or Aboriginal comment will be recorded in FMP-14, and objections  
23   related to prescriptions that address visual aesthetics will be specifically highlighted. The  
24   responses to those objections will be documented on the supplementary documentation forms  
25   in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The format for the supplementary  
26   documentation is prescribed in Appendix VIII.  
27

28   Any operational prescription for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or  
29   recommendations (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in  
30   FMP-14 as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7) will  
31   describe the methods which will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational  
32   prescription. The exception will also be recorded in the supplementary documentation  
33   (Appendix VIII). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNR District Manager's  
34   certification and recommendation of the forest management plan for approval (Figure B-2).  
35

36   Areas of concern will be identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the  
37   operational prescriptions will also be portrayed on those maps. All areas of concern  
38   documented in FMP-14 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable, the  
39   supplementary documentation forms in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The  
40   text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
41   operations maps.  
42

43   For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A,  
44   Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the current approved  
45   forest management plan will be documented in FMP-14. The areas of concern will also be  
46   identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions will also  
47   be portrayed on the maps.

1 4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

2  
3 Silvicultural ground rules, which were developed for all forest unit - ecosite combinations on  
4 the management unit, are documented FMP-5 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

5  
6 The plan text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending  
7 presented in FMP-5 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted  
8 areas, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

9  
10 The forest units and silvicultural ground rules for each area of operations will be identified on  
11 the operations maps for the first five-year term. The digital database that accompanies those  
12 maps will serve as the stand list for harvest, renewal and tending operations. The plan text  
13 will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each silvicultural ground rule will be  
14 the most likely treatment. The plan text will also contain a statement that this information  
15 represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of plan preparation, and will  
16 not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural  
17 ground rules at the time of implementation of operations.

18  
19 The locations where the following silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely  
20 to occur during the five-year term will also be portrayed on the operations maps:

- 21  
22 (a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;  
23 (b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;  
24 (c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest  
25 management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a  
26 result of application of the planning procedure for insect pest management  
27 programs; and  
28 (d) areas available for fuelwood.

29  
30 The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
31 operations maps.

32  
33  
34 **4.3 Harvest Operations**

35  
36 The areas planned for harvest operations for the first five-year term, and the areas proposed  
37 for harvest operations for the second five-year term, were identified on the maps and  
38 rationalized in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. The plan text will describe the distribution of harvest  
39 areas between the two five-year terms. If the planned harvest area for the first five-year term  
40 substantially exceeds one-half of the available harvest area by forest unit, rationale will be  
41 provided in the text.

1 The plan text will include a discussion describing how current landscape guide direction,  
2 relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, was considered during the  
3 finalization of harvest operations.

#### 4 5 6 4.3.1 Harvest Areas 7

8 The areas selected for harvest operations for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are  
9 documented in Part B, Section 3.9. The ten-year area is the forecast harvest area. The selected  
10 area for which detailed operational planning has been completed for the first five-year term, is  
11 referred to as the planned harvest area. The available harvest area and the forecast harvest  
12 area for the ten-year period, and the planned harvest area for the first five-year term, will be  
13 described in the text and recorded in FMP-15. If applicable, the plan text will describe the  
14 distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee (FMP-19).

15  
16 A summary of residual stand structure for each planned forest disturbance, in accordance with  
17 the provisions in MNR's approved forest management guide, as revised from time to time,  
18 relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, will be provided in a table in the  
19 supplementary documentation. For planned clearcuts within a planned forest disturbance,  
20 where practical, areas that will be retained as residual stand structure (i.e., insular and  
21 peninsular residual) will be identified on the operations maps for the five-year term. When the  
22 areas of residual stand structure on the operations maps do not meet the recommended area,  
23 the amount of additional area planned to be left during implementation of operations will be  
24 identified in the table in the supplementary documentation. Rationale will be provided in the  
25 supplementary documentation for harvest areas that do not follow the residual stand structure  
26 requirements of the forest management guide. The text will provide a summary of the  
27 rationale and reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the  
28 rationale and summary table.

29  
30 If there are any substantial differences between the available harvest area and the projections  
31 in the management strategy, and the forecast harvest area, the rationale will be documented in  
32 the text. The differences should be evaluated in terms of age class or stage of management  
33 and age class, as applicable.

34  
35 If stands are identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D,  
36 Section 6.0), the area of these stands planned for harvest will be documented in the plan text.  
37 The plan text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

38  
39 The planned harvest areas will be portrayed on the operations maps in the supplementary  
40 documentation of the plan. A digital list of all planned harvest areas will be provided in the  
41 supplementary documentation. The text will reference the sections of the supplementary  
42 documentation that contains the operations maps and list.

1 4.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area

2  
3 The requirements for the planning of surplus harvest areas are described in Part A, Section  
4 1.3.3.1. Any areas within the planned harvest areas, which are in excess of the projected  
5 industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit, will be  
6 identified as surplus harvest area. The plan text will document the total area and volume for  
7 the surplus harvest area. Any limitations on the utilization of the surplus harvest area (e.g.,  
8 lack of markets) will be explained in the plan text. Anticipated effects on the achievement of  
9 management objectives and progress toward the desired forest, if the surplus harvest area is  
10 not harvested, will be documented in the text.

11  
12 Surplus harvest area will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary  
13 documentation. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that  
14 contains the operations maps.

15  
16  
17 4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

18  
19 The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations  
20 are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The plan text will contain a description of the area of  
21 bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also include an acknowledgement that the  
22 bridging operations are limited to three months of harvest operations, and will be completed  
23 by June 30 of the first year of the plan.

24  
25 The plan text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an  
26 estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing  
27 and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

28  
29 Areas of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations will be identified on the  
30 operations maps in the supplementary documentation. The text will reference the section of  
31 the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

32  
33  
34 4.3.4 Planned Clearcuts

35  
36 The requirements for the planning of clearcuts are described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2. The  
37 planned clearcuts for the five-year term will be provided in FMP-16. Each planned clearcut  
38 that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-16, with the accompanying silvicultural  
39 or biological rationale. The maximum and average size of planned clearcuts will be  
40 documented in the plan text.

41  
42  
43 4.3.5 Harvest Volume

44  
45 The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the harvest volume for the forecast harvest  
46 area, for the ten-year period, will be recorded in FMP-17. The method used to estimate the

1 volume for the forecast harvest area will be described in the plan text. If there are any  
2 substantial differences between the available harvest volume and the forecast harvest volume,  
3 by conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

#### 4 5 6 4.3.6 Wood Utilization 7

8 The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization, by product and species,  
9 for each mill reliant on wood supply from the management unit. The text will also include a  
10 discussion of the sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes.

11  
12 The harvest volume for the planned harvest area will be recorded by volume type (i.e.,  
13 utilized and unutilized), product and species in FMP-18. Upon request by a major overlapping  
14 licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for  
15 each licensee or group of licensees. The forecast harvest volume and the planned harvest  
16 volume for each mill which relies on wood supply from the management unit will be  
17 recorded, by species and product, in FMP-19.

18  
19 The plan text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNR wood supply commitment  
20 levels were achieved and the implications. If open market volume has been identified, a  
21 discussion of the implications will be provided in the plan text.

22  
23 If unutilized volume is available for fuelwood, the fuelwood areas will be identified on the  
24 operations maps in the supplementary documentation of the plan and location of the maps will  
25 be referenced in the plan text.

26  
27 The plan text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan is not  
28 an agreement to make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to  
29 supply wood to a particular mill.

#### 30 31 32 4.3.7 Salvage 33

34 The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section  
35 1.3.3.1. The plan text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of  
36 salvage harvest operations. Upon request by a major overlapping licensee and agreement of  
37 the planning team, the salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or  
38 group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-18. Areas of salvage harvest will be identified on  
39 the operations maps in the supplementary documentation of the plan and location of the maps  
40 will be referenced in the plan text.



1 4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

2  
3 The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in  
4 Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The plan text will briefly describe the purpose and function of  
5 contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified.

6  
7 The contingency area and an estimate of the volume for the ten-year period will be recorded  
8 in FMP-20.

9  
10 The contingency area will be identified on the operations maps in the supplementary  
11 documentation. A digital list of all contingency areas will be provided in the supplementary  
12 documentation. The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation  
13 that contains the operations maps and list.

14  
15  
16 **4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations**

17  
18 4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

19  
20 The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A,  
21 Section 1.3.3.3.

22  
23 The forecast and planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvesting  
24 and natural disturbances will be summarized by treatment in FMP-21. The treatments in the  
25 table will be consistent with the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the  
26 silvicultural ground rules (FMP-5). The plan text will describe supplemental treatments or  
27 retreatments, if applicable.

28  
29 The areas selected for renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term will be  
30 portrayed on operations maps for the first five-year term and location of the maps will be  
31 referenced in the plan text.

32  
33 The plan text will provide a comparison of the types and levels of planned treatments for the  
34 first five-year term and the level of regeneration activities projected in the long-term  
35 management direction, and a rationale for any substantial differences.

36  
37  
38 4.4.2 Renewal Support

39  
40 The sustainable forest licensee's program for the collection of seed, and the production of  
41 nursery stock, during the first five-year term will be described in the plan text. A forecast of  
42 the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by  
43 species), for the first five-year term will also be documented in the plan text.

44  
45 Tree improvement activities implemented during the first five-year term to support the  
46 production of improved seed will be described in the plan text, with reference to existing seed

1 orchards and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be  
2 identified on the operations maps and the location of the maps will be referenced in the plan  
3 text.

#### 4 5 6 **4.5 Roads**

##### 7 8 4.5.1 Roads and Road Corridors

9  
10 The plan text will describe the results of primary road corridor planning for 20 years (Part A,  
11 Sections 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.1), and branch road corridor planning for ten years (Part A, Section  
12 1.3.6.2), and identify roads to be constructed during the ten-year period on the management  
13 unit.

14  
15 Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new  
16 primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use management  
17 strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated use management  
18 strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VII).

19  
20 Documentation of new, or changes to existing, use management strategies for primary, branch  
21 and operational roads, or changes to use management strategies for confirmed primary road  
22 corridors, will also be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Part A,  
23 Section 1.3.6.6, Appendix VII).

24  
25 Selected one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads required for the next 20 years,  
26 and confirmed one kilometre wide primary road corridors from the previous forest  
27 management plan, will be identified on the operations maps.

28  
29 Each primary and branch road corridor, within which a road will be constructed during the  
30 ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the portion to be constructed during the  
31 five-year term, will be identified on the operations maps. The 100 metre wide location for  
32 each crossing of an area of concern, and where practical, acceptable variations on the location,  
33 will also be identified on the operations maps.

34  
35 Each new primary and branch road, and network of operational roads (Part A, Section  
36 1.3.6.4), to be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, will be  
37 identified in FMP-22. Planned construction, maintenance, monitoring, access control and  
38 future use management for primary and branch roads, and networks of operational roads, for  
39 the five-year term will also be recorded in FMP-22. For existing primary and branch roads,  
40 and networks of operational roads, maintenance, monitoring, access control and abandonment  
41 and decommissioning activities for the five-year term will also be recorded in the Existing  
42 Roads table (Appendix II). Roads that will be decommissioned during the ten-year period of  
43 the forest management plan will be identified on the operations map.

44  
45 The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that  
46 contains the documentation and maps.

1 4.5.2 Roads and Areas of Concern

2  
3 The plan text will discuss the implications of road crossings of areas of concern that are not  
4 water crossings (Part A, 1.3.6.3 and 1.3.6.4). The plan text will also include a statement that  
5 the 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management  
6 plan for area of concern crossings, which involve water crossings, are preliminary locations  
7 and conditions. The statement will indicate the locations and conditions will be finalized in  
8 the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.6.1), consistent with the acceptable  
9 variations described in the forest management plan.

10  
11 If a primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or  
12 conservation reserve, and where it may be considered in accordance with MNR policy, the  
13 applicable policy and Environmental Assessment Act requirements for parks and protected  
14 areas will also apply. The documentation will be included in the supplementary  
15 documentation and referenced in the plan text.

16  
17 Each 100 metre wide crossing, and any acceptable variations, of an area of concern within a  
18 primary and branch road corridor for the five-year term, will be identified on the operations  
19 maps.

20  
21 For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary and branch road corridor, the  
22 conditions on construction and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions will be  
23 summarized in FMP-23. Documentation of the analysis and rationale for the 100 metre wide  
24 crossing location, construction conditions, and acceptable variations to those locations and  
25 conditions, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VIII).

26  
27 For operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the location(s) or  
28 construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern,  
29 will be summarized in FMP-23. Documentation of the conditions will be provided in the  
30 supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VIII). Where practical, the conditions on  
31 the locations and/or construction will be portrayed on the operations maps.

32  
33 The text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that  
34 contains the documentation and maps.

35  
36  
37 **4.6 Revenues and Expenditures**

38  
39 The plan text will identify the projected revenues from harvest, and expenditures required for  
40 renewal and tending operations, insect pest management and renewal support, and discuss the  
41 associated implications (Part A, Section 1.3.7). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions  
42 and ratios used to estimate revenues and expenditures associated with the implementation of  
43 harvest, renewal and tending operations.

44  
45 The forecast of revenues from harvest operations, and the forecast of expenditures by activity  
46 and funding source, will be summarized in FMP-24 for the five-year term.

## 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The monitoring and assessment program will include forest operation inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.

The monitoring program described in the plan text will include:

- (a) a general description of the forest operations inspection program for the management unit, and specific provisions for monitoring operations in individual areas of concern and groups of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses and values;
- (b) a description of the exceptions monitoring program which will be used to:
  - (i) determine the effectiveness of any silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides as described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* as identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit; and
  - (ii) determine the effectiveness of operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable guides;
- (c) a description of the program for carrying out assessments of regeneration success for both naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including assessments that are used in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence forest region; and
- (d) a description of the program for monitoring roads and water crossings.

### 4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

The sustainable forest licensee's ten-year strategic compliance plan will be developed in accordance with the requirements of MNR's *Guideline for Forest Industry Compliance Planning*. MNR's *Forest Compliance Handbook* also provides guidance for the preparation of the compliance plan. The handbook describes the various types and stages of forest operations inspections, and the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports. The ten-year strategic compliance plan will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to MNR. The compliance plan will be included in the supplementary documentation and referenced in the plan text.

The plan text will describe the MNR district program for auditing forest operations and forest operations inspections. The plan text will also include a description of opportunities for involvement of the local citizens committee in forest operations inspections, and MNR district monitoring of forest operations.

1 4.7.2 Exceptions  
2

3 The plan text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the  
4 management unit. The monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing  
5 and duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the opportunities  
6 for local citizens committee participation, will be included in the supplementary  
7 documentation of the plan, and referenced in the plan text.  
8  
9

10 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success  
11

12 The plan text will describe the monitoring program to assess regeneration success for  
13 naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess the  
14 success of stands managed under the selection silvicultural system (Part A, Section 1.3.8).  
15 The results of assessments are the basis for determining if regeneration levels associated with  
16 the management strategy have been met.  
17

18 The monitoring program will include the methodologies used, timing and duration of  
19 activities, documentation and reporting of results, and opportunities for local citizens  
20 committee participation.  
21

22 The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement  
23 of standards contained in the silvicultural ground rules. The *Silvicultural Effectiveness*  
24 *Monitoring Manual for Ontario* describes the information to be collected and survey  
25 methodologies.  
26

27 A summary of the area to be assessed for the determination of regeneration success will be  
28 provided in FMP-25. The plan text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be  
29 successfully regenerated during each five-year term.  
30  
31

32 4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings  
33

34 A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out  
35 during the first five-year term will be provided in the plan text. The description will include  
36 the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to  
37 determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for  
38 each road or road network will be recorded in FMP-23.  
39  
40

41 **4.8 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction**  
42

43 A description of the expected effect of proposed types and levels of harvest, renewal and  
44 tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the long-term management  
45 direction will be provided in the plan text (Part A, Section 1.3.11). The description will  
46 include the assessment (Part A, Section 1.3.11) and a discussion of the supporting modeling.

- 1 If proposed types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term
- 2 management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability
- 3 will be provided.

1 **5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY**

2

3 The plan text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as  
4 to how the forest management plan has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and  
5 social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section  
6 1.3.11). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement (Part A,  
7 Section 1.2.6.3), the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.6.5) and  
8 prescriptions for the protection of values.

## 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The forest management plan will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made, during the planning process. In addition, there is other documentation of information, which because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the plan.

### 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the forest management plan includes:

- (a) a list of the forest management guides that were used in the preparation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.3);
- (b) a series of maps produced at an appropriate scale (see the *Forest Information Manual* for the standards for maps to be included in each copy of the forest management plan), including:
  - (i) values maps, including a separate values map for resource-based tourism values (Part A, Section 1.1.7.8);
  - (ii) landscape pattern maps (e.g., disturbance, habitat) (Part A, Sections 1.2.2.2 and 1.2.2.3);
  - (iii) selected and optional harvest areas map, which also portrays the 20-year selected primary road corridors and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.3.3.1, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.2);
  - (iv) the Existing Roads Table (Appendix II);
  - (v) operations maps (composite) - provides an overview of planned operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan showing:
    - existing road network, including names of primary roads;
    - road access restrictions, and roads scheduled for decommissioning;
    - lakes and rivers and their associated names;
    - mapsheet numbers, or a key to the mapsheets;
    - operations for the 10-year plan period, that portrays the operations planned for the first five-year term and proposed operations for the second five-year term and boundaries for the areas of operations;
    - primary and branch road corridors for roads planned for construction during the 10-year plan period; and
    - past 10 years of harvest area;
  - (vi) operations maps (operational scale) – provides the areas of operations for the 10-year period of the plan, and detailed operations for the first five-year term, including:
    - harvest areas;
    - surplus areas;
    - contingency areas;
    - bridging areas;
    - second-pass harvest areas;



- 1 • primary and branch road corridors for roads planned for
- 2 construction during the 10-year plan period;
- 3 • road access restrictions, and roads scheduled for decommissioning;
- 4 • renewal and tending areas;
- 5 • operational prescriptions for area of concern prescriptions;
- 6 • silvicultural ground rules;
- 7 • candidate prescribed burns;
- 8 • proposed areas of aerial pesticide application; and
- 9 • areas available for fuelwood;
- 10 (c) for information on other forest resources (Part A, Section 1.1.7.7):
- 11 (i) a list of references to the sources of the information on the values maps
- 12 or otherwise available in the data base;
- 13 (ii) identification of the methodologies used for data collection;
- 14 (iii) the reasons why some sites which contain old growth red and white pine
- 15 forest communities will not be managed for old growth values; and
- 16 (iv) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being
- 17 incomplete or missing, and a discussion of how those data gaps will be
- 18 addressed through long-term data collection programs;
- 19 (d) a table of residual stand structure requirements with supporting rationale (Part
- 20 A, Section 1.3.5.2);
- 21 (e) a list of references to the sources of the information used to update the current
- 22 Forest Resource Inventory data (Part A, Section 1.1.7.5);
- 23 (f) the analysis package, which describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the
- 24 results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the
- 25 long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
- 26 (g) the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) (unless
- 27 otherwise specified in the Aboriginal consultation approach developed for each
- 28 interested community);
- 29 (h) a summary of the Aboriginal consultation approach for each Aboriginal
- 30 community;
- 31 (i) the recommendations from the year seven management unit annual report (Part
- 32 A, Section 1.1.7.4);
- 33 (j) a summary of how the results of any audits which have been undertaken for the
- 34 management unit, in particular independent audits, have been addressed in the
- 35 forest management plan;
- 36 (k) the monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing and
- 37 duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the
- 38 opportunities for local citizens committee participation (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
- 39 (l) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A,
- 40 Sections 1.2.7 and 1.3.6.2), and the locations of primary and branch roads in
- 41 areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
- 42 (m) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern
- 43 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), and conditions on operational roads (Part A, Section
- 44 1.3.6.4);

- 1 (n) a list, in digital form, of forest stands selected for harvest, which includes the  
2 following information for each stand (Part B, Sections 4.2.2 and 4.3.1):  
3 (i) total area and associated volumes;  
4 (ii) area and associated preferred silvicultural treatment package (from the  
5 silvicultural ground rules) for the stand or portion of the stand;  
6 (iii) area and specific prescription for the stand or portion of the stand with a  
7 modified operations prescription, as a result of area of concern planning;  
8 and  
9 (iv) area of the stand or portion of the stand with a reserve prescription, as a  
10 result of area of concern planning;
- 11 (o) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan (in the event of  
12 a request for an individual Environmental Assessment, this documentation will  
13 form part of the record provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment),  
14 which includes:  
15 (i) a summary of all comments received and the consideration of those  
16 comments;  
17 (ii) any documentation produced regarding issue resolution; and  
18 (iii) a summary of each stage (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types  
19 of supplemental notices sent, etc.);
- 20 (p) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities  
21 during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee;  
22 an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and  
23 recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 3.2.6);
- 24 (q) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed during the  
25 preparation of the plan, including any significant disagreements among  
26 planning team members on major issues;
- 27 (r) any documentation produced regarding plan review and approval, including the  
28 preliminary and final lists of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.4.4.1 and  
29 1.5.2) and a list of major changes from the draft to final plan;
- 30 (s) the planning team’s terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1);
- 31 (t) forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3 and Part B, Section  
32 7.0); and
- 33 (u) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) briefing note (Part B, Section 1.0).  
34

35 The draft forest management plan will include the supplementary documentation available at  
36 the time of draft plan submission. The approved forest management plan will include all of  
37 the supplementary documentation.  
38

## 39 **6.2 Other Documentation**

40 The public correspondence related to the development of the plan will be retained on file at  
41 the appropriate MNR district or area office. The Report on the Protection of Identified  
42 Aboriginal Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the  
43 Aboriginal communities.  
44  
45

## 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A forest management plan summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft plan and public inspection of the approved plan. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, a French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the plan summary.

The forest management plan summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the plan for each item:

- (a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
- (b) a general description of the forest;
- (c) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNR and/or an organization other than MNR, such as a forest company), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
- (d) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan (*NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.*);
- (e) a summary of the long-term management direction;
- (f) a summary of the silvicultural prescriptions commonly used on the management unit;
- (g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the plan, including any significant disagreements among planning team members on major issues;
- (h) the names of the MNR District Manager, plan author, and all members of the local citizens committee;
- (i) the schedule for any remaining formal public consultation opportunities;
- (j) a comment form;
- (k) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1);
- (l) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations and names of new and existing roads, for the ten-year term of the plan. The map will be prepared at a suitable scale to allow for appropriate resolution of the information and for ease of reproduction; and
- (m) an index to the environmental assessment components of the forest management plan (Figure B-4), located on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents.

1 **8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR**  
2 **TERM**

3  
4 This section prescribes the content requirements for the planned operations for the second  
5 five-year term. This section will act as a template for writing the planned operations. Planned  
6 operations are comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Planned  
7 operations must contain page numbers and line numbers.

8  
9 The Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-5A) will  
10 be located at the front of each draft and approved planned operations.

11  
12 The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the  
13 draft and final planned operations. For plans prepared by an organization other than MNR, the  
14 senior company official will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The approved  
15 planned operations must also be signed by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional  
16 Director.

17  
18 If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard  
19 expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of the planned operations, those  
20 people will certify the parts of the planned operations that they prepared, and that they have  
21 prepared those parts of the planned operations in accordance with the *Forest Management*  
22 *Planning Manual*. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B,  
23 Figure B-5B.

24  
25 A list of exceptions (Figure B-6) will follow the title and certification page.

26  
27 The list of planned operations contributors (Figure B-7) will follow the list of exceptions.

28  
29  
30 **8.1 Introduction**

31  
32 The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section.

33  
34 A brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the  
35 *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the  
36 development of the planned operations for the second five-year term must also be produced,  
37 in the form of an SEV briefing note. The text will reference the section of the supplementary  
38 documentation that contains the SEV briefing note. The text will also reference the section of  
39 the supplementary documentation that contains the background information.

**Figure B-5A: Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN, April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS  
for the 2<sup>nd</sup> 5-year term from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]

I hereby certify that I have prepared these planned operations, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

\_\_\_\_\_  
[R.P.F. seal]                      [Plan Author]\*                      [date]

Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_  
(where applicable)                      [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]                      [date]

I recommend that these planned operations be approved for implementation and certify that they have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that these planned operations have been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In these planned operations, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Recommended by: \_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR District Manager]                      [date]

Approved by: \_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR Regional Director]                      [date]

**Figure B-5B: Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page**

For Sections Not Prepared by the Plan Author

PLANNED OPERATIONS  
 for the 2<sup>nd</sup> 5-year term from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_  
 for the  
 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
 [MNR Administrative District and Region]  
 [Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]  
 for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the planned operations as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date
Name	Job Title	Sections prepared	Signature	Date

**Figure B-6: Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions**

PLANNED OPERATIONS  
 for the 2<sup>nd</sup> 5-year term from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_  
 for the  
 [NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]  
 [MNR Administrative District and Region]  
 [Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]  
 for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the planned operations that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

Description of Exception	Specific Section

**Figure B-7: Phase II Planned Operations Contributors**

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN - April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS  
for the 2<sup>nd</sup> 5-year term from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

Plan Author \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*A brief statement that reports on the local citizens committee's agreement or disagreement with the planned operations:*

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PLAN REVIEWERS

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



1 **8.2 Prescriptions for Operations**

2  
3 Part B, Section 4.2.1 describes the documentation requirements for operational prescriptions  
4 for areas of concern. Part B, Section 4.2.2 describes the documentation requirements for  
5 prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas. These requirements also apply to the  
6 planned operations for the second five-year term. For operational prescriptions for areas of  
7 concern, FMP-14 will be updated. If a new acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment is  
8 identified for a forest unit, an updated version of FMP-5 will be produced.

9  
10  
11 **8.3 Harvest Operations**

12  
13 Part B, Section 4.3 describes the documentation requirements for harvest operations. These  
14 requirements will apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term, with  
15 appropriate modifications, if necessary.

16  
17 The planned harvest areas for the second five-year term will be portrayed on operations maps  
18 in the supplementary documentation and will be referenced in the text. The text will provide  
19 rationale for changes from the areas proposed for harvest for the second five-year term in the  
20 forest management plan, and these harvest areas will be specifically identified on the  
21 operations maps. The rationale will include consideration of the comments received in Phase  
22 II, Stage One of consultation.

23  
24 The following tables will be updated for the planned harvest operations for the second five-  
25 year term:

- 26  
27
  - FMP-15
  - FMP-16
  - FMP-17
  - FMP-18
  - FMP-19
  - FMP-20

33  
34 Part B, Sections 4.3 to 4.5 provides direction for the text that will accompany each of these  
35 tables in the planned operations for the second five-year term.

36  
37 The contingency area for harvest operations will be portrayed separately on operations maps  
38 for the second five-year term. Changes to contingency area identified in the forest  
39 management plan, will be described and rationalized in the text. The text will reference the  
40 section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

1 **8.4 Renewal and Tending Operations**

2  
3 Part B, Section 4.4 describes the documentation requirements for renewal and tending  
4 operations. These requirements will apply to the planned operations for the second five-year  
5 term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

6  
7 FMP-21 will be prepared for the planned operations for the second five-year term. Part B,  
8 Section 4.4.1 describes the text that will accompany the table.

9  
10 The areas selected for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term will be  
11 portrayed on operations maps in the supplementary documentation and will be referenced in  
12 the text.

13  
14  
15 **8.5 Roads**

16  
17 Part B, Section 4.5 describes the documentation requirements for roads. These requirements  
18 apply to planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if  
19 necessary.

20  
21 FMP-22 and FMP-23 will be prepared for the planned road construction and use management  
22 for the second five-year term. Part B, Section 4.5.1 describes the text that will accompany  
23 FMP-22 and Part B, Section 4.5.2 describes the text that will accompany FMP-23.

24  
25 Roads planned for construction will be identified on the operations maps. The plan text will  
26 reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the operations maps.

27  
28 The text will provide rationale for changes to road corridors identified in the forest  
29 management plan, and these changes will be specifically identified on the operations maps.  
30 The rationale will include consideration of the comments received in Phase II, Stage One of  
31 consultation.

32  
33 Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee,  
34 and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in the Existing Roads Table  
35 (Appendix II) in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the  
36 section of the supplementary documentation that contains the Existing Roads Table.

37  
38  
39 **8.6 Revenues and Expenditures**

40  
41 Part B, Section 4.6 describes the documentation requirements for revenues and expenditures.  
42 These requirements also apply to planned operations for the second five-year term, with  
43 appropriate modifications, if necessary.

44  
45 FMP-24 will be updated and included with the planned operations for the second five-year  
46 term.

## 8.7 Monitoring and Assessment

Part B, Section 4.7 describes the documentation requirements for the monitoring program. These requirements apply to the planned operations for the second five-year term, with appropriate modifications, if necessary.

FMP-25 will be updated and included with the planned renewal assessment operations for the second five-year term.

## 8.8 Supplementary Documentation

The updated supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year term includes (Part B, Section 6.0):

- (a) an updated list of the forest management guides that were used in the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term;
- (b) a series of maps produced at an appropriate scale (see the *Forest Information Manual* for the standards for the maps to be included in each copy of the forest management plan), including:
  - (i) where updates have been made, an updated values maps, including a separate updated values map for resource-based tourism values;
  - (ii) updated operations maps (composite) - provides an overview of planned operations for the 10-year period of the forest management plan); and
  - (iii) operations maps (operational scale) – provides the detailed operations for the second five-year term;
- (c) for information on other forest resources, a list of references to the sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the data base,
- (d) identification of the methodologies used for data collection;
- (e) the updated Existing Roads Table (Appendix II);
- (f) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing, and a discussion of how those data gaps will be addressed through long-term data collection programs;
- (g) the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (unless otherwise specified by an aboriginal community);
- (h) the updated summary of the Aboriginal consultation approach for each Aboriginal community;
- (i) the conclusions and recommendations from the approved year ten annual report;
- (j) a summary of how the results of any audits which have been undertaken for the management unit, in particular independent audits, have been addressed in the planning of operations for the second five-year term;
- (k) a summary of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;

- 1 (l) the monitoring programs for exceptions, including methodologies, timing and  
2 duration of monitoring, the documentation and reporting of results, and the  
3 opportunities for local citizens committee participation;
- 4 (m) documentation of the planning of road corridors, and the locations of roads in  
5 areas of concern;
- 6 (n) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of  
7 concern, including conditions on operational roads;
- 8 (o) a list in digital form of forest stands selected for harvest, which includes the  
9 information as identified in Section 4.0;
- 10 (p) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of planned operations for  
11 the second five-year term (in the event of a request for an individual  
12 Environmental Assessment, this documentation will form part of the record  
13 provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment), which includes:
- 14 (i) summary of all comments received and the consideration of those  
15 comments;
- 16 (ii) any documentation produced regarding issue resolution; and  
17 (iii) summary of each stage (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types  
18 of supplemental notices sent, etc.)
- 19 (q) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities  
20 during the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term;  
21 the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the  
22 effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if  
23 any;
- 24 (r) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed during the  
25 preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term, including  
26 any significant disagreements among planning team members on major issues;
- 27 (s) any documentation produced regarding plan review and approval, including  
28 the preliminary and final lists of required alteration and list of major changes  
29 from the draft planned operations to the final planned operations for the second  
30 five-year term;
- 31 (t) an updated planning team's terms of reference;
- 32 (u) SEV briefing note; and  
33 (v) summary of planned operations for the second five-year term.
- 34  
35

## 36 **8.9 Planned Operations Summary**

37

38 A summary of planned operations for the second five-year term will be prepared for the draft  
39 planned operations and approved planned operations. For designated areas under the *French*  
40 *Language Services Act*, a French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local  
41 citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the planned operations summary.  
42

43 The summary of planned operations will include the following items, and will provide  
44 references to the appropriate sections of the plan or planned operations for each item:

- 1 (a) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for
- 2 identification of the location of the management unit;
- 3 (b) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and
- 4 the locations and names of new and existing roads, for the planned operations
- 5 for the second five-year term of the plan. The map will be prepared at a
- 6 suitable scale to allow for appropriate resolution of the information and for
- 7 ease of reproduction;
- 8 (c) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning
- 9 its activities during the preparation of the planned operations; and a brief
- 10 statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the
- 11 planned operations (*NOTE: The committee will prepare this summary.*);
- 12 (d) any updates to the contents of the forest management plan summary prepared
- 13 in Phase I (Part B, Section 7.0);
- 14 (e) the schedule for any remaining formal public consultation opportunities, if
- 15 applicable;
- 16 (f) a comment form; and
- 17 (g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the planning of operations for
- 18 the second five-year term to seek resolution of issues in accordance with the
- 19 issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.
- 20
- 21

## 22 **9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES**

23  
24 The following tables are required for a forest management plan.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-1: Management Unit Land Summary**

5

Land Ownership and Type	Land Ownership (Hectares)					
	Crown		Patent		Other	Total
	Managed	Other	Crown Timber	Other		
Unsurveyed						
Non-forested						
Water						
Other Land						
Agricultural Land						
Grass & Meadow						
Unclassified						
Other						
<b>Subtotal Non-Forested</b>						
Forested						
Non-Productive Forest						
Treed Muskeg						
Open Muskeg						
Brush & Alder						
Rock						
<b>Subtotal Non-Productive</b>						
Productive Forest						
Protection Forest						
Site						
Islands						
<b>Subtotal Protection</b>						
Production Forest						
Recent Disturbance						
Below Regeneration Standards						
Forest Stands						
<b>Subtotal Production</b>						
<b>Subtotal Productive</b>						
<b>Subtotal Forested</b>						
<b>Total</b>						
	<b>Total Crown:</b>		<b>Total Patent:</b>			

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-I: Management Unit Land Summary**

This table summarizes the area of different land types by land ownership for the management unit at the start of the plan period. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory where information is available and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area in hectares by FRI land type for each land ownership:

**Crown:**

**Managed:** All Crown land available for forest management purposes including lands patented to Ontario government agencies where appropriate. Crown – Managed may include area of some or all inventory land types (e.g., treed muskeg, protection forest and production forest). Area affected by forest management planning decisions (e.g., area of concern reserves) is included.

**Other:** All Crown land that is not available for forest management purposes through legal designation. This includes provincial parks under the Provincial Parks Act and conservation reserves under the Public Lands Act. It also includes areas established by policy direction (where forest management activity is not permitted) and higher order land use decisions (e.g., Ontario Living Legacy).

**Patent:**

**Crown Timber:** Patent land where the Crown has rights to some or all timber.

**Other:** All remaining patent land. Includes lands patented to Ontario government agencies if not available for forest management purposes.

**Other:**

Includes all other land ownership including federal lands, Indian reserves, and agreement forests (county forests and conservation authority forests).

Notes for selected inventory land types:

**Production Forest:** Includes both production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

**Recent Disturbance:** Areas of stand replacing natural (e.g., fire, insect, blow down, etc.) or artificial (e.g., harvest) disturbance which have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

**Below Regeneration Standards:** Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved forest management plan. Includes both natural disturbances and harvested area.

**Forest Stands:** All existing forest stands and areas which have been successfully regenerated.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

Crown - Managed

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

Crown - Other

3

Crown - Total

4

5 **FMP-2: Summary of Crown Productive Forest by Provincial Forest Type**

6

Provincial Forest Type	Age Class	Protection Forest (ha)	Production Forest (ha)				Total Productive Forest Area (ha)
			Recent Disturbances	Below Regeneration Standards	Forest Stands	Total	
<b>Provincial Forest Type Subtotal</b>							
<b>Total</b>							

7



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-2: Summary of Crown Productive Forest by Provincial Forest Type**

These tables summarize the area of Crown productive forest by provincial forest type and age class at the start of the plan period. Separate tables must be prepared for each of the crown land ownership categories described in FMP-1 (i.e., Crown – Managed and Crown – Other) as well as a table for the Crown Total. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory where information is available and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable ownership box.

#### **Provincial Forest Type:**

Enter the provincial forest type as defined by provincial policy.

#### **Age Class:**

Enter 20 year age classes, where applicable.

#### **Protection Forest (ha):**

Enter the area (in hectares) of protection forest by provincial forest type and 20-year age class for each land type.

#### **Production Forest (ha):**

Enter the area (in hectares) of production forest by land type, provincial forest type and age class, where applicable.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

Ensure that the total areas correspond with the productive forest subtotals in FMP-1.

Notes for selected inventory land types:

Production Forest: Includes both production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

Recent Disturbance: Areas of stand replacing natural (e.g., fire, insect, blow down, etc.) or artificial (e.g., harvest) disturbance which have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved forest management plan. Includes both natural disturbances and harvested area.

Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas which have been successfully regenerated.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-3: Description of Forest Units**

5

Forest Unit		Ecosite(s)	Provincial Forest Type	Silvicultural System	FRI Parameters & Criteria	Additional Information
Code	Name					

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38

### **FMP-3: Description of Forest Units**

This table describes the forest units used to classify all forest stands of the management unit, including the stands that are not available for forest management activities. Forest units are used as the basis for summarizing data for many forest management plan, annual work schedule and annual report tables.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

#### **Forest Unit:**

List each forest unit including an appropriate **Code** (maximum 6 characters) and a descriptive **Name** (maximum 20 characters). The list should include all forest units currently represented as well as forest units, which will occur in the future as a result of management actions.

#### **Eco-sites:**

Indicate the eco-site(s) which fall within the forest unit, based on the Forest Ecosystem Classification or the best available site information until such time as general standard eco-sites are developed.

#### **Provincial Forest Type:**

Indicate a single provincial forest type that is the best match for each forest unit.

#### **Silvicultural System:**

Indicate the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) to be used for the forest unit.

#### **FRI Parameters & Criteria:**

For the purpose of assigning a forest unit to each stand, identify the appropriate Forest Resource Inventory (FRI) parameters (e.g., species composition, site class, stocking) or other criteria by which the stands are classified (e.g., plantations).

#### **Additional Information:**

Indicate any other information, which is useful in describing each forest unit.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-4: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

5

Forest Unit	Age Class	Protection Forest (ha)	Production Forest		
			Unavailable (ha)	Stage of Management	Available (ha)
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-4: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the area of managed productive Crown forest (as shown in Table FMP-1 and FMP-2) by forest unit and age class. The source of information for this table is the planning inventory with forest units as defined in FMP-3.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-3.

**Age Class:**

Enter 20-year age classes for clearcut and shelterwood management. This column is not completed for the forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Protection Forest:**

Enter the area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class.

**Production Forest:**

**Unavailable:**

Enter the area (in hectares) of the Crown managed production forest that is not available for timber production as a result of forest management planning decisions, current forest management guides and other known factors (e.g., actual or anticipated reserves, inaccessible area).

**Stage of Management:**

Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Available:**

Enter the area (in hectares) of the managed Crown production forest area minus the Unavailable area.

Enter all totals and subtotals as required.

Ensure that the total areas in the Protection Forest and Production Forest (Unavailable and Available) columns correspond with the productive forest subtotals in Table FMP-1 and the applicable FMP-2.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-5: Silvicultural Ground Rules**

5

<b>SGR Code</b>		<b>Silvicultural System</b>	
-----------------	--	-----------------------------	--

Current Condition		Future Condition		Regeneration Standards
Forest Unit	Ecosite(s)	Forest Unit	Stand Characteristics	
Additional Information		Development Information		

	Silvicultural Treatments				
	Harvest Method	Logging Method	Site Preparation	Regeneration	Tending
Most Common Treatment Package					
Acceptable Alternative Treatments					

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-5: Silvicultural Ground Rules**

This table describes the silvicultural systems and types of treatments that may be used to manage forest units for a specific current condition in order to achieve a predicted future condition. The source of information for the table are the applicable Silvicultural Guides and the knowledge and experience of the plan author and planning team.

Complete the table as follows for each silvicultural ground rule.

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**SGR Code:** Enter a label (maximum 15 characters) that identifies the silvicultural ground rule. This code is used to reference the silvicultural ground rule elsewhere in the plan.

**Silvicultural System:** Enter the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood and selection) under which each forest unit will be managed. Only one silvicultural system will be identified for each forest unit.

**Current Condition:** Enter the Forest Unit (identified in FMP-3) and Eco-site(s). In describing eco-site, use the Forest Ecosystem Classification (FEC) or the best available site information. Provide any additional information as required.

**Future Condition:** Future conditions (resulting from the implementation of the silvicultural ground rule) will be described in terms of the predicted forest unit, stand characteristics and development information. Enter the predicted future forest unit as identified in FMP-3. Enter the anticipated future stand characteristics, which must include average species composition and stocking and may also include stand density or product. Future stand characteristics may be specified for various stand ages, but must as a minimum include the mature stand conditions. Conditions for multiple ages are the benchmark for assessing whether the stand is developing as anticipated. Enter a reference to the development information contained in the appendices and used in modelling this silvicultural ground rule at the forest level (e.g., Pj1-Intensive).

**Regeneration Standards:** Enter all the standards for determining regeneration success (i.e., acceptable species, the timeframes required, etc.). The standards of regeneration success must be consistent with the development information associated with this silvicultural ground rule.

**Silvicultural Treatments:** For each current forest unit/eco-site combination, the most common series of silvicultural treatments is presented in this table. Where there are several common distinct treatment packages, they may also be identified. As well, acceptable alternative treatments must also be identified. Silvicultural treatments include harvest method, logging method site preparation, regeneration and tending. Where a silvicultural treatment differs from the recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide, that treatment must be highlighted as an exception and monitoring requirements identified in the plan.

**Harvest Method:** Enter the harvest method (e.g., strip clearcut, uniform shelterwood) as well as any reference to commercial thinning.

**Logging Method:** Enter the logging method (full tree, tree length or shortwood) to be used. Where there are options, indicate under what conditions the different methods will be used. Special restrictions on the type of logging equipment, the prescription for logging or the timing of logging to ensure site compatibility, will be noted in the space provided.

**Site Preparation :** Enter the method(s) of site preparation (i.e., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn) as well as optional details as desired. Combinations of site preparation treatments (e.g., chemical site preparation followed by prescribed burning) are acceptable within a treatment package. It is not acceptable, however, to present optional treatments (e.g., chemical site preparation or prescribed burning) within a single silvicultural treatment package.

**Regeneration:** Enter the method(s) of regeneration treatments (i.e., natural, plant, seed) as well as optional details as desired.

**Tending:** Enter the tending methods (e.g., cleaning, spacing) which are required in order to meet the regeneration standard. Pre-commercial thinning is considered a tending treatment and should be identified here.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-6: Summary of Management Objectives**

5

<b>Management Objective</b>	<b>Indicator</b>	<b>Timing of Assessment</b>

6



**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23

**FMP-6: Summary of Management Objectives**

This table provides a list of all management unit objectives established for the period of the plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Management Objective:**

List each objective in full text form. Quantitative and qualitative objectives are included.

**Indicator:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres ) for each management objective. For qualitative objectives, leave this column blank.

**Timing of Assessment:**

Identify the timing of assessment for each objective (e.g., “during plan development”, “year seven and ten annual reports”, “plan and reports”).

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-7: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

5

Forest Type	Age	Area (ha)					
		<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Forest Type Subtotal</b>							
<b>Total</b>							

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34

### **FMP-7: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

This table summarizes the area of available Crown productive forest by forest type (e.g., forest unit or provincial forest type) and age (e.g., age class or seral stage) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the future forest conditions over time resulting from the management strategy.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

#### **Forest Type:**

Enter the user defined forest type. This may be forest units as in FMP-3, forest unit groupings or provincial forest types.

#### **Age:**

Enter the user defined age. This may be a twenty year age class or a seral stage age.

#### **Area (ha) :**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (in hectares) for each forest type/age at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy. The information shown for <Year 0> must be consistent with the Crown productive forest total summarized in FMP-1 and FMP-2 (Crown – Total).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-8: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

5

Selected Wildlife Species	Area (ha)					
	<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-8: Projected Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**

This table summarizes the area of habitat for selected wildlife species by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the habitat availability over time resulting from the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Selected Wildlife Species:**

Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species occurring on the management unit. The selected species should include as a minimum the appropriate provincially and locally featured species. Provincial/regional analysis may reveal other species whose habitat is rare and/or diminishing at the Provincial/regional level. Where the management unit is important in maintaining or improving habitat for these species, they will be included as selected wildlife species.

**Area (ha) :**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (in hectares) of habitat for each selected wildlife specie at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

5

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)					
	<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Total</b>						

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26

**FMP-9: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the available harvest area (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest area over time resulting from the management strategy. The table will be supported by a series of graphs (in the supplementary documentation) which depict the same information.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest area for the ten year period (in hectares) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-10: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group**

5

Species Group	Available Harvest Volume (m3)					
	<Year 0>	<Year 20>	<Year 40>	<Year 60>	<Year 80>	<Year 100>
<b>Total</b>						

6



**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27

**FMP-10: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group**

This table summarizes the estimated available harvest volume (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the management strategy. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest volume over time resulting from the management strategy. The table will be supported by a series of graphs (in the supplementary documentation) which depict the same information.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Species Group:**

Enter the species group (e.g., spruce/pine/fir, white/red pine, dense hardwood). This is normally the same as the species groups used in forest modelling.

**Available Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2007) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest volume for the ten year period (in cubic metres) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the management strategy.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-11: Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures**

5

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)	Available Harvest Volume (m3)		Regeneration Area (ha)	Tending Area (ha)	Revenue (\$000's)	Silvicultural Expenditure (\$000's)
		Conifer	Hardwood				
<b>Total</b>							

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-11: Projected Operations, Revenues and Expenditures**

This table summarizes the projected available harvest area, available harvest volume, renewal area, tending area and revenue and expenditures for the ten year plan period by forest unit. The source of information for this table is the model output that represents the management strategy.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-3.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the available harvest area (in hectares) for the ten year plan period as projected during the modelling of the management strategy.

**Available Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the available harvest volume (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>), by conifer and hardwood for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of the management strategy.

**Regeneration Area (ha):**

Enter the area (in hectares) to receive regeneration treatments for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of management strategy.

**Tending Area (ha):**

Enter the area (in hectares) to receive tending treatments for the ten year plan period, as projected during the modelling of management strategy.

**Revenue (\$ 000's):**

Enter the projected Crown and Trust Fund revenue (in thousands of dollars) over the ten year plan period from Crown and area charge payments.

**Silvicultural Expenditures:**

Enter the projected Trust Fund expenditures (in thousands of dollars) over the ten year plan period related to silviculture.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-12: Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances**

5

Size Class (ha)	Frequency of Forest Disturbances				
	Number		Percent		
	Plan Start	Projected Plan End	Plan Start	Projected Plan End	Template
< 100					
101 - 200					
201 - 500					
501 - 1000					
1001 - 5000					
5001 - 10000					
> 10000					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-12: Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances**

This table summarizes the frequency distribution of forest disturbances. Its purpose is to compare the frequency distribution of forest disturbances sizes at the plan start and at plan end to the template for frequency distribution as established during the planning process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Frequency of Forest Disturbances:**

Enter the frequency of forest disturbances by size class.

**Number/Percent:**

Enter the number and percent of forest disturbances for the plan start and projected plan end by size class. Enter the frequency (percent) by size class that represents the template as determined during the planning process.

**Plan Start:**

Enter the frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the start of the plan period.

**Projected Plan End:**

Enter the projected frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of the plan period.

**Template:**

Enter the template frequency (percent) by size class of forest disturbances as established during the planning process.

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3

4 **FMP-13: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

5

Management Objective	Indicator	Plan Start Level	Desirable Level	Target (how much, when)	Management Strategy - Projections				Assessment
					Achievement at Target Year	Short (10 years)	Medium (20 years)	Long (100 years)	
Quantitative Objectives									
Qualitative Objectives	Assessment:								

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46

### **FMP-13: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators and target information and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and the plan period.

#### **Management Objective:**

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

#### **Indicator:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres ) for levels, targets and projections.

#### **Plan Start Level:**

Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for a ten year plan period (e.g., available harvest volume)

#### **Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

#### **Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator and the year the target will be achieved. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

#### **Management Strategy – Projections**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the management strategy, for the target year and for the short, medium and long term.

#### **Assessment:**

Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable and target levels as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:

Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3

4 **FMP-14: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern**

5

6

AOC or AOC Group Identifier	Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value	Individual or Group AOC	Operational Prescription	SGR Code	Source	Exception	Objection	Roads	
								Primary or Branch Road Crossing	Conditions on Operational Roads

7



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-14: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern**

This table summarizes the prescriptions for areas identified as areas of concern (AOC). Each table entry represents either a group of areas of concern with a common prescription, or an individual area of concern with a unique prescription. The source information for this table is contained in an implementation manual or in the supplementary documentation forms for area of concern prescriptions (see forest management planning manual, Appendix VIII).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**AOC or AOC Group Identifier:**

Enter the code by which an area of concern prescription can be identified on the operations maps and in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

**Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value:**

Briefly describe the features, land uses or values for which an AOC prescription has been prepared.

**Individual or Group AOC**

Note in the table whether the prescription is “Individual” or “Group”.

**Operational Prescription:**

Enter a brief description of the area of concern prescription including any constraints on harvest, renewal and tending operations.

**SGR Code:**

Enter the related silvicultural ground rule code (or codes) where normal operations are permitted (e.g., timing restrictions only).

**Source:**

Enter source of prescription, if applicable, including the title of the implementation guide and page number from which the prescription specific direction or recommendation is located.

**Exception:**

Where an area of concern prescription differs from specific direction or from a recommendation in the appropriate guide/manual, the prescription will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

**Objection:**

If there is a public concern expressed about a prescription for an area of concern place “Yes” in the column.

**Roads:**

Primary or Branch Road Crossing: Indicate with “Yes” if there is a road crossing.

Conditions on Operational Roads: Indicate with a “Yes” if there are conditions.

Note: Where the Roads columns indicate a “Yes”, additional information is provided in FMP-23.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3  
4  
5

**FMP-15: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area**

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Projected Harvest Area (ha)	Forecast Harvest Area (ha)	Planned Harvest Area (ha)
<b>Stage of Management Subtotal</b>					
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

**FMP-15: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Harvest Area**

This table summarizes the level of forecast and planned harvest area as well as the available harvest area by forest unit for comparison. The source of information for this table is the management strategy and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the ten-year available harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Projected Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the ten-year projected area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the projected area by stage of management and age class. The projected area must agree with the available harvest area by forest unit.

**Forecast Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the forecast (10-year) harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the forecast harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Enter subtotal by forest unit and by stage of management where applicable

**Planned Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the Planned (5-year) harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the forecast harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Enter subtotal by forest unit and by stage of management, if applicable.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)  
 3

4 **FMP-16: Planned Clearcuts (5-year)**  
 5

Statistics		
	Number	Percent
Number of Planned Clearcuts <= 260 ha		
Number of Planned Clearcuts > 260 ha		
Total for all Planned Clearcuts		

Planned Clearcuts <= 260 ha		
Location ID	Area of Planned Clearcut (ha)	Planned Harvest Area This Term (ha)
Subtotal		

Planned Clearcuts > 260 ha			
Location ID	Area of Planned Clearcut (ha)	Planned Harvest Area This Term (ha)	Rationale
Subtotal			

6

Total		
-------	--	--

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33

**FMP-16: Planned Clearcuts (5-year)**

This table provides planned clearcut statistics and a list of all planned clearcuts for the five year term. A rationale for planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha is also included. The definition of clearcut in the applicable forest management guide (i.e., temporal and spatial standards) is to be used when determining the boundaries and area (ha) of planned clearcuts for the purpose of completing this table.

It is important to note that “planned clearcuts” includes planned harvest area (FMP-15) for those forest units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system and will often include area harvested in previous plan periods. Area figures included in the table are to be provided as net planned clearcut area and net planned harvest area this term in hectares.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Statistics:**

Enter the number and percentage of planned clearcuts as calculated for the plan term for each size class. Provide the total number and percent.

**Planned Clearcuts Less Than or Equal to 260 Hectares:**

List each planned clearcut by location identifier including the total area and the planned harvest area this term.

**Planned Clearcuts Greater Than 260 Hectares:**

List each planned clearcut by location identifier including the total area, and the planned harvest area this term. Provide a brief description of the rationale for each planned clearcut greater than 260 hectares.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3  
4  
5

**FMP-17: Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)**

Forest Unit	10-Year Available Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )		10-Year Forecast Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )												
			Conifer					Subtotal	Hardwood				Subtotal	Total	
	Conifer	Hardwood													
<b>Total</b>															

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31

**FMP-17: Forecast of Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)**

This table summarizes forecast harvest volume and compares forecast harvest volume to the available harvest volume by conifer and hardwood. The source of information for this table is the management strategy and the result of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-3.

**Ten Year Available Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the ten year available harvest volume (in cubic metres) for conifer and hardwood by forest unit. Ensure the available harvest volume matches the harvest volume in the management strategy.

**Ten Year Forecast Harvest Volume (m3):**

**Conifer:**

Enter the ten-year forecast conifer volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the ten-year forecast hardwood volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3

4 **FMP-18: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)**

5

Licensee or Grouping	Planned Harvest Area (ha)	Volume Type	Product	Volume by Species (m3)													
				Conifer						Hardwood					Total		
																Subtotal	
			<b>Total</b>														
		<b>Utilized</b>															
		<b>Subtotal</b>															
		<b>Unutilized</b>															
		<b>Subtotal</b>															
		<b>Total</b>															

6



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-18: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)**

This table summarizes the volumes that are available for harvest from the planned and surplus harvest areas by species and product for the five-year term. Planning teams have the option of summarizing the planned harvest area by licensee (or groupings). The table must summarize volume that will be utilized as well as the volume that will not be utilized.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

#### **Licensee or Grouping (Optional):**

List the licensees (or groupings) that are expected to conduct harvesting. Where licensees are not known, groupings (e.g., tendered sale areas) shall be indicated. In the case of overlapping licences, all licensees or groupings should be shown. Where the SFL holder is the only licensee, identify the SFL name.

#### **Planned Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the amount of planned harvest area (in hectares) that is expected to be harvested by the licensees (or groupings). Where overlapping licensees exist, the area may exceed the planned harvest area shown in FMP-16. Where only one licensee is identified, the area must be consistent with the planned harvest area shown in FMP-16.

#### **Volume Type:**

For the five-year planned harvest area, identify the volumes expected to be harvested and marketed as Utilized and the available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or unmarketed at roadside as Unutilized. Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the plan does not condone wasteful practices.

#### **Product:**

Enter the anticipated product (i.e., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer) where possible.

#### **Volume by Species (m3):**

Enter the net merchantable volume (in cubic metres) by species, product, and volume type. If licensee (or grouping) is used, enter this information by licensee (or grouping). If licensee (or grouping) is used, the column totals in licensee (or grouping) must equal the column totals in the utilized and unutilized part.

#### **Utilized/Unutilized:**

Enter the total utilized and unutilized volumes by product and species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.



**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-19: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table lists the mills and the anticipated volumes each will utilize from the forecast and planned harvest area. Volumes are summarized by species and product type. This table also shows volume commitments to each mill. The source of information for this table is FMP-17 and FMP-18 and a combination of known mill commitments and traditional mill levels previously supplied from the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Mill:**

List all mills known to be supplied from the management unit under A. Forecast (10 years) and B. Planned (5 years). If volume is to be made available on the open market, indicate "Open Market" in the list.

**Commitment Type:**

Enter the type(s) of volume commitment (i.e., supply agreement, memorandum of agreement, minister's directive) that applies to each mill.

**Committed Volume:**

For each commitment type, enter the total volume committed where applicable.

**Year:**

(Optional) Where the mill utilization is expected to change during the five-year term (e.g., new mill is expected to begin full production during the five-year term) enter mill utilization by year (e.g., 2000).

**Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) for each mill and year (where possible).

**Volume by Species:**

Enter the forecast and planned mill utilization volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by species by mill, year and product type. Ensure the total volume by species in A. Forecast is consistent with harvest volume in FMP-17 (with appropriate modification) and the total volume in B. Planned is consistent with the subtotal utilized planned harvest volume in FMP-18.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3  
4  
5

**FMP-20: Contingency Area: Harvest Area and Volume**

Forest Unit	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Contingency Harvest Area (ha)	Contingency Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )		
			Conifer	Hardwood	Total
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

**FMP-20: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume**

This table summarizes the contingency harvest area and associated volume. The sources of information for this table are the management strategy and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-3.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Contingency Harvest Area:**

Enter the contingency harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the contingency harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Include subtotal by forest units.

**Contingency Harvest Volume:**

**Conifer:**

Enter the conifer volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the hardwood volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Total:**

Enter the total volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)  
 3

4 **FMP-21: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations**  
 5

	Area (ha)			
	Forecast (10-Year)		Planned (5-Year)	
	Harvest	Natural Disturbance	Harvest	Natural Disturbance
<b>Renewal</b>				
<b>Regeneration</b>				
<b>Natural</b>				
Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)				
Block Cut				
Strip Cut				
Seed Tree Cut				
HARP/HARO/CLAAG				
Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)				
Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut				
Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut				
Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)				
<b>Subtotal Natural</b>				
<b>Artificial</b>				
Planting				
Seeding				
<b>Subtotal Artificial</b>				
<b>Total Regeneration</b>				
<b>Artificial - Retreatment</b>				
Planting				
Seeding				
<b>Total Retreatment</b>				
<b>Artificial - Supplemental</b>				
Planting				
Seeding				
<b>Total Supplemental</b>				
<b>Site Preparation</b>				
Mechanical				
Chemical				
Aerial				
Ground				
Prescribed Burn				
High Complexity				
Slash Pile Burn				
<b>Total Site Preparation</b>				
<b>Tending</b>				
<b>Cleaning</b>				
Manual				
Mechanical				
Chemical				
Aerial				
Ground				
Prescribed Burn				
High Complexity				
<b>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improve ment cutting</b>				
Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)				
Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)				
<b>Other</b>				
Cultivation				
Pruning				
<b>Total Tending</b>				

6

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **FMP-21: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations**

This table summarizes the area of renewal (regeneration and site preparation) and tending operations that are Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) by disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural) and by treatment method. The source of information for this table is the management strategy, the selection of silviculture operations and the current forest management plan.

Note: There is no requirement to forecast or plan natural regeneration for natural disturbances.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Enter the area (in hectares) for ten year plan period (Forecast) and five year plan term (Planned) by renewal and tending treatments..

#### **Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Forecast/Plan silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance) and enter the area in hectares by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included under the natural disturbance columns.

#### **Renewal**

##### **Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with retreatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

##### **Site Preparation:**

Enter the area of site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burn, enter the net area only.

#### **Tending**

Enter the area of tending by treatment.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
 [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

4 **FMP-22: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management**  
 5

Road or Road Network Identifier	Plan Start Length (km)	Construction (km)		Use Management					
		Forecast	Planned	Maintenance	Monitoring	Access Control		Future Use Management	
						Type	Year	Transfer Year	Management Intent
A. Primary									
<b>Subtotal</b>									
B. Branch									
<b>Subtotal</b>									
<b>Total</b>									
C. Operational									



**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-22: Forecast (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Road Construction and Use Management**

This table summarizes forecast and planned road construction and use management (maintenance, monitoring, access control and future use management) for all primary and branch roads, and use management for networks of operational roads, which will be constructed during the ten year period. This table is prepared following completion and confirmation of the selection of operations and road planning. The source of information for this table is the roads supplementary documentation forms (i.e., in the format provided by Appendix VII) in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Road or Road Network Identifier:**

For each primary and branch road, and each network of operational roads, enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

**Plan Start Length:**

For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of existing road at the beginning of the plan period. For new roads, enter "0".

**Construction:**

For each primary and branch road complete the following columns.

**Forecast:**

For each primary and branch road, enter the length of forecast construction (10 Year) where applicable.

**Planned:**

For each primary and branch road, enter the length of the planned construction (5 year), where applicable.

**Use Management:**

For each primary and branch road, and each network of operational roads, complete the following columns. Note: The use management strategy in this table applies to new construction only. The "Existing Roads Table" provides the use management for existing roads or the existing part of roads to be extended.

**Maintenance:**

Provide a brief summary of the maintenance that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

**Monitoring:**

Provide a brief summary of monitoring, including monitoring of watercrossings that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

**Access Control:**

Type: If applicable, enter the type of access control (under the *Public Lands Act* or any other form of regulation) that is to be established. during the ten-year period.

Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2006/2007) in which access control is to be established during the ten year period.

**Future Use Management:**

Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2011/2012) or five year term (e.g., 2011/2016) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNR.

Management Intent: Indicate MNR's management intent (e.g., transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission/abandonment).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
 [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

4 **FMP-23: Road Crossings of Areas of Concern**  
 5

**A. Primary and Branch Roads**

AOC Identifier	Road Identifier	Water Crossing	Planned		Acceptable Variations	
			Location	Conditions on Construction	Location	Conditions on Construction

**B. Operational Roads**

AOC or AOC Group Identifier	Conditions on Locations and Construction

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-23: Road Crossings of Areas of Concern**

This table provides information on locations, conditions and acceptable variations for road crossings of areas of concern. The source of information for this table is the area of concern supplementary documentation forms (i.e., in the format provided by Appendix VIII) in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Part A: Primary and Branch Roads**

**AOC Identifier:**

Enter the individual area of concern identifier.

**Road Identifier:**

Enter the road name or other identifier.

**Water Crossing:**

Enter “yes” if the road crosses a stream.

**Planned:**

Location: Enter the location identifier for the 100 m wide crossing location.

Conditions on Construction: Enter conditions (e.g., crossing structure, construction methods, mitigative measures).

**Acceptable Variations:**

Location: Enter acceptable alternative 100 metre crossing location(s) or restrictions on crossing locations within the 1 kilometre wide corridor.

Conditions on Construction: Enter acceptable optional water crossing structures, alternative construction methods, alternative mitigative measures.

**Part B: Operational Roads**

**AOC or AOC Group Identifier:**

Enter the individual area of concern identifier or the group of AOCs identifier.

**Conditions on Locations and Construction:**

Enter conditions e.g., specified water crossing structures and methods of construction, timing restrictions, marking or flagging requirements, notification requirements

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)  
 [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

4 **FMP-24: Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year)**  
 5

Revenues				
Species	Forecast Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )	Crown Revenues (000s \$)	Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)	Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)
<u>A. Regular Harvest</u>				
<u>B. Salvage</u>				
<b>Total</b>				

<b>Revenue from Area Charges</b>	
----------------------------------	--

Expenditures		
Activity	Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)	Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)
Natural Regeneration		
Artificial Regeneration		
Site Preparation		
Tending		
Renewal Support		
Other Eligible Activities		
Protection (Insect Pest Control)		
<b>Total</b>		

6

**INSTRUCTIONS****FMP-24: Forecast of Revenues and Expenditures (10-year)**

This table summarizes the forecast of revenues and expenditures to be made by activity and funding source for the ten year plan period. The source of information for this table is the forecast of operations summarized in FMP-17 and FMP-21 and projections of Crown charges.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Revenues:**

Revenues are estimated by destination fund or account. Crown charges, used in the estimation of revenues include the minimum and residual value charges, which are revenues to the Crown, the renewal charges, which is revenue to the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures charge, which is revenue to the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.

**Species:**

Enter the species to be harvested. The species should match the species listed in FMP-17. Include data for salvage harvest only if it is known a salvage program will be in place during the plan period.

**Forecast Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the total forecast harvest volume by species (in cubic metres) consistent with FMP-17. This volume includes utilized and unutilized volume types. The utilized volume includes volumes to be invoiced as well as undersized volumes.

**Crown Revenues (000s \$):**

Crown Revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Crown charges (minimum fixed rate and residual value) in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the forest renewal charge in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$):**

Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Forestry Futures charge in effect at the time of plan preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Revenue from Area Charges:**

The area charges are estimated by multiplying the area charge in effect at the time of plan preparation (\$0.00 for each square kilometre at time of publication) by the area of productive forest under licence.

**Expenditures:**

Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

**Activity:**

Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$):**

Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required.

**Notes for Expenditures:**

**Natural Regeneration** -Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.

**Artificial Regeneration** -Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.)

**Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).

**Tending** - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged)

**Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).

**Other Eligible Activities** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated)

**Protection** - Activities include insect pest control

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

3  
4  
5

**FMP-25: Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)**

Forest Unit	Silvicultural Ground Rule	Projected Forest Unit	Area to be Assessed (ha)
<b>Harvest</b>			
		<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>	
		<b>Harvest Subtotal</b>	
<b>Natural Disturbance</b>			
		<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>	
		<b>Natural Disturbance Subtotal</b>	
<b>Total</b>			

6

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**FMP-25: Forecast of Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)**

This table summarizes the area (in hectares) to be assessed for regeneration success during the ten year period of the plan by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule. The source of information for this table is a record of applicable silvicultural ground rules, harvest and natural disturbance and silvicultural treatments. The amount of area to be assessed for success should be consistent with the level of regeneration success required to meet plan objectives and the management strategy as well as levels of past disturbance (i.e., harvest and natural).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest or natural disturbance.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**

Forecast assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under the natural disturbance.

**Silvicultural Ground Rule:**

Enter the silvicultural ground rule (from FMP-5) that best describes the treatments that were implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was changed, enter only the final SGR implemented.

**Projected Forest Unit:**

Enter the projected forest unit as described in the silvicultural ground rule (FMP-5).

**Area to be Assessed:**

Enter the forecast area (hectares) to be assessed and subtotal by forest unit.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required





**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1

2

3 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED AND**

4 **EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... 3**

5 Phase-In Provisions..... 3

6 **1.0 INTRODUCTION..... 4**

7 **2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS..... 5**

8 2.1 Introduction ..... 5

9 2.2 Amendment Requests ..... 6

10 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments ..... 6

11 2.3 Amendment Documentation ..... 7

12 2.4 Administrative Amendments ..... 7

13 2.5 Minor Amendments ..... 8

14 2.5.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval..... 8

15 2.6 Major Amendments..... 8

16 2.6.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval..... 8

17 2.7 Amendment Records and Distribution..... 11

18 2.8 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation..... 13

19 2.8.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist..... 13

20 2.8.2 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ..... 13

21 2.8.3 Road Crossings of Areas of Concern..... 14

22 2.8.3.1 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions..... 14

23 2.8.3.2 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values ..

24 ..... 14

25 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams..... 14

26 Other Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values 14

27 **3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS ..... 16**

28 3.1 Introduction ..... 16

29 3.2 Planning Proposal ..... 16

30 3.3 Preparation of a Contingency Plan..... 17

31 3.3.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan..... 18

32 3.3.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan ..... 18

33 3.3.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules..... 19

34 3.3.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal..... 19

35 3.4 Submission, Review and Approval..... 20

36 3.5 Contingency Plan Records and Distribution ..... 20

37 **4.0 UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS..... 22**

38 4.1 Introduction ..... 22

39 4.2 Unscheduled Plan Renewal as a Result of Year Three Management Unit Annual

40 Report ..... 22

41 4.3 Early Plan Renewal..... 22

42 4.3.1 Introduction..... 22

43 4.3.2 Proposal for Early Plan Renewal ..... 22

44 4.3.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval..... 23

1	<b>5.0</b>	<b>DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM</b>	<b>24</b>
2		.....	
3	<b>6.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION</b>	<b>25</b>
4	6.1	General	25
5	6.1.1	Public Notices	25
6	6.1.2	<i>French Language Services Act</i>	25
7	6.1.3	<i>Environmental Bill of Rights</i>	26
8	6.1.4	Issue Resolution	26
9	6.2	Minor Amendments	26
10	6.2.1	Public Notice Requirements	26
11	6.2.2	Information and Maps Available	27
12	6.3	Major Amendments	27
13	6.3.1	General	27
14	6.3.2	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations	27
15	6.3.2.1	Public Notice Requirements	28
16	6.3.2.2	Information and Maps Available	28
17	6.3.3	Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment	29
18	6.3.3.1	Public Notice Requirements	29
19	6.3.3.2	Information and Maps Available	29
20	6.3.3.3	Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment	29
21	6.4	Contingency Plans	31
22	6.4.1	General	31
23	6.4.2	Contingency Plan Inspection	31
24	6.4.2.1	Public Notice Requirements	31
25	6.4.2.2	Information and Maps Available	32
26	6.4.3	Additional Consultation	32
27	<b>7.0</b>	<b>ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT</b>	<b>33</b>
28	7.1	Introduction	33
29	7.2	Minor Amendments	33
30	7.3	Major Amendments	33
31	7.3.1	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations	33
32	7.3.2	Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment	34
33	7.4	Contingency Plans	34

**LIST OF FIGURES**

38	Figure C-1:	Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page	9
39	Figure C-2:	Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page	10
40	Figure C-3:	Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page	12
41	Figure C-4:	Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page	21

1 **PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, UNSCHEDULED**  
2 **AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS**

3  
4 This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest  
5 management plans and contingency plans, contingency plans, and unscheduled and early  
6 renewals of forest management plans.  
7

8  
9 **Phase-In Provisions**

10  
11 For Part C, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For plan amendments  
12 categorized by the MNR District Manager prior to the effective date of this *Forest*  
13 *Management Planning Manual*, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the  
14 *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September, 1996.  
15 For plan amendments categorized by the MNR District Manager after the effective date of  
16 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, to the extent reasonably possible, those  
17 amendments will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of  
18 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*. However, table formats should remain consistent  
19 with the existing approved forest management plan. The plan author and appropriate MNR  
20 staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with concurrence of  
21 MNR District Manager, will implement the phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical  
22 manner. Phase-in provisions will be documented in the amendment request.  
23

24 For Part C, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a planning proposal for a  
25 contingency plan has been provided to the Ministry of the Environment for endorsement prior  
26 to the effective date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the contingency plan will  
27 be prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's*  
28 *Crown Forests*, dated September, 1996. For contingency plans proposed after the effective  
29 date of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, those contingency plans will be prepared  
30 in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 3.0 of this *Forest Management*  
31 *Planning Manual*.  
32

33 For Part C, Section 6.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a plan amendment or a  
34 contingency plan is prepared according to the requirements of this *Forest Management*  
35 *Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part C, Section 6.0 will apply.  
36

37 For Part C, Section 7.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a plan amendment or a  
38 contingency plan is prepared according to the requirements of this *Forest Management*  
39 *Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part C, Section 7.0 will apply.

1 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

2  
3 This part of the manual describes the requirements for the preparation of amendments to  
4 forest management plans and contingency plans, contingency plans, and unscheduled and  
5 early renewals of forest management plans.  
6

7 Section 2.0 describes the requirements for the preparation of plan amendments and  
8 contingency plans. Section 3.0 describes the requirements for the preparation of contingency  
9 plans. Section 4.0 describes the requirements for unscheduled and early renewal of forest  
10 management plans. Section 5.0 describes the requirements when there is a delay in approval  
11 of the planned operations for the second five-year term.  
12

13 Section 6.0 describes the requirements for public consultation in the preparation of plan  
14 amendments and contingency plans. Section 7.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal  
15 involvement in the preparation of plan amendments and contingency plans.

## 2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS

### 2.1 Introduction

This section describes the planning requirements for any change to an approved forest management plan or contingency plan. For any change to a forest management plan or contingency plan, an amendment will be prepared. An amendment to a forest management plan must be consistent with the long-term management direction for the management unit, and an amendment to a contingency plan must be consistent with the planning proposal for the contingency plan previously endorsed by the Ministry of the Environment.

Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement. Therefore, three categories of amendments are provided: administrative, minor, and major. For any amendment, the planning requirements will depend on the nature of the proposed operations, but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required if the operations were proposed in the preparation of a new forest management plan. However, the MNR review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, will differ depending upon the category of amendment.

The amendment process involves:

- (a) submission of a request for an amendment;
- (b) review of the request by the MNR District Manager, with advice from the local citizens committee;
- (c) acceptance or denial of the request;
- (d) if acceptance, assignment of a category to the amendment;
- (e) completion of all applicable planning and documentation requirements, including public consultation and Aboriginal involvement;
- (f) MNR review and approval of the amendment; and
- (g) record-keeping and distribution of amendments.

All applicable planning and documentation requirements for a forest management plan will apply to the preparation of a plan amendment. All amendments will be certified by the plan author and the MNR District Manager, and when approved, will be filed in the same locations as the approved forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.6). In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B.

1 If applicable, a List of Exceptions in the format of Part B, Figure B-2 will be prepared and  
2 attached to the title, certification and approval page(s), to identify prescriptions that differ from  
3 specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.  
4

## 6 **2.2 Amendment Requests**

7

8 Any person can initiate the planning process for an amendment by submitting a written  
9 request to the MNR District Manager. The amendment request will contain the following  
10 information:

- 12 (a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;
  - 13 (b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance;  
14 and
  - 15 (c) if new operations are proposed:
    - 16 (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the  
17 previously approved operations in the forest management plan or  
18 contingency plan which will be changed by the proposed amendment;  
19 and
    - 20 (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed  
21 operations, including public consultation and Aboriginal involvement,  
22 based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a forest  
23 management plan.
- 24  
25

### 26 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments

27

28 The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the local citizens committee, will decide if  
29 preparation of the proposed amendment should proceed, and the appropriate categorization of  
30 the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The MNR District Manager's decision, at a  
31 minimum will consider the following factors:

- 33 (a) the amount of planning and public consultation and Aboriginal involvement  
34 required for the proposed amendment;
  - 35 (b) whether there are legitimate time constraints which must be met for reasons of  
36 public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and  
37 necessity;
  - 38 (c) the number of similar requests;
  - 39 (d) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request  
40 on natural resource features, land uses and values potentially affected; and
  - 41 (e) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations.
- 42

43 When the MNR District Manager has made a preliminary determination that an amendment  
44 should be categorized as administrative, and the local citizens committee is not readily  
45 available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager  
46 may instead consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her alternate, for the  
47 purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

1 If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural  
2 disturbance, the MNR District Manager, in consultation with the local citizens committee,  
3 will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of  
4 salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood. If the local citizens  
5 committee is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment,  
6 the MNR District Manager may consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her  
7 alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

8  
9 The decision on the amendment request, and the appropriate category of amendment will  
10 normally be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNR District Manager will  
11 prepare a written decision, and if the local citizens committee disagrees with the  
12 categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager will record the nature of that  
13 disagreement in that written decision.

### 16 **2.3 Amendment Documentation**

17  
18 All applicable planning and documentation requirements for a forest management plan (Parts  
19 A and B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan or  
20 contingency plan. Documentation requirements for each amendment will include:

- 21
- 22 (a) the title, certification and approval page;
- 23 (b) the amendment request;
- 24 (c) the amended text and tables, if applicable, for the changes to the approved  
25 forest management plan;
- 26 (d) a map(s) of the area affected by the amendment, if applicable;
- 27 (e) all documentation associated with the planning of operations, if applicable,  
28 including any supplementary documentation;
- 29 (f) comments from the local citizens committee, if applicable; and
- 30 (g) the results of the formal public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, if  
31 applicable.
- 32
- 33

### 34 **2.4 Administrative Amendments**

35  
36 If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that a  
37 proposed amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is  
38 administrative, the necessary planning will be completed and the amendment will be certified  
39 by the plan author. The administrative amendment will be reviewed by appropriate MNR  
40 staff. Upon satisfactory completion of any changes as a result of the MNR review, the  
41 amendment will be certified and approved by the MNR District Manager or the MNR Area  
42 Supervisor. There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an  
43 administrative amendment.

1 When the cumulative effect of administrative amendments requires tables in the forest  
2 management plan to be updated, the applicable tables will be updated annually and will be  
3 filed with each copy of the approved forest management plan.

4  
5 Figure C-1 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an  
6 administrative amendment.

## 7 8 9 **2.5 Minor Amendments**

### 10 11 2.5.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval

12  
13 If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that  
14 the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the  
15 amendment will be prepared in consultation with interested and affected persons and  
16 organizations and certified by the plan author. The minor amendment will be reviewed by  
17 appropriate MNR staff. Upon completion of any required changes, the minor amendment will  
18 be re-submitted. The MNR District Manager will then certify and approve the minor  
19 amendment.

20  
21 An opportunity for inspection of the MNR-approved minor amendment by the public and  
22 Aboriginal communities will be provided (Part C, Sections 6.2 and 7.2). If inspection of the  
23 MNR-approved amendment results in no significant concerns, implementation of the minor  
24 amendment will proceed.

## 25 26 27 **2.6 Major Amendments**

### 28 29 2.6.1 Preparation, Documentation, Review and Approval

30  
31 If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that  
32 the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the  
33 amendment will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons and  
34 organizations.

35  
36 As described in Part C, Sections 6.3 and 7.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and  
37 Aboriginal involvement will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major  
38 amendment.

39  
40 After Stage One of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement during the preparation of  
41 the proposed major amendment, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.2 and 7.3.1, the required  
42 documentation for the major amendment will be produced. The major amendment is  
43 submitted to MNR for review by appropriate MNR staff, including MNR regional staff, in  
44 accordance with the same procedure as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.4),  
45 with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.



**Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

Amendment #:
--------------

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

I/We hereby confirm that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that this Administrative Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

\_\_\_\_\_  
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this Administrative Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Administrative Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor] [date]

**Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

Amendment #:
--------------

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

I/We hereby confirm that this Minor Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that this Minor Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

\_\_\_\_\_  
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date] \_\_\_\_\_

I approve this Minor Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Minor Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Minor Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR District Manager] [date] \_\_\_\_\_

Concurrence by (if required):  
\_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR Regional Director] [date] \_\_\_\_\_

1 After the MNR review and satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major  
2 amendment, the MNR District Manager will certify and recommend the major amendment for  
3 approval by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with the same procedure as for a  
4 forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5), with whatever modifications MNR considers  
5 necessary in the circumstances. After approval by the MNR Regional Director, the MNR-  
6 approved major amendment is available for inspection at Stage Two of public consultation  
7 and Aboriginal involvement, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.3 and 7.3.2.

8  
9 In addition to the documentation requirements described in Part C, Section 2.3, a brief  
10 description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the  
11 *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the  
12 development of the major amendment must also be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing  
13 note.

14  
15 Figure C-3 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major  
16 amendment.

## 17 18 19 **2.7 Amendment Records and Distribution**

20  
21 An up-to-date list of all amendment requests will be maintained at the front of each copy of  
22 the approved forest management plan at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the  
23 office of the sustainable forest licensee. The list will include:

- 24  
25 (a) amendment request number;  
26 (b) amendment request date;  
27 (c) reason for the amendment;  
28 (d) District Manager decision on amendment request, including category; and  
29 (e) amendment approval date.

30  
31 All approved amendments will form part of the approved forest management plan. A copy of  
32 each approved amendment will be filed with each copy of the approved forest management  
33 plan.

34  
35 Major and minor amendments will be filed immediately upon approval with the copy of the  
36 approved forest management plan at each of the following locations:

- 37  
38 (a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;  
39 (b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
40 (c) the appropriate MNR regional office;  
41 (d) MNR Forest Management Branch; and  
42 (e) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

43  
44 Administrative amendments will be filed immediately upon approval with each copy of the  
45 forest management plan at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the  
46 sustainable forest licensee. By April 30 of each year, the MNR district office will forward a

**Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

Amendment #:
--------------

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the 10-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_\_

I/We hereby confirm that this Major Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that this Major Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

[R.P.F. seal] \_\_\_\_\_ [Plan Author] \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

I recommend that this Major Amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Major Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Major Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

\_\_\_\_\_ [MNR District Manager] \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

Approved by:

\_\_\_\_\_ [MNR Regional Director] \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_

1 copy of each approved administrative amendment for the year, and an updated list of  
2 amendment requests and approved amendments, to each of the other three locations, for filing  
3 with the copy of the approved forest management plan.  
4

5  
6 **2.8 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation**  
7

8 2.8.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist  
9

10 During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that a mapped natural  
11 resource feature or value no longer exists, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest*  
12 *Information Manual*. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of  
13 concern, or the road crossing location and/or conditions, in the forest management plan will  
14 no longer apply. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. Updated  
15 information will be documented and provided to MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.  
16

17  
18 2.8.2 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern  
19

20 During the implementation of operations, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural  
21 resource feature or value may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an  
22 area of concern is available in the forest management plan, that operational prescription will  
23 be implemented in the location of the feature or value with no requirement for an amendment  
24 to the forest management plan. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern  
25 is not available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan  
26 will be required. As described in Part C, Section 2.2, the MNR District Manager should make  
27 a decision on the categorization of the amendment which facilitates the expeditious planning,  
28 approval and implementation of operations.  
29

30 During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a natural resource feature or  
31 value in an area of operations may be different than the mapped location in the forest  
32 management plan. As described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.1, the operational prescription for the  
33 area of concern in the forest management plan will be implemented in the actual location of  
34 the feature or value, with no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan.  
35

36 During the implementation of operations, increased protection (e.g., wider reserves) may be  
37 provided to the operational prescription for an area of concern from the approved forest  
38 management plan. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.  
39

40 In each of the situations described in this section where no amendment to the forest  
41 management plan will be required, updated information will be documented and provided to  
42 MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.

1 2.8.3 Road Crossings of Areas of Concern

2  
3 2.8.3.1 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

4  
5 If a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction is desired for a primary or  
6 branch road crossing of an area of concern, and the change is consistent with the acceptable  
7 variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on construction identified in the forest  
8 management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. Updated  
9 information on the crossing location or conditions on construction will be documented and  
10 provided to MNR as described in Part D, Section 3.4.1.4.

11  
12 If a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction is desired, and the change is  
13 not consistent with the acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on  
14 construction identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest  
15 management plan will be required. As described in Part C, Section 2.2, the MNR District  
16 Manager will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and  
17 implementation of operations.

18  
19 If a change to the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of a crossing is desired for  
20 an operational road crossing of an area of concern, an amendment is required.

21  
22  
23 2.8.3.2 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values

24  
25 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams

26  
27 During the construction of a road, an unmapped stream may be encountered or the actual  
28 location of a stream may be different than the mapped location in the forest management plan  
29 and annual work schedule. In these situations, a revision to the annual work schedule will be  
30 required. In the revision, a new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions  
31 on construction will be identified and reviewed, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.1.2. An  
32 amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.

33  
34  
35 Other Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features and Values

36  
37 During the construction of a road, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural resource  
38 feature or value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a  
39 natural resource feature or value may be different than the mapped location in the forest  
40 management plan.

41  
42 If a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern for such features or values is  
43 necessary, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required. In the amendment,  
44 a new 100 metre wide location of the area of concern crossing, and/or new conditions on  
45 construction, will be identified, in accordance with the planning requirements described in  
46 Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

1 If an operational road crossing of an area of concern for such a feature or value is necessary,  
2 and conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossing are available in the forest  
3 management plan and are applicable to the area of concern, those conditions will apply. In  
4 such a situation, an amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. If  
5 conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossing are not available in the forest  
6 management plan, or the conditions in the forest management plan are not applicable, an  
7 amendment to the forest management plan will be required. As described in Part C, Section  
8 2.2.1, the MNR District Manager will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious  
9 planning and implementation of operations.

1 **3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS**

2  
3 **3.1 Introduction**

4  
5 A contingency plan is an interim forest management plan that is required when special  
6 circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. These circumstances  
7 are described in Part C, Section 3.3. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of  
8 operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan  
9 and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

10  
11 When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNR District Manager will  
12 notify the MNR Regional Director, and the Manager of MNR’s Forest Management Planning  
13 Section, Forest Management Branch, Main Office. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a  
14 planning proposal must be endorsed by the Director of Environmental Assessment and  
15 Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

16  
17  
18 **3.2 Planning Proposal**

19  
20 To initiate the planning process for a contingency plan, a planning proposal for a contingency  
21 plan will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with staff from the MNR district and  
22 regional office and MNR’s Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management  
23 Branch, Main Office.

24  
25 The planning proposal will include:

- 26  
27 (a) the name of the management unit;  
28 (b) the need for the contingency plan;  
29 (c) the term of the contingency plan;  
30 (d) an outline of the content for the contingency plan and the supplementary  
31 documentation;  
32 (e) a description of the consultation that has occurred to date, and provisions for  
33 additional public consultation and Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of  
34 the contingency plan;  
35 (f) the schedule for the production, review and approval of the contingency plan;  
36 (g) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee;  
37 (h) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by  
38 operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;  
39 (i) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if  
40 any;  
41 (j) the effect on the planning schedule for the forest management plan;  
42 (k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the forest management plan,  
43 the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit  
44 annual reports; and



- 1 (l) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the  
2 sustainable forest licensee, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional  
3 Director.  
4

5 Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNR Regional Director, it will be submitted  
6 to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the  
7 Environment for endorsement. The planning proposal will be accompanied by a covering  
8 letter from the MNR Regional Director, including the requested timeframe for endorsement,  
9 to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the  
10 Environment.  
11

12 The planning proposal will be submitted to the Director of the Environmental Assessment  
13 Branch, Ministry of the Environment, within a sufficient time period to permit the  
14 preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan by the required implementation  
15 date. The time period will depend on the circumstances surrounding the need for the  
16 contingency plan.  
17

18 The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require the MNR  
19 Regional Director to submit additional information related to the planning proposal prior to  
20 determining whether to endorse the planning proposal. The Director of Environmental  
21 Assessment and Approvals Branch will normally make a decision on endorsement of the  
22 planning proposal within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information.  
23

24 Upon an endorsement of the planning proposal by the Director of the Environmental  
25 Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, production of the  
26 contingency plan will proceed.  
27  
28

### 29 **3.3 Preparation of a Contingency Plan**

30

31 The preparation of a contingency plan will proceed in accordance with the planning proposal  
32 endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry  
33 of the Environment. As in the case of a forest management plan, the contingency plan will be  
34 prepared by the plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a  
35 planning team and a local citizens committee.  
36

37 The contingency plan will normally be prepared for a minimum term of 12 months.  
38 The applicable planning requirements for a forest management plan will apply to the  
39 preparation of the contingency plan. In addition to the documentation requirements identified  
40 in the endorsed planning proposal, contingency plan documentation will include:  
41

- 42 (a) a title, certification and approval page;  
43 (b) the planning proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;  
44 (c) comments from the local citizens committee; and  
45 (d) the results of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement.

1 A brief description of how MNR’s Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the  
2 *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the  
3 development of the contingency plan must be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note.  
4  
5

### 6 3.3.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan 7

8 For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay in the approval of a forest  
9 management plan, the first four stages of Phase I of public consultation, and the applicable  
10 Aboriginal involvement, will have been completed. The contingency plan will normally  
11 incorporate non-contentious operations that will have been planned and reviewed during the  
12 preparation and review of the draft forest management plan. Comments received from the  
13 public and Aboriginal communities during the review of the draft forest management plan  
14 will assist in identifying non-contentious operations.  
15

16 This type of contingency plan is a short-term plan that enables the implementation of  
17 operations until the forest management plan is approved for implementation. The forest  
18 operations for the contingency plan will normally be supplied by the annual work schedule,  
19 and any additional information identified in the approved and endorsed planning proposal.  
20  
21

### 22 3.3.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan 23

24 For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay that prevents a draft forest  
25 management plan from being prepared by the scheduled review date, additional planning,  
26 documentation, and public consultation and Aboriginal involvement are required. In  
27 particular, the planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in  
28 accordance with the planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part  
29 B, Section 4.0.  
30

31 If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and  
32 Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment before the MNR Regional Director’s  
33 endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the  
34 contingency plan will include operations from the current approved forest management plan,  
35 where possible, including contingency area. Additional operations will be planned in manner  
36 that is consistent with the long-term management direction (or strategic direction) of the  
37 current approved forest management plan.  
38

39 If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and  
40 Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the MNR Regional Director’s  
41 endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan,  
42 operations will be planned in manner that is consistent with that long-term management  
43 direction.

1 3.3.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

2  
3 A forest management plan will be renewed at least every 10 years. Adjustments to a forest  
4 management planning schedule for a management unit may be required to even out the  
5 number of plans that are renewed in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit  
6 amalgamations.

7  
8 When the schedule for forest management plan renewal is changed to even out the number of  
9 plans that are renewed in any particular year, a contingency plan will be required. The  
10 contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between expiry  
11 of the current approved forest management plan and the scheduled renewal of the forest  
12 management plan for the management unit.

13  
14 When there is a scheduled amalgamation of management units that involves a management  
15 unit for which the forest management plan will expire before the scheduled amalgamation, a  
16 contingency plan will be required for that management unit. The contingency plan will permit  
17 the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current forest  
18 management plan and the scheduled implementation of the forest management plan for the  
19 amalgamated management unit.

20  
21 Operations will be planned in a manner that is consistent with the long-term management  
22 direction (or strategic direction) of the current approved forest management plan. The  
23 planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in accordance with the  
24 planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

25  
26  
27 3.3.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal

28  
29 If the MNR Regional Director endorses a year three management unit annual report that does  
30 not support the continuation of the long-term management direction of the current approved  
31 forest management plan (Part E, Sections 3.0 and 5.2), an unscheduled plan renewal will be  
32 required. A contingency plan will be required to permit the implementation of operations for  
33 the period of time required to prepare and approve the forest management plan.

34  
35 The areas of operations, including roads, for the term of the contingency plan will be selected  
36 from the current approved forest management plan, including:

- 37  
38 (a) approved areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;  
39 (b) contingency area;  
40 (c) proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending for the second five-year term;  
41 (d) optional harvest areas; and  
42 (e) approved roads.

43  
44 The planning of operations for the contingency plan will be undertaken in accordance with the  
45 planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

1 **3.4 Submission, Review and Approval**  
2

3 The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by  
4 appropriate MNR staff, including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a forest  
5 management plan (Part A, Sections 1.4), as described in the endorsed planning proposal.  
6 Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNR review, the contingency  
7 plan will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNR District Manager in  
8 accordance with the same requirements as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section  
9 1.5.4). When approved by the MNR Regional Director, the contingency plan will be filed in  
10 the same locations as the approved forest management plan.

11  
12 Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency  
13 plan.

14  
15 The requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement for contingency plans  
16 are described in Part C, Sections 6.4 and 7.4.  
17

18  
19 **3.5 Contingency Plan Records and Distribution**  
20

21 The approved contingency plan will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area  
22 office, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR regional office,  
23 MNR's Forest Management Branch, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR for the  
24 duration of the contingency plan.  
25

26 After approval and inspection of the contingency plan, MNR will provide the Environmental  
27 Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of Environment with a summary of public  
28 consultation and Aboriginal involvement for the contingency plan, including the date(s) of  
29 notice(s), a summary of the comments received, and a summary of MNR's responses to those  
30 comments.

**Figure C-4: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

CONTINGENCY PLAN  
for the  
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]  
[Name of plan author's organization]  
for the period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_

I hereby certify that I have prepared this Contingency Plan, including the Silvicultural Ground Rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

\_\_\_\_\_  
[R.P.F. seal]                      [Plan Author]                      [date]

Submitted by:  
(where applicable)                      [Senior official of  
plan author's organization,  
if other than MNR]                      [date]

I recommend that this Contingency Plan be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, relevant policies and obligations, including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal people. I also certify that this Contingency Plan has been prepared in accordance with the applicable implementation manuals and forest management guides. In this Contingency Plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

\_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR District Manager]                      [date]

Approved by:

\_\_\_\_\_  
[MNR Regional Director]                      [date]

1    **4.0    UNSCHEDULED AND EARLY PLAN RENEWALS**

2  
3    **4.1    Introduction**

4  
5    A forest management plan will be renewed at least every 10 years. There may be  
6    circumstances during the term of an approved forest management plan that results in an  
7    unscheduled plan renewal. There may also be circumstances during the term of a forest  
8    management plan where an early plan renewal may be necessary.  
9

10  
11   **4.2    Unscheduled Plan Renewal as a Result of Year Three Management Unit Annual**  
12    **Report**

13  
14    If the MNR Regional Director endorses a year three management unit annual report that does  
15    not support the continuation of the long-term management direction of the current approved  
16    forest management plan (Part E, Sections 3.0 and 5.2), an unscheduled plan renewal will be  
17    required. Following this endorsement, the MNR Regional Director will notify the MNR’s  
18    Forest Management Branch, the MNR District Manager, the Director of the Environmental  
19    Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment and the sustainable forest  
20    licensee that the long-term management direction is no longer valid for the second five-year  
21    term and that a new forest management plan must be prepared. The notification will also  
22    identify that a contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part  
23    C, Section 3.0.  
24

25  
26   **4.3    Early Plan Renewal**

27  
28    4.3.1   Introduction

29  
30    At any time during the implementation of a forest management plan, there may be other  
31    circumstances than that described in Part C, Section 4.2 which merit the renewal of the forest  
32    management plan prior to the scheduled renewal date.  
33

34    If the MNR District Manager and the sustainable forest licensee agree that an early plan  
35    renewal has merit, a proposal will be prepared.  
36

37  
38    4.3.2   Proposal for Early Plan Renewal

39  
40    The plan author, in conjunction with staff from the MNR district and MNR regional office,  
41    will prepare a proposal for an early plan renewal. The proposal will be submitted to the MNR  
42    Regional Director within a sufficient time period to permit the preparation, review and  
43    approval of the forest management plan by the proposed early renewal date.

1 The proposal will contain the following information:  
2

- 3 (a) the name of the management unit;
- 4 (b) the period for the current approved forest management plan and the period  
5 proposed for the early plan renewal;
- 6 (c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the early plan renewal;
- 7 (d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment  
8 to the current approved forest management plan, a contingency plan); and
- 9 (e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee.

10  
11 A senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, if applicable, will sign the proposal and  
12 submit it to the MNR District Manager. The MNR District Manager will review the proposal  
13 and provide recommendations to the MNR Regional Director.  
14

#### 15 16 4.3.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval

17  
18 The MNR Regional Director will review the proposal for early plan renewal and make the  
19 determination whether to proceed with an early plan renewal.  
20

21 Upon approval to proceed with an early plan renewal, the MNR Regional Director will notify  
22 the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR  
23 Manager, Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch.

1 **5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND**  
2 **FIVE-YEAR TERM**

3  
4 When there is a delay in the approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term,  
5 the first annual work schedule for the second five-year term will be prepared from the  
6 approved operations and contingency area in the current approved forest management plan.  
7 An amendment to the forest management plan will be required in order to include  
8 contingency area in the annual work schedule (Part A, Section 1.3.3.2).

9  
10 When the operations for the second five-year term are approved for implementation, the  
11 annual work schedule will be revised in accordance with Part D, Section 3.4, if any approved  
12 operations from the second five-year term will be scheduled within the annual work schedule.



1 **6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

2  
3 **6.1 General**

4  
5 6.1.1 Public Notices

6  
7 Public notices are required for minor and major amendments, and contingency plans. Public  
8 notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-  
9 technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of,  
10 public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

11  
12 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations,  
13 normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will be provided in advertisements in  
14 the local media.

15  
16 Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR  
17 considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

18  
19 Each public notice will contain the following information:

- 20  
21 (a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;  
22 (b) a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
23 identification of the location of the management unit;  
24 (c) a description of the subject matter of the public consultation opportunity;  
25 (d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available,  
26 including the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and the appropriate  
27 MNR district or area office during normal business hours, and during non-  
28 business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District Manager;  
29 and  
30 (e) the name of a contact person(s).

31  
32 Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for  
33 minor amendments, major amendments and contingency plans are described in Part C,  
34 Sections 6.2, 6.3 and 6.4.

35  
36  
37 6.1.2 *French Language Services Act*

38  
39 The *French Language Services Act*, as amended from time to time, will govern the public  
40 consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments and contingency plans  
41 in designated areas under the act. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for public  
42 consultation for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply, with whatever  
43 modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

1 6.1.3 *Environmental Bill of Rights*

2  
3 Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to  
4 time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental  
5 Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation  
6 for a major amendment or a contingency plan.

7  
8 For a major amendment, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR  
9 Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public consultation.  
10 At Stage Two, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR  
11 Environmental Registry.

12  
13 For a contingency plan, at a minimum, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the  
14 EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued to advise the public of an  
15 opportunity to inspect the MNR-approved contingency plan (Part C, Section 6.4).

16  
17 MNR's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for  
18 policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

19  
20  
21 6.1.4 Issue Resolution

22  
23 If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, or a contingency  
24 plan, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1 will apply, with whatever  
25 modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for  
26 issue resolution may be compressed).

27  
28  
29 **6.2 Minor Amendments**

30  
31 One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The  
32 purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the minor  
33 amendment has been approved by the MNR District Manager, and to invite the public to view  
34 the approved minor amendment, and identify any concerns.

35  
36  
37 6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

38  
39 A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to implementation of the minor  
40 amendment. The direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have  
41 identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by, the  
42 operations which are proposed in the minor amendment.

1 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the  
2 notice will contain:

- 3
- 4 (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to  
5 advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
  - 6 (b) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are  
7 raised;
  - 8 (c) a statement that the minor amendment will receive final MNR approval by a  
9 specified date if no concerns are raised;
  - 10 (d) a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under  
11 relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*  
12 *Act*; and
  - 13 (e) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).
- 14  
15

#### 16 6.2.2 Information and Maps Available

17

18 The MNR-approved minor amendment and supplementary documentation will be available  
19 for viewing and comment at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the  
20 sustainable forest licensee, for a period of at least 15 days.

21  
22

### 23 6.3 Major Amendments

24

#### 25 6.3.1 General

26

27 Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major  
28 amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

29

30 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations,  
31 including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations, which are  
32 proposed in the major amendment.

33  
34

#### 35 6.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

36

37 Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public  
38 to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning  
39 of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30  
40 days before the information centre.

41

42 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

43

- 44 (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major  
45 amendment, including:
  - 46 (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;

- 1                   (ii)     the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and  
2                                 proposed road locations/conditions; and  
3                   (iii)     the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations; and  
4           (b)     to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in  
5                                 planning.  
6  
7

#### 8 6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements 9

10 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the  
11 notice will contain:  
12

- 13           (a)     the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation opportunity;  
14           (b)     the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and  
15                         information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District  
16                         Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee;  
17           (c)     a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
18                         review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will  
19                         be provided);  
20           (d)     a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under  
21                         relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*  
22                         *Act*; and  
23           (e)     a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).  
24

25 A supplemental notice(s) will be issued approximately 7 days in advance to remind the public  
26 of the upcoming information centre. This notice will normally be issued by MNR; however,  
27 the sustainable forest licensee and/or the local citizens committee may provide this notice.  
28 The local citizens committee will be consulted on the appropriate format for the supplemental  
29 notice (e.g., local radio or television announcement, flyers, etc.).  
30

31 The MNR District Manager, the plan author, the planning team and representatives from the  
32 local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately  
33 identified.  
34  
35

#### 36 6.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available 37

38 Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be  
39 comparable to the information and maps available at Phase II: Stage One for a forest  
40 management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers  
41 necessary in the circumstances.

1 6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment

2  
3 Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the  
4 public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon  
5 approval of the major amendment by the MNR Regional Director.

6 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the major  
7 amendment has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity  
8 for the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment.

9  
10  
11 6.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

12  
13 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the  
14 notice will contain:

- 15  
16 (a) a statement that the MNR-approved major amendment is also available for  
17 inspection at the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto  
18 provided by MNR;
- 19 (b) the names of the plan author and other members of the planning team, and  
20 information concerning how to contact the plan author, the MNR District  
21 Manager and a representative of the local citizens committee; and
- 22 (c) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any  
23 person to make a written request to the Minister of the Environment for an  
24 individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management  
25 activities in the major amendment, and that a response to the request will  
26 normally be provided by the Minister of the Environment after the completion  
27 of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in  
28 Part A, Section 3.4.2).

29  
30  
31 6.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available

32  
33 The MNR-approved major amendment will be available for public inspection at the  
34 appropriate MNR district or area office, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the  
35 appropriate MNR regional office and a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

36  
37  
38 6.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

39  
40 The opportunity to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual  
41 environmental assessment applies to major amendments. For any request for an individual  
42 environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in a major  
43 amendment, the following process will apply:

- 44  
45 1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to inspect  
46 the MNR-approved major amendment, for any person to make a written request to the

- 1 Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific  
2 proposed forest management activities in the major amendment.  
3
- 4 2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District  
5 Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally  
6 have 15 days to respond to the Minister of the Environment on the request.  
7
- 8 3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days  
9 of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of Environmental  
10 Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit additional necessary  
11 information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the  
12 documentation submitted by MNR.  
13
- 14 4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of  
15 receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and  
16 Approvals Branch shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe  
17 for a decision to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and  
18 MNR Regional Director, the plan author and the person requesting an individual  
19 environmental assessment.  
20
- 21 5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that  
22 approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or  
23 conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon  
24 notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental  
25 Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in  
26 respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.  
27
- 28 6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental  
29 assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require an  
30 individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the  
31 Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional  
32 Director, the plan author and the person requesting the individual environmental  
33 assessment, that the request has been denied, with reasons.  
34
- 35 7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment,  
36 the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural  
37 Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, the plan author  
38 and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be  
39 required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and  
40 approval under the *Environmental Assessment Act*. The specific proposed forest  
41 management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the  
42 individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the  
43 Minister of the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given  
44 written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management  
45 activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the  
46 individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be

1 granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of  
2 Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch.

## 3 4 5 **6.4 Contingency Plans**

### 6 7 6.4.1 General

8  
9 The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a contingency plan will be described  
10 in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with  
11 the requirements for a forest management plan, and may vary having regard for the extent of  
12 public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity  
13 will be provided for public consultation on a contingency plan.

### 14 15 16 6.4.2 Contingency Plan Inspection

17  
18 The minimum formal public consultation requirement will be an opportunity to inspect the  
19 MNR-approved contingency plan. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to  
20 advise the public that the MNR Regional Director has approved the contingency plan, and to  
21 invite the public to inspect the approved contingency plan, and to identify any concerns.

#### 22 23 24 6.4.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

25  
26 A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to implementation of the contingency  
27 plan. The direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have  
28 identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by, the  
29 operations which are proposed in the contingency plan.

30  
31 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the  
32 notice will contain:

- 33
- 34 (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to
  - 35 advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
  - 36 (b) a statement that the MNR-approved major amendment is also available for
  - 37 inspection at the appropriate MNR regional office, and a location in Toronto
  - 38 provided by MNR;
  - 39 (c) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are
  - 40 raised;
  - 41 (d) a statement that the contingency plan will receive final MNR approval by a
  - 42 specified date if no concerns are raised;
  - 43 (e) a brief explanation of how comments which are received will be handled under
  - 44 relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*
  - 45 *Act*; and
  - 46 (f) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).

1 6.4.2.2 Information and Maps Available

2  
3 The MNR-approved contingency plan will be available for public inspection and comment at  
4 the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and by appointment  
5 during non-business hours, the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR  
6 regional office, and a location in Toronto provided by MNR, for a period of at least 15 days.

7

8

9 6.4.3 Additional Consultation

10

11 The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for  
12 public consultation for the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). The timing and contents of  
13 public notices, the recipients of notices and the availability of information and maps will be  
14 consistent with the requirements for a forest management plan, with whatever modifications  
15 MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.



1 **7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT**

2  
3 **7.1 Introduction**

4  
5 This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of  
6 Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional  
7 uses may be affected by the production and implementation of a plan amendment or a  
8 contingency plan.

9  
10 In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been  
11 developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for a plan  
12 amendment or a contingency plan, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation  
13 approach has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the  
14 approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant  
15 to section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, may be discharged differently depending on the  
16 circumstances.

17  
18 For each notice required for a plan amendment or a contingency plan, a direct written notice  
19 will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal  
20 language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications  
21 in the Aboriginal media.

22  
23  
24 **7.2 Minor Amendments**

25  
26 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.2 will apply, with  
27 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided  
28 to the Aboriginal community.

29  
30  
31 **7.3 Major Amendments**

32  
33 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.3 will apply, with  
34 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided  
35 to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

36  
37  
38 **7.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations**

39  
40 The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to provide the preliminary  
41 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values, and to determine whether there is  
42 interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special  
43 information centre will be provided.

1 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.2, with  
2 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal  
3 community will contain:

- 4
- 5 (a) the time and location of the special information centre; and
  - 6 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
7 the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values and the  
8 proposed operations in the major amendment.
- 9

10 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately 7 days in advance to remind the  
11 Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

12  
13

#### 14 7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment

15  
16 The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to provide a final Report  
17 on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.

18

19 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.3 will apply, with  
20 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided  
21 to the Aboriginal community.

22  
23

#### 24 7.4 Contingency Plans

25  
26 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.4 will apply, with modifications  
27 that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the  
28 Aboriginal community.

29

30 The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for  
31 Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the  
32 planning proposal for the contingency plan includes provisions for an information centre(s),  
33 the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there  
34 is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special  
35 information centre will be provided.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1			
2			
3	<b>PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS .....</b>		<b>3</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions .....		3
5	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION.....</b>		<b>4</b>
6	<b>2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS.....</b>		<b>5</b>
7	Silvicultural Ground Rules.....		5
8	Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern.....		6
9	Annual Work Schedules and Annual Reports.....		6
10	<b>3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE.....</b>		<b>8</b>
11	3.1 Introduction.....		8
12	3.2 Content Requirements.....		8
13	3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page .....		8
14	3.2.2 Introduction.....		10
15	3.2.3 Harvest Area .....		10
16	3.2.4 Wood Utilization.....		11
17	3.2.5 Renewal and Maintenance .....		11
18	3.2.5.1 Renewal Support.....		11
19	3.2.6 Roads.....		12
20	3.2.6.1 Water Crossings .....		12
21	Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction.....		12
22	Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction.....		13
23	3.2.6.2 Existing Roads .....		14
24	3.2.6.3 Aggregates .....		14
25	3.2.7 Fire Prevention and Preparedness.....		14
26	3.2.8 Revenues and Expenditures .....		15
27	3.2.9 Monitoring and Assessment.....		15
28	3.2.10 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map .....		16
29	3.3 MNR Review and Approval.....		16
30	3.4 Revisions.....		17
31	3.4.1 Areas of Concern .....		19
32	3.4.1.1 Operational Prescriptions.....		19
33	3.4.1.2 Water Crossings .....		19
34	Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams.....		19
35	Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions.....		19
36	3.4.1.3 Other Crossings.....		20
37	Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features or Values.....		20
38	Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist.....		20
39	3.4.1.4 Documentation.....		21
40	3.5 Annual Work Schedule Tables.....		21
41	<b>4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS .....</b>		<b>36</b>
42	<b>5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .....</b>		<b>37</b>
43	<b>6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .....</b>		<b>39</b>

1	6.1	Introduction.....	39
2	6.2	Development of Insect Pest Management Program.....	39
3	<b>7.0</b>	<b>PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....</b>	<b>41</b>
4	7.1	General.....	41
5	7.1.1	Public Notices.....	41
6	7.1.2	<i>French Language Services Act</i> .....	41
7	7.1.3	<i>Environmental Bill of Rights</i> .....	41
8	7.2	Annual Work Schedules.....	41
9	7.3	Prescribed Burns.....	43
10	7.4	Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects.....	43
11	7.5	Insect Pest Management Programs.....	44
12	7.5.1	General.....	44
13	7.5.2	Stage One - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management	
14		Program.....	44
15	7.5.3	Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection.....	45
16	7.5.4	Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment	46
17	7.5.4.1	Issue Resolution.....	46
18	7.5.4.2	Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment.....	46
19	<b>8.0</b>	<b>ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT.....</b>	<b>48</b>
20	8.1	Introduction.....	48
21	8.2	Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide	
22		Projects.....	48
23	8.3	Insect Pest Management Programs.....	48
24	8.3.1	Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management	
25		Program.....	48
26	8.3.2	Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection.....	49

**LIST OF TABLES**

31	AWS-1:	Annual Schedule of Harvest Area.....	22
32	AWS-2:	Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization.....	24
33	AWS-3:	Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations.....	26
34	AWS-4:	Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management.....	28
35	AWS-5:	Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/Reviewed.....	30
36	AWS-6:	Annual Schedule of Revenues And Expenditures.....	32
37	AWS-7:	Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success.....	34

**LIST OF FIGURES**

41	Figure D-1:	Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page.....	9
42	Figure D-2:	Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page.....	18

1 **PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

2  
3 This part of the manual contains the requirements for the annual scheduling of forest  
4 management operations.

5  
6  
7 **Phase-in Provisions**

8  
9 For Part D, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
10 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 2.0 will apply  
11 to forest operations prescriptions.

12  
13 For Part D, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
14 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, to the extent reasonably possible, annual work  
15 schedules will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 3.0. The  
16 plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the  
17 management unit, and with the concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement the  
18 requirements of Part D, Section 3.0 in a reasonable and practical manner.

19  
20 For Part D, Section 4.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
21 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 4.0 will apply  
22 to prescribed burn projects.

23  
24 For Part D, Section 5.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
25 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0 will apply  
26 to aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

27  
28 For Part D, Section 6.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
29 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 6.0 will apply  
30 to insect pest management programs.

31  
32 For Part D, Section 7.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
33 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 7.0 will apply  
34 to annual work schedules, prescribed burn projects, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects,  
35 and insect pest management programs.

36  
37 For Part D, Section 8.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. Upon the effective date of  
38 this *Forest Management Planning Manual*, the requirements of Part D, Section 8.0 will apply  
39 to annual work schedules, prescribed burn projects, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects,  
40 and insect pest management programs.

1 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

2  
3 This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the  
4 preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules, and the detailed  
5 project planning required prior to the implementation of forest operations.  
6

7 The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan and the  
8 scheduled operations in the annual work schedule is the forest operations prescription. The  
9 requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in Section  
10 2.0.  
11

12 An annual work schedule is produced each year to guide the implementation of operations.  
13 The requirements for the preparation, review, approval and inspection of the annual work  
14 schedule are described in Section 3.0.  
15

16 When prescribed burns or aerial herbicide projects are scheduled in an annual work schedule,  
17 additional detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the operational planning  
18 requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for  
19 aerial herbicide projects.  
20

21 If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest  
22 management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.0.  
23 Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial insecticide projects.  
24

25 Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation, and Section 8.0 describes the  
26 requirements for Aboriginal involvement, for annual operations.

## 2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring system.

A forest operations prescription must be developed before operations can commence on a particular site. A forest operations prescription may apply to an individual stand or a group of stands. The complete forest operations prescription for a particular stand (or group of stands) is comprised of a combination of:

- (a) the applicable silvicultural ground rule for the stand(s) in the forest management plan(s);
- (b) the silvicultural treatments for the stand(s) identified in the list of areas of scheduled forest operations in the applicable annual work schedule(s) and changes appended to the annual work schedule(s); and
- (c) the actual silvicultural treatments for the stand(s) as identified in the list of areas of completed forest operations in the applicable annual report(s).

### Silvicultural Ground Rules

For most of the areas of operations, the silvicultural ground rules in FMP-5 of the forest management plan are the preliminary forest operations prescriptions. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the silvicultural ground rule for each forest unit - ecosite combination identifies the set of treatments that will most often be used. However, the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the silvicultural ground rule may be used.

In the preparation of the annual work schedule, each preliminary forest operations prescription will be confirmed or changed to reflect the actual forest unit - ecosite combination, based on the information available at that time. If the forest unit - ecosite combination is confirmed, but the preferred silvicultural treatment(s) is not appropriate for the actual site conditions, an acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment(s) will be selected from the silvicultural ground rule. If the actual forest unit - ecosite combination is different from the information in the forest management plan, the appropriate silvicultural ground rule will be identified and an acceptable alternative silvicultural treatment(s) will be selected.

If none of the silvicultural treatments in the existing silvicultural ground rules are applicable, a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed. If a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0.

1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

2  
3 As described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, operational prescriptions are prepared for areas of  
4 concern in a forest management plan, and documented in FMP-14. When operational  
5 prescriptions for areas of concern include modified operations that are unique prescriptions  
6 developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values, the  
7 modified operations describe the forest operations that are permitted in the areas of concern.  
8 These modified operations are deemed to satisfy the silvicultural ground rule requirement of  
9 the forest operations prescription.

10  
11 When operational prescriptions for areas of concern include regular operations, or modified  
12 operations which are regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), the  
13 operational prescriptions for the areas of concern are the preliminary forest operations  
14 prescriptions. The requirements for confirmation of, or changes to, the preliminary forest  
15 operations prescriptions for Silvicultural Ground Rules will apply to those areas.

16  
17  
18 Annual Work Schedules and Annual Reports

19  
20 The results of the confirmation of, or change to, silvicultural treatments will be recorded in  
21 the list of areas of scheduled forest operations in the annual work schedule, in accordance  
22 with the requirements of Part D, Sections 3.2.3 and 3.2.5.

23  
24 A forest operations prescription must be certified by a registered professional forester, and if  
25 elements of the prescription (e.g., for an area of concern) are beyond the standard expertise of  
26 a forester, by a suitably qualified person. That certification is provided as part of the  
27 certification of an annual work schedule, as described in Part D, Section 3.2.1. In certifying a  
28 forest operations prescription, the forester (and other suitably qualified person) is stating that  
29 the forest operations that will be carried out are appropriate for the actual site conditions.

30  
31 During the year, any changes to silvicultural treatments identified in the approved annual  
32 work schedule must be consistent with the silvicultural ground rules in the approved forest  
33 management plan. Each such change will be appended to each copy of the annual work  
34 schedule, with the required certification (i.e., the signature and seal of the registered  
35 professional forester). Changes to silvicultural treatments that are not included in the  
36 approved forest management plan will require an amendment to the forest management plan.  
37 If new areas of operations from the approved forest management plan are added during the  
38 year, a revision to the annual work schedule will be required. In the revision to the annual  
39 work schedule, the preliminary forest operations prescription from the forest management  
40 plan will be confirmed or changed.

41  
42 The activities scheduled in any given year are normally portrayed on the annual operations  
43 maps. The actual silvicultural treatments that were implemented will be reported in the  
44 management unit annual reports.



- 1 Further direction on the information requirements for forest operations prescriptions is
- 2 provided in the *Forest Information Manual*.

1 **3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

2  
3 **3.1 Introduction**

4  
5 An annual work schedule will be prepared and approved for the management unit before any  
6 operations may proceed, and must be consistent with the approved forest management plan.  
7 An annual work schedule is required for a one-year period that normally commences on April  
8 1 and always ends on March 31. The annual work schedule will be submitted to the MNR  
9 District Manager at least three months prior to April 1 for MNR review and approval. An  
10 annual work schedule, and any required revisions, must be certified by a registered  
11 professional forester.

12  
13 The annual work schedule lists operations that were previously planned and approved in the  
14 forest management plan, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition,  
15 there are planning and approval requirements for water crossings.

16  
17 Responsibility for the preparation of the annual work schedule normally rests with the plan  
18 author. If a person other than the plan author produces the document, the plan author must  
19 supervise its preparation and certify the document. In those cases where the original plan  
20 author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her  
21 successor is deemed to be the plan author.

22  
23 If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard  
24 expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule  
25 (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that  
26 they prepared.

27  
28  
29 **3.2 Content Requirements**

30  
31 3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page

32  
33 The first page of the annual work schedule is a title, certification and approval page in the  
34 format of Figure D-1. The title, certification and approval page must be signed by the person  
35 who prepared the annual work schedule, normally the plan author, the senior official of the  
36 sustainable forest licensee, where applicable, and the MNR District Manager. A registered  
37 professional forester must sign the title, certification and approval page to certify that the  
38 access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations in the annual work schedule have been  
39 developed in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*,  
40 and are appropriate for the actual site conditions.

1 **Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE  
4 for the  
5 (NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

6  
7 [MNR Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization]  
9 for the one-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_

10  
11 I/We hereby confirm that this annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the  
12 requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is consistent with the  
13 approved forest management plan.

14  
15 Prepared by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
16

17  
18 Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
19 (where applicable) Plan Author [or senior official of  
20 plan author's organization,  
21 if other than MNR]  
22

23  
24 I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are  
25 scheduled in this annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the  
26 requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

27  
28  
29  
30 \_\_\_\_\_ [R.P.F. Seal] \_\_\_\_\_ [Plan Author] \_\_\_\_\_ [date]

31  
32 I have read this annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the  
33 approved forest management plan.

34  
35  
36 Approved by: \_\_\_\_\_ [MNR District Manager] \_\_\_\_\_ [date]  
37

1 3.2.2 Introduction

2  
3 A brief introduction is required to identify the name of the management unit, the sustainable  
4 forest licensee name and licence number, where applicable, the MNR district and region, and  
5 the one-year period of the annual work schedule.

6  
7 The annual work schedule must contain a management unit map, at a scale that will fit a  
8 standard page that contains sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the  
9 management unit. The map must identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and  
10 where applicable, the location of the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

11  
12  
13 3.2.3 Harvest Area

14  
15 The areas scheduled for harvest during the year will be identified on the annual operations  
16 maps and summarized by forest unit and age class (or stage of management) in AWS-1. The  
17 average annual area of harvest will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an  
18 annual work schedule. FMP-15 of the forest management plan is the source for this  
19 information. In order to provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances, additional harvest  
20 area may be scheduled, and the rationale for the additional harvest area will be documented in  
21 the text.

22  
23 In the annual work schedule for the first year of the forest management plan, the text will  
24 describe areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1). In any annual work schedule,  
25 the text will describe areas of second-pass harvest operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), and  
26 areas of salvage harvest (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1).

27  
28 All areas scheduled for harvest, and the associated operational prescriptions for areas of  
29 concern (Part B, FMP-14), will be portrayed on the annual operations maps. Areas of bridging  
30 operations, second-pass harvest operations and salvage harvest will each be portrayed  
31 separately on the maps.

32  
33 A description of how stand level residual requirements will be addressed during the  
34 implementation of operations will be provided in the text and, if applicable, portrayed on the  
35 annual operations maps.

36  
37 A list of all areas scheduled for harvest will be included in the annual work schedule. The list  
38 will identify the silvicultural system, the harvest method and the logging method for each  
39 area, as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan or  
40 any change as a result of further development of forest operations prescriptions. Any changes  
41 to forest operations prescriptions during the year that are associated with the areas scheduled  
42 for operations, will be appended to the approved annual work schedule, with the required  
43 certification (Part D, Section 2.0).

### 3.2.4 Wood Utilization

The scheduled harvest volume, by species, product and volume type will be summarized in AWS-2. Upon request by an overlapping licensee, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. FMP-19 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.

The utilization of second-pass harvest, if any, will be described in the text. If salvage harvest is scheduled, a separate table in the format of AWS-2 will be produced.

A discussion of the availability of fuelwood from the management unit will be provided in the text. The locations where fuelwood can be obtained will also be identified on the annual operations maps.

### 3.2.5 Renewal and Maintenance

Areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance (tending and protection) operations during the year will be identified on the annual operations maps, and summarized in AWS-3. FMP-21 of the forest management plan is the source for the information on renewal and tending operations. The source for the information on protection operations is the results of any insect pest management planning exercise that has been undertaken, if insect pest planning was required for the management unit (Part D, Section 6.0). The area identified for harvest as a result of insect pest management planning will be recorded separately in AWS-3 as either accelerated harvest or salvage harvest. Area identified for manual insect pest control techniques or application of insecticides will also be recorded separately in AWS-3.

All areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations, and the associated operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-14), will be portrayed on the annual operations maps. A list of all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations will be included in the annual work schedule. The list will identify the silvicultural treatment method(s) (e.g., method of site preparation, regeneration and tending) or insect pest control method for each area, as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan or any change as a result of further development of forest operations prescriptions. Any changes to forest operations prescriptions during the year that are associated with the areas scheduled for operations, will be appended to the approved annual work schedule, with the required certification (Part D, Section 2.0).

Operational plans for any scheduled prescribed burns (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide (Part D, Section 5.0), will be included as appendices to the annual work schedule. When those operational plans, or project descriptions and project plans, are produced and approved during the year, they will be appended to the approved annual work schedule.

#### 3.2.5.1 Renewal Support

1 The volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted  
2 (by species), in the scheduled areas of renewal operations will be documented in the text.

3  
4 Tree improvement activities that will be implemented during the year to support the  
5 production of improved seed will be described in the text. The locations of tree improvement  
6 activities (e.g., seed orchards) will be identified on the annual operations maps.

### 9 3.2.6 Roads

10  
11 For each new primary and branch road that will be constructed during the year, the one  
12 kilometre-wide corridor and the 100 metre-wide crossing of each area of concern will be  
13 identified on the annual operations maps. For each crossing of an area of concern that does  
14 not involve a water crossing, the location and conditions on the construction of the crossing  
15 will be confirmed or changed, consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section  
16 4.5.2).

17  
18 The conditions on location(s) and/or construction of operational roads will be portrayed,  
19 where practical, on the annual operations maps for each area of concern that does not involve  
20 a water crossing (Part B, Section 4.5.2).

21  
22 For each new and existing primary and branch road, and network of operational roads,  
23 information on construction, maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning  
24 activities scheduled for the year will be recorded in AWS-4. FMP-22 of the forest  
25 management plan is a source for this information. Each new and existing road or road  
26 network scheduled to have access controls implemented during the year will be specifically  
27 identified on the annual operations maps.

28  
29 A discussion of any road construction or maintenance activities that are scheduled for the  
30 purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road will be provided in the text.

#### 33 3.2.6.1 Water Crossings

34  
35 The planning of water crossings will occur in two successive annual work schedules to enable  
36 the review of the water crossings, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*.

#### 39 Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction

40  
41 For each new primary or branch road that crosses an area of concern that involves a water  
42 crossing, a preliminary location and conditions on construction of the crossing have been  
43 identified (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). Normally, in this annual work schedule, the  
44 location and conditions on construction will be confirmed or changed. If the location or  
45 conditions on construction are changed, any change must be consistent with the forest  
46 management plan.

1  
2 For each new operational road that crosses an area of concern that involves a water crossing, a  
3 crossing location and conditions on construction will be identified, consistent with the forest  
4 management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). Normally, in this annual work  
5 schedule, a 100 metre wide location will be identified and conditions on construction of the  
6 crossing will be determined. The location and conditions on construction must be consistent  
7 with the forest management plan.

8  
9 In the annual work schedule, the 100 metre wide location of the water crossing will be  
10 portrayed on the annual operations maps, and the following information will be provided in  
11 AWS-5 to enable the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*:

- 12  
13 (a) a description of the proposed crossing structure;  
14 (b) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and  
15 mitigative measures; and  
16 (c) a recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the  
17 sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to  
18 MNR, and MNR plans to abandon the road.  
19  
20

#### 21 Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction

22

23 In this annual work schedule, the location and conditions on construction for each water  
24 crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with  
25 respect to the *Fisheries Act*, or operational considerations. If the water crossing and  
26 conditions on construction are confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water  
27 crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, and the change is consistent with the forest  
28 management plan, approval of the water crossing will be provided as part of the approval of  
29 the annual work schedule. If a change to a water crossing location or conditions on  
30 construction is proposed in the annual work schedule for operational considerations, the  
31 change must be consistent with the forest management plan, and the review of the water  
32 crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will be required prior to approval. That approval  
33 will occur in the approval of the annual work schedule or the approval of a revision to the  
34 annual work schedule.  
35

36 In the annual work schedule, or any subsequent revisions to it, the 100 metre wide location of  
37 the water crossing will be portrayed on the annual operations maps, and the following  
38 information will be provided in AWS-5:

- 39  
40 (a) the results of a review of the water crossing with respect to the *Fisheries Act*;  
41 (b) a description of the crossing structure;  
42 (c) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and  
43 mitigative measures; and  
44 (d) a recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the  
45 sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to  
46 MNR, and MNR plans to abandon the road.

1 3.2.6.2 Existing Roads

2  
3 For each existing road, or road network that will be maintained, monitored, access controlled  
4 and decommissioned during the year, information will be recorded in AWS-4. FMP-22 of the  
5 forest management plan is a source for this information. Each existing road or road network  
6 scheduled to be decommissioned during the year, will be specifically identified on the annual  
7 operations maps. For each road or road network scheduled to be decommissioned, each water  
8 crossing must have been examined using MNR's criteria for the removal of water crossings.  
9 Each water crossing scheduled to be removed during the year will be identified in AWS-4,  
10 and on the annual operations maps.

11  
12  
13 3.2.6.3 Aggregates

14  
15 Aggregate resources can be removed from Category 14 aggregate pits by the forest industry  
16 without the requirement for an aggregate permit under the *Aggregate Resources Act*. The  
17 Category 14 aggregate pits that will be used for construction and maintenance of roads during  
18 the year will be identified on the annual operations maps, with each pit individually  
19 identified. The text of the annual work schedule will include a table of Category 14 aggregate  
20 pits, with individual identifiers, pit opening dates, and projected dates for either pit closure or  
21 an application for a Category 9 permit.

22  
23  
24 3.2.7 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

25  
26 Forest operations will be conducted with careful consideration for the prevention of forest  
27 fires. The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the  
28 period of the annual fire season will be described in the text, and will apply to the entire  
29 management unit and all licensees.

30  
31 These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent or minimize the  
32 start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to suppress small fires  
33 immediately. These measures include modifications to operations in response to fire danger  
34 and preparedness activities such as fire suppression training, communication systems and  
35 availability of fire suppression equipment on site.



1 MNR's guidelines for operating conditions for fire prevention and preparedness will be used  
2 to address the following subject areas:

- 3
- 4 (a) identification of a principal licensee or MNR contact person, who will be the  
5 main contact for any fire prevention or suppression issues for the management  
6 unit;
  - 7 (b) identification of a contact person for each licensee, and identification of the  
8 areas where each licensee will be operating, during the period of the fire  
9 season;
  - 10 (c) a description of how operations will be modified on different types of sites to  
11 prevent fire starts during periods of high fire danger, in accordance with the  
12 provincial guidelines for modifying forest operations in response to fire danger  
13 or other relevant guidelines;
  - 14 (d) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention  
15 plans and initiatives;
  - 16 (e) a description of how licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g.,  
17 communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance  
18 with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire  
19 prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;
  - 20 (f) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire  
21 suppression, in order to be considered "trained and capable", using MNR's  
22 guidelines for modifying forest operations in response to fire danger;
  - 23 (g) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression  
24 equipment that will be available and maintained on all operating areas;
  - 25 (h) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of  
26 individuals involved in forest operations;
  - 27 (i) a description of how fires will be reported to MNR, including a description of  
28 communications equipment;
  - 29 (j) a description of a program for fire detection during periods of high fire danger,  
30 particularly during periods of modified operations; and
  - 31 (k) a description of how individuals involved in forest operations will take action  
32 if a fire occurs; the working relationship with MNR; and the proposed means  
33 for transition from licensee fire fighting to MNR supervision.  
34

### 35 36 3.2.8 Revenues and Expenditures

37  
38 The estimate of annual revenues and expenditures for the management unit is presented in  
39 AWS-6. FMP-24 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.  
40

### 41 42 3.2.9 Monitoring and Assessment

43  
44 Monitoring and assessment activities scheduled for the year will be documented in the annual  
45 work schedule. These activities include forest operations inspections, monitoring of  
46 exceptions, assessments of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.

1 The monitoring and assessment program described in the forest management plan (Part B,  
2 Section 4.7) is the source for the information on monitoring and assessment activities.

3 The sustainable forest licensee will prepare the annual component of the ten-year strategic  
4 compliance plan described in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.7.4). The annual  
5 component of the compliance plan will contain a description of the forest operations  
6 inspection program that will be carried out by the sustainable forest licensee during the year,  
7 and will be included as an appendix to the annual work schedule.

8  
9 A description of the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2) that will be undertaken  
10 during the year will be provided in the text.

11  
12 The area scheduled for assessment of regeneration success will be recorded in AWS-7. FMP-  
13 25 of the forest management plan is the source for this information.

14  
15 A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings that will be carried out  
16 during the year will be provided in the text. As described in Part D, Section 3.2.6, the  
17 scheduled monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in AWS-4.

#### 18 19 20 3.2.10 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map

21  
22 An annual work schedule summary map of the areas that are scheduled for operations during  
23 the year will be prepared, and will be available for public distribution, upon request. The map  
24 will portray:

- 25  
26 (a) areas that are scheduled for harvest, renewal, tending and protection  
27 operations;  
28 (b) areas available for fuelwood;  
29 (c) locations of primary and branch roads to be constructed;  
30 (d) locations of roads and road networks with access controls; and  
31 (e) locations of roads and road networks to be decommissioned.

### 32 33 34 **3.3 MNR Review and Approval**

35  
36 The annual work schedule must be submitted to the MNR District Manager for review and  
37 approval at least three months prior to the one-year period of its application that normally  
38 commences on April 1.

39  
40 Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will undertake an internal review of the  
41 annual work schedule over a period of thirty days. This review may recommend approval of  
42 the annual work schedule as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for  
43 them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author who  
44 is responsible for the preparation of the annual work schedule.

45 If alterations are required, a 30-day period is provided for the production of a revised annual  
46 work schedule that is again submitted for approval. Staff from the appropriate MNR area or

1 district office will undertake an immediate internal review to ensure that the required  
2 alterations have been made. After the alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the  
3 MNR District Manager, the local citizens committee will be provided an opportunity to  
4 inspect the annual work schedule.

5  
6 Following the inspection by the local citizens committee, the MNR District Manager will  
7 approve the annual work schedule. As part of the annual work schedule approval, the MNR  
8 District Manager will approve each primary, branch and operational road water crossing that  
9 will be constructed during the year, based on the information provided in the annual work  
10 schedule, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 3.2.6.1.

11  
12 The annual work schedule must be approved at least 15 days before operations are scheduled  
13 to commence, to provide an opportunity for inspection by the public and Aboriginal  
14 communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2.

15  
16 The approved annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work  
17 schedule) will remain available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office  
18 of the sustainable forest licensee, for the one-year duration of the schedule.

### 21 **3.4 Revisions**

22  
23 Revisions to an annual work schedule may be required during the year. Revisions must be  
24 consistent with the approved forest management plan, including any amendments to the forest  
25 management plan. Revisions may include additions of new areas of operations from the  
26 approved forest management plan, additions and changes to water crossing locations, and  
27 changes to text, tables or maps. If new areas of operations from the approved forest  
28 management plan are added during the year, revisions will address the forest operations  
29 prescription requirement to confirm or change the preliminary prescription(s) from the forest  
30 management plan (Part D, Section 2.0).

31  
32 Each revision to an annual work schedule will contain the applicable documentation and will  
33 be certified by a registered professional forester, normally the plan author. Each revision will  
34 be reviewed by MNR district staff, approved by the MNR District Manager or Area  
35 Supervisor, and appended to the approved annual work schedule. Figure D-2 provides the  
36 format for the title, certification and approval page for each revision.

1 **Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

2  
3 REVISION TO THE ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

4 for the

5 (NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

6  
7 [MNR Administrative District and Region]

8 [Name of plan author's organization]

9 for the one-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_

10  
11 I/We hereby confirm that this revision to the annual work schedule has been prepared in  
12 accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*, and is  
13 consistent with the approved forest management plan.

14  
15 Prepared by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
16

17  
18 Submitted by: \_\_\_\_\_ [date] \_\_\_\_\_  
19 Plan Author [or senior official of  
20 plan author's organization,  
21 if other than MNR]  
22

23 I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are  
24 scheduled in this revision to the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance  
25 with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*.

26  
27  
28 \_\_\_\_\_  
29 [R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

30  
31 I have read this revision to the annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and  
32 consistent with the approved forest management plan.

33  
34  
35 Approved by: \_\_\_\_\_ [MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor] [date]  
36

1 3.4.1 Areas of Concern

2  
3 3.4.1.1 Operational Prescriptions

4  
5 During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural  
6 resource features or values may be encountered, and the actual locations of natural resource  
7 features or values in areas of operations may be different than the mapped locations in the  
8 forest management plan and annual work schedule. As described in Part C, Section 2.8.2, if  
9 an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for such a feature or value is  
10 available in the forest management plan, that operational prescription will be implemented  
11 with no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to an  
12 annual work schedule. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the forest  
13 management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan, and a revision to the annual  
14 work schedule, will be required.

15  
16 During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that a mapped natural  
17 resource feature or value no longer exists, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest*  
18 *Information Manual*. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of  
19 concern in the forest management plan will not be implemented. There will be no requirement  
20 for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule.

21  
22 During the implementation of operations, increased protection (e.g., wider reserves) may be  
23 provided to the operational prescription for an area of concern from the approved forest  
24 management plan. There will be no requirement for an amendment to the forest management  
25 plan or a revision to the annual work schedule.

26  
27  
28 3.4.1.2 Water Crossings

29  
30 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Streams

31  
32 During the construction of a road, an unmapped stream may be encountered or the actual  
33 location of a stream may be different than the mapped location in the forest management plan  
34 and annual work schedule. In each of these situations, a new 100 metre wide location of the  
35 water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in a revision to the annual  
36 work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, must  
37 occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment to the  
38 forest management plan will not be required.

39  
40  
41 Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

42  
43 During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location and/or a change to the  
44 conditions on construction may be desired. Any change must be consistent with the forest  
45 management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.2 and FMP-23). The new 100 metre wide location of  
46 the water crossing, and/or conditions on construction, will be identified in a revision to the

1 annual work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*,  
2 must occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment  
3 to the forest management plan will not be required.

4  
5  
6 3.4.1.3 Other Crossings

7  
8 Unmapped and Incorrectly Mapped Natural Resource Features or Values

9  
10 During the construction of a road, a previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) natural resource  
11 feature or value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a  
12 natural resource feature or value may be different than the mapped location in the forest  
13 management plan.

14  
15 If a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern for such a natural resource feature  
16 or value is necessary, an amendment to the forest management plan is required. In the  
17 amendment, a new 100 metre wide location of the area of concern crossing, and/or new  
18 conditions on construction, will be identified, in accordance with the planning requirements  
19 described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3. A revision to the annual work schedule will also be  
20 required.

21  
22 If it is necessary to cross an area of concern for such a natural resource feature or value with  
23 an operational road, and applicable conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the  
24 crossing are available in the forest management plan, those conditions apply with no  
25 requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to an annual work  
26 schedule. As described in Part C, Section 2.8.3.1, if no applicable conditions are available in  
27 the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan, and a revision to  
28 the annual work schedule, will be required.

29  
30  
31 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist

32  
33 During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a mapped natural resource  
34 feature or value no longer exist exists, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest*  
35 *Information Manual*. In such a situation for a primary or branch road, the 100 metre wide  
36 location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer be constraints,  
37 although the road must be constructed within the approved one kilometre wide corridor.  
38 Similarly, in such a situation for operational roads, the conditions on the location(s) and/or  
39 construction in the area of concern will no longer be constraints. As described in Part C,  
40 Section 2.8.1, there will be no requirement for an amendment to the forest management plan  
41 or a revision to the annual work schedule.

1 3.4.1.4 Documentation

2  
3 For all revisions to an annual work schedule, the necessary documentation will be prepared  
4 and, upon approval, appended to the approved annual work schedule at the appropriate MNR  
5 district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

6  
7 For all changes to operations that do not require an annual work schedule revision, updated  
8 information on the location and description of natural resource features or values that were  
9 previously unidentified (i.e., unmapped) or incorrectly mapped, or that no longer exist, will be  
10 provided to the MNR area office, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest*  
11 *Information Manual*.

12  
13 For these natural resource features or values, updated information on the operational  
14 prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction,  
15 will be provided to the MNR area office, primarily for compliance monitoring. The updated  
16 information will be provided on maps, with text that references the applicable operational  
17 prescriptions for areas of concern in the forest management plan and describes the changes to  
18 road crossing locations and conditions on construction. The updated information will be  
19 provided to the MNR area office within 10 days of the completion of operations.

20  
21  
22 **3.5 Annual Work Schedule Tables**

23  
24 The tables in this section are required for each annual work schedule.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Harvest Area**  
 6

Forest Unit	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Scheduled Harvest Area (ha)
	<b>Stage of Management Subtotal</b>	
	<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>	
	<b>Total</b>	

7



## **INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27

### **AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Harvest Area**

This table summarizes the scheduled harvest area by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable. The sources of information for this table are FMP-15 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

#### **Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3.

#### **Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age classes. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

#### **Scheduled Harvest Area:**

Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit, age class or stage of management and age class. Ensure that this total area matches the total area scheduled for the harvest in the stand lists and annual operations maps.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

4

5 **AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization**

6

Licensee or Grouping	Scheduled Harvest Area (ha)	Volume Type	Product	Harvest Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )														
				Conifer						Hardwood					Total			
									Subtotal							Subtotal		
			<b>Total</b>															
		Utilized																
		<b>Subtotal</b>																
		Unutilized																
		<b>Subtotal</b>																
		<b>Total</b>																

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44

### **AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Wood Utilization**

This table summarizes the forecast volumes that are scheduled to be utilized, by licensee (or grouping). The sources of information for this table are FMP-18 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule.

#### **Licensee or Grouping:**

List all licensees (or groupings), if required, that are scheduled to conduct harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. If individual licensees (or groupings) are not required, identify the sustainable forest licensee name.

#### **Scheduled Harvest Area:**

Enter the scheduled harvest area (in hectares) expected to be harvested by licensee (or grouping).

#### **Volume Type:**

For each licensee (or grouping), identify the volumes expected to be harvested and marketed as Utilized, and the available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or unmarketed at roadside as Unutilized (which does not include volumes left for habitat, natural pattern emulation purposes or silviculture). Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the annual work schedule does not condone wasteful practices.

#### **Product:**

Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) where possible.

#### **Harvest Volume by Species:**

Enter the net merchantable volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by species volume type and product. Provide subtotals by volume type and licensee (or grouping). The column totals in the licensee (or grouping) section of the table must equal the column totals in the Utilized and Unutilized section below.

#### **Utilized/Unutilized:**

Enter the total utilized and unutilized volumes by product and species. Complete this part of the table only where more than one licensee or grouping is listed above.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-3: Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**  
 6

Renewal	Area (ha)	
	Harvest	Natural Disturbance
<b>Regeneration</b>		
<b>Natural</b>		
Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)		
Block Cut		
Strip Cut		
Seed Tree Cut		
HARP/HARO/CLAAG		
Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)		
Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut		
Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut		
Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)		
<b>Subtotal Natural</b>		
<b>Artificial</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Subtotal Artificial</b>		
<b>Total Regeneration</b>		
<b>Artificial - Retirement</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Total Retirement</b>		
<b>Artificial - Supplemental</b>		
Planting		
Seeding		
<b>Total Supplemental</b>		
<b>Site Preparation</b>		
Mechanical		
Chemical	Aerial	
	Ground	
Prescribed Burn	High Complexity	
	Slash Pile Burn	
<b>Total Site Preparation</b>		
<b>Tending</b>		
<b>Cleaning</b>		
Manual		
Mechanical		
Chemical	Aerial	
	Ground	
Prescribed Burn	High Complexity	
<b>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting</b>		
Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)		
Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)		
<b>Other</b>		
Cultivation		
Pruning		
<b>Total Tending</b>		
<b>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</b>		
Harvest		
Manual		
Ground Insecticide		
Aerial Insecticide		
<b>Total Protection</b>		

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AWS-3: Annual Schedule of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

This table summarizes the scheduled area of renewal, tending and protection operations by treatment method. The sources of information for this table are FMP-21 and the results of the annual scheduling process. Any areas scheduled for protection operations must match the area identified in the annual planning process for insect pest management operations.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

#### **Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Schedule silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance), and enter the area (in hectares) by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included in the natural disturbance column.

#### **Renewal**

##### **Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration scheduled by silvicultural system and treatment method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area scheduled for artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with re-treatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

##### **Site Preparation:**

Enter the area scheduled for site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burns, enter the net area only.

##### **Protection (Insect Pest Control):**

Enter the area scheduled for treatment by protection method.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-4: Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management**  
 6

Road or Road Network Identifier	Construction (km)	Use Management			
		Maintenance	Monitoring	Access Control	Decommissioning
A. Primary					
<b>Subtotal</b>					
B. Branch					
<b>Subtotal</b>					
<b>Total</b>					
C. Operational					
D. Existing					

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41

**AWS-4: Annual Schedule of Road Construction and Use Management**

This table summarizes the scheduled road construction and use management (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) for new primary and branch roads, and use management for new operational and existing roads and road networks. The sources of information for this table are FMP-22 and the results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Road or Road Network Identifier:**

Enter the unique name or code for each road or road network by class of road.

**Construction:**

Enter the length (km) scheduled for construction for the new roads and extensions to existing roads (where applicable)

**Use Management:**

**Maintenance:**

If applicable, provide a text summary of the maintenance scheduled for each road or road network.

**Monitoring:**

If applicable, provide a text summary of monitoring scheduled for each road or road network.

**Access Control:**

If applicable, enter the type of access control (e.g., gates, signs or other-specify) scheduled for each road or road network.

**Decommissioning:**

If applicable, enter the type of decommissioning (e.g., berms, ditches, scarification, water crossing removal, or other - specify), scheduled for each road or road network.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-5: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/Reviewed**  
 6

Year of Construction	Area of Concern Identifier	Road Identifier	Water Crossing Structure	Construction Conditions	Future Removal (Y/N)	<i>Fisheries Act</i> Review Completed (Y/N)	<i>Fisheries Act</i> Review Results
A. Current Year							
B. Future Year							

7



**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38

**AWS-5: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Constructed/ Reviewed**

This table summarizes the scheduled water crossings to be constructed/reviewed. Each table entry represents a road crossing of areas of concern with a unique/common prescription. A source of information for this table is FMP-23.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Year of Construction:**

List individual water crossings by the anticipated year of construction (i.e., A. Current Year or B. Future Year).

**Area of Concern Identifier:**

For each primary, branch or operational road scheduled to cross an area of concern, enter a unique code to identify the crossing.

**Road Identifier:**

For each road, enter the unique name or code by which the road can be identified.

**Water Crossing Structure:**

Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) proposed.

**Construction Conditions:**

Enter conditions on the construction of the water crossing.

**Future Removal:**

Indicate if the water crossing is recommended for removal in the future (yes/no).

**Fisheries Act Review Completed:**

Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (yes/no).

**Fisheries Act Review Results:**

Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing, if completed.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-6: Annual Schedule of Revenues And Expenditures**  
 6

Revenues				
Species	Scheduled Harvest Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )	Crown Revenues (000s \$)	Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)	Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)
<u>A. Harvest</u>				
<u>B. Salvage</u>				
<b>Total</b>				

<b>Revenue from Area Charges</b>
----------------------------------

Expenditures		
Activity	Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)	Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)
Natural Regeneration		
Artificial Regeneration		
Site Preparation		
Tending		
Renewal Support		
Other Eligible Activities		
Protection (Insect Pest Control)		
<b>Total</b>		

7

**INSTRUCTIONS****AWS-6: Annual Schedule of Revenues and Expenditures**

This table summarizes the estimates of revenue accrual, and expenditures by activity and funding source. The sources of information for this table are FMP-24, the current Crown charges, and results of the annual scheduling process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Revenues:**

Revenues are estimated by destination fund or account. Crown charges, used in the estimation of revenues include the minimum and residual value charges, which are revenues to the Crown, the renewal charges, which is revenue to the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures charge, which is revenue to the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.

**Species:**

Enter the species to be harvested. The species should match the species listed in AWS-2. Include data for salvage harvest only if it is known a salvage program will be in place during the year.

**Scheduled Harvest Volume:**

Enter the total scheduled harvest volume by species (m<sup>3</sup>) consistent with AWS-2. This volume includes utilized and unutilized volume types. The utilized volume includes volumes to be invoiced as well as undersized volumes.

**Crown Revenues:**

Crown Revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Crown charges (minimum fixed rate and residual value) in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account:**

Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenues are estimated by multiplying an estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the forest renewal charge in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund:**

Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenues are estimated by multiplying than estimate of volumes to be invoiced by the Forestry Futures charge in effect at the time of annual work schedule preparation. Enter the estimate in thousands of dollars.

**Revenue from Area Charges:**

The area charges are estimated by multiplying the current area charge (\$0.00 for each square kilometre at time of publication) by the area of productive forest under licence.

**Expenditures:**

Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

**Activity:**

Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account:**

Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund:**

Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration** - Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.

**Artificial Regeneration** - Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.)

**Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).

**Tending** - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).

**Other Eligible Activities** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AWS-7: Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success**  
 6

Forest Unit	Silvicultural Ground Rule	Projected Forest Unit	Area to be Assessed (ha)
<b><u>Harvest</u></b>			
		<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>	
		<b>Harvest Subtotal</b>	
<b><u>Natural Disturbance</u></b>			
		<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>	
		<b>Natural Disturbance Subtotal</b>	
		<b>Total</b>	

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

### **AWS-7: Annual Schedule of Assessment of Regeneration Success**

This table summarizes, by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule package, the area scheduled for assessment of regeneration success.

The sources of information for this table are FMP-25 and the past silvicultural records (including the renewal predictions for harvest area in the annual reports). The amount of area to be assessed for success should be consistent with the forecast of regeneration success in the plan objective and the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

#### **Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

#### **Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**

Schedule assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under natural disturbance.

#### **Silvicultural Ground Rule:**

Enter the silvicultural ground rule (or a code referencing the ground rule as presented in FMP-5). In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was revised, only enter the final ground rule implemented.

#### **Projected Forest Unit:**

Enter the projected forest unit based on the silvicultural ground rule implemented.

#### **Area to be Assessed:**

Enter the area to be assessed.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 **4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS**

2  
3 For each prescribed burn that is scheduled in an annual work schedule, an operational plan  
4 will be prepared. MNR’s planning manual for prescribed burns describes the requirements for  
5 the preparation of the operational plan, and the conduct of operations.  
6

7 The operational plan will contain:

- 8
- 9 (a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public (i.e., a  
10 communications plan);
  - 11 (b) clear statements of the objectives to be achieved;
  - 12 (c) a prescription, described in forest fire danger rating terms, of the weather and  
13 fuel conditions that will result in the necessary fuel reduction in order to  
14 achieve the objectives;
  - 15 (d) a list of all areas of concern within or near the prescribed burn area, including  
16 descriptions of the natural resource features, land uses and values encountered  
17 (as identified on the values maps for the management unit), and an analysis of  
18 the potential positive and negative effects of the prescribed burn on timber and  
19 non-timber values;
  - 20 (e) a description of the ignition, suppression, safety and support activities that will  
21 be required; and
  - 22 (f) a prescribed burn operations map.
- 23

24 The operational plan will be reviewed by MNR district and regional staff. The local citizens  
25 committee will be provided an opportunity to inspect the prescribed burn operational plan  
26 prior to its approval by the MNR Regional Director.  
27

28 The approved prescribed burn operational plan will be appended to the annual work schedule.  
29 The requirements for a public notice for inspection of the approved operational plan for each  
30 high complexity prescribed burn are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.1.  
31

32 Each prescribed burn area will be posted not more than seven days before operations are  
33 scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs  
34 will be provided in English, and where applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will  
35 indicate the scheduled date of the burn and a telephone number of a contact person who can  
36 provide more information.  
37

38 A post-burn report will be prepared and submitted with the management unit annual report  
39 (Part E, Section 2.3.5).

## 5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the annual work schedule. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide. MNR's aerial spraying manual for forest management provides guidance for the preparation of the project description and project plan, the conduct of operations, and the preparation of the post-operations report.

The project description will include:

- (a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
- (b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
- (c) the rationale for the proposed treatment;
- (d) the technical name, formulation and *Pest Control Products Act* registration number (PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
- (e) the proposed application rate;
- (f) the type of aircraft to be used (rotary or fixed wing);
- (g) the name of the project supervisor;
- (h) the locations of the treatment areas, identified on maps;
- (i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
- (j) a description of the results of the application of the MNR/MOE Buffer Zones and their display on maps.

The project plan will include:

- (a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public (i.e., a communications plan);
- (b) an operations plan;
- (c) a safety plan; and
- (d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project may be prepared at the same time as the annual work schedule or during the year of the annual work schedule. If the project description and project plan are prepared at the same time as the annual work schedule, they will be appended to the annual work schedule, and will be approved by the MNR District Manager as part of the annual work schedule. If the project description and project plan are prepared separate from the annual work schedule, they will be approved by the MNR District Manager and appended to the approved annual work schedule.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be prepared and approved as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and appended to the annual work schedule.

1 The requirements for a public notice for inspection of the approved project description and  
2 project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.1. The  
3 Pesticide Permit approval from the Ministry of the Environment (i.e., *The Pesticides Act*,  
4 Form 5) will be available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the  
5 office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.

6  
7 Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven  
8 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points of  
9 access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is obtained  
10 for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the completion of  
11 the project (and removed by November 1 of the spray year), and will clearly advise the public  
12 of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be provided in English, and where  
13 applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying,  
14 the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the telephone  
15 number of a contact person who can provide more information.

16  
17 After the aerial herbicide or insecticide project has been implemented, a post-operations  
18 report will be prepared and submitted to MNR. The post-operations report will be retained at  
19 the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee,  
20 where it will be available for public inspection. The post-operations reports for all aerial  
21 pesticide projects conducted during the year will be submitted with the management unit  
22 annual report.



## 6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

### 6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When there is a major insect pest infestation, an insect pest management program will be developed to determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

*[NOTE: Planning of an insect pest management program may be carried out at the same time as a forest management plan is being prepared, or when operations are planned for the second five-year term. In such cases, some of the products of the planning of the insect pest management program may be available for public review with the draft forest management plan at Phase I, Stage Four of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4), or the draft planned operations at Phase II, Stage Two of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). The text and tables in the draft and approved forest management plan, or the draft and approved planned operations for the second five-year term, may contain information concerning planned insect pest management activities].*

### 6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When there is a major insect pest infestation, a district insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team, comprised of MNR district and regional staff, staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s), a representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s), and if MNR considers it to be appropriate, a Forest Management Branch specialist. The representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s) will normally be the representative(s) on the planning team(s) for the forest management plan(s) for the district.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed on maps, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

- (a) no treatment;
- (b) accelerated harvest;
- (c) redirected harvest;
- (d) salvage harvest;
- (e) the use of insecticides;
- (f) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
- (g) combinations of options (a) to (f).

Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;

- 1 (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option  
2 as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas  
3 eligible for insect pest management; and  
4 (c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option, and an  
5 estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.  
6

7 A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the  
8 management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be  
9 documented.

10  
11 When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are  
12 commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially  
13 for use, MNR will give preference to such alternatives.  
14

15 If the selected course of action involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations,  
16 the MNR District Manager will determine if an amendment to an approved forest  
17 management plan(s) is required. If so, the planning requirements for amendments to forest  
18 management plans will apply (Part C, Section 2.0).  
19

20 If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project  
21 proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in accordance  
22 with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in Part D,  
23 Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.2 and 8.3.1. After the 30-day review period, a project description and a  
24 project plan will be prepared for each aerial insecticide project and submitted to the MNR  
25 Regional Director for approval, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0.  
26

27 In accordance with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement  
28 described in Part D, Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.3 and 8.3.2, the approved project description and  
29 project plan will be available for inspection by the public at the appropriate MNR district or  
30 area office.  
31

32 As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description of  
33 how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of*  
34 *Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the  
35 insect pest management program must be produced, in the form of an SEV briefing note.

## 1 **7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION**

### 2 3 **7.1 General**

#### 4 5 7.1.1 Public Notices

6  
7 Public notices are required for annual work schedules, high complexity prescribed burns,  
8 aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices  
9 include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical  
10 language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public  
11 notices are to consecutive calendar days.

12  
13 Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations,  
14 normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will also be provided in  
15 advertisements in the local media.

16  
17 Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR  
18 considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

#### 19 20 21 7.1.2 *French Language Services Act*

22  
23 The French Language Services Act, as amended from time to time, will govern the public  
24 consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The  
25 translation requirements in Part A, Section 3.3.2 will apply to public notices for annual work  
26 schedules, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and  
27 insecticide projects. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for public consultation  
28 for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management  
29 programs, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

#### 30 31 32 7.1.3 *Environmental Bill of Rights*

33  
34 The requirements of the *Environmental Bill of Rights* apply to insect pest management  
35 programs, as described in Part D, Section 7.5.1.

### 36 37 38 **7.2 Annual Work Schedules**

39  
40 Upon approval of the annual work schedule, at least 15 days before operations are scheduled  
41 to commence, a public notice will be issued, normally by the District Manager, to advise the  
42 public that the approved annual work schedule is available for inspection at the appropriate  
43 MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. If project  
44 descriptions and project plans for aerial herbicide projects have been prepared and approved  
45 as part of the annual work schedule, this public notice may also serve as the public notice that  
46 will be issued at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 7.4).

1 Reasonable efforts will be made to identify persons who may be directly affected by forest  
2 management operations during the year of the annual work schedule, and in particular those  
3 persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Such  
4 reasonable efforts will include examination of registered traplines and mining activity within  
5 the areas scheduled for operations, to identify specific individuals who are directly affected.  
6

7 The public notice will include the following information:  
8

- 9 (a) a statement that the approved annual work schedule is available for inspection  
10 at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable  
11 forest licensee, and that the annual work schedule (and any subsequent  
12 revisions to the annual work schedule) will be available throughout the year of  
13 the schedule;
- 14 (b) a map of the management unit for which the annual work schedule was  
15 prepared, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the  
16 management unit;
- 17 (c) a brief description of the forest management activities to be carried out during  
18 the year, with particular mention of silvicultural treatments of special public  
19 interest (e.g., prescribed burns, aerial applications of herbicides and  
20 insecticides);
- 21 (d) a statement and/or a map that identifies opportunities for fuelwood;
- 22 (e) a statement that identifies opportunities for tree planting jobs;
- 23 (f) a statement that an annual work schedule summary map may be obtained from  
24 the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable  
25 forest licensee, that portrays the operations that are scheduled to be carried out  
26 during the year; and
- 27 (g) the name of a contact person.

28  
29 The following information and maps will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area  
30 office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:  
31

- 32 (a) the approved annual work schedule, including any completed operational plans  
33 for prescribed burns (Part D, Section 4.0) and project descriptions and project  
34 plans for aerial applications of herbicides and insecticides (Part D, Section  
35 5.0); and
- 36 (b) an annual work schedule summary map that portrays the operations that are  
37 scheduled to be carried out during the year.

38  
39 The approved annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work  
40 schedule) will remain available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area  
41 office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, for the one-year duration of the  
42 schedule.

1   **7.3    Prescribed Burns**

2  
3   For each high complexity prescribed burn, a public notice will be issued by the MNR District  
4   Manager not more than 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn. The contents of the  
5   public notice will include the following information:

- 6  
7       (a)     a statement that the operational plan for the prescribed burn project is available  
8             for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of  
9             the sustainable forest licensee;  
10       (b)     a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
11             identification of the location of the prescribed burn project; and  
12       (c)     the name of a contact person.

13  
14  
15   **7.4    Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects**

16  
17   For each aerial herbicide or insecticide project, the MNR District Manager will issue a public  
18   notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise the public that the  
19   approved project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project  
20   will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the  
21   office of the sustainable forest licensee. Recipients of the direct written notice must include  
22   landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the proposed treatment area.

23  
24   For an aerial herbicide project, if the project description and project plan has been prepared  
25   and approved as part of the annual work schedule, the public notice that advises the public  
26   that the approved annual work schedule is available for public inspection may serve as this  
27   notice (Part D, Section 7.2).

28  
29   For an aerial insecticide project, the public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNR-  
30   approved insect pest management program (Part D, Section 7.5.3) may serve as this notice if  
31   the anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

32  
33   The contents of the public notice will include the following information:

- 34  
35       (a)     a statement that the project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide  
36             or insecticide project are available for inspection at the appropriate MNR  
37             district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee;  
38       (b)     the anticipated date(s) of application;  
39       (c)     a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for  
40             identification of the location of the aerial herbicide or insecticide project; and  
41       (d)     the name of a contact person.

42  
43   An additional notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be issued by the  
44   MNR District Manager at least seven days before the scheduled date of application, normally  
45   in the form of advertisements in the local media.

1 **7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs**

2  
3 7.5.1 General

4  
5 When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that involves  
6 the aerial application of insecticides, formal public consultation opportunities will be  
7 provided at two stages in the preparation of specific project proposals.

8  
9 A public notice will be issued for each stage, and will include the following information:

- 10  
11 (a) a statement of the purpose of the public consultation opportunity;  
12 (b) a map of the MNR district for which the insect pest management program is  
13 being prepared;  
14 (c) a description of the subject matter of the insect pest management program;  
15 (d) the location(s), date(s) and time(s) that information and maps are available at  
16 the appropriate MNR district or area office during normal business hours and  
17 during non-business hours by arranging an appointment with the MNR District  
18 Manager; and  
19 (e) the name of a contact person.

20  
21 Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of consultation are  
22 described in Part D, Sections 7.5.2 and 7.5.3.

23  
24 Under the provisions of the Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR), as amended from time to  
25 time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental  
26 Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued in each stage of the public consultation  
27 process for the preparation of an insect pest management program. At each successive stage  
28 of the public consultation process, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on  
29 the EBR Environmental Registry. MNR's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental  
30 Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR  
31 staff who will prepare these notices.

32  
33  
34 7.5.2 Stage One - Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management  
35 Program

36  
37 Stage One of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites  
38 the public to an information centre. The purpose of the information centre is for the public to  
39 review, and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project  
40 proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at  
41 least 30 days before the information centre.

1 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the  
2 notice will contain:

- 3
- 4 (a) the schedule for the remaining formal public consultation opportunity;
  - 5 (b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day  
6 review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will  
7 be provided);
  - 8 (c) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under  
9 relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy*  
10 *Act*; and
  - 11 (d) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section  
12 7.5.4.1).
- 13

14 A supplemental notice will be issued by the MNR District Manager at least seven days prior  
15 to the information centre, normally in the form of advertisements in the local media.

16  
17 The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

- 18
- 19 (a) insect infestation map(s) and population forecasts;
  - 20 (b) maps of areas eligible for insect pest management;
  - 21 (c) the current version of the values maps for the affected management unit(s) in  
22 the MNR district;
  - 23 (d) the evaluation of management options;
  - 24 (e) the selected course of action, with reasons;
  - 25 (f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated  
26 maps;
  - 27 (g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same insect  
28 species in the previous year (if any); and
  - 29 (h) a comment form.
- 30

31 The MNR District Manager, and representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed  
32 the insect pest management program, will attend the information centre, and will be  
33 appropriately identified.

34  
35 There will be a period of 30 days from the date of the information centre for the public to  
36 provide comments to the MNR District Manager.

37  
38  
39 **7.5.3 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection**

40  
41 Stage Two of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites  
42 the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and project  
43 descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects. The notice will be issued  
44 upon approval of the insect pest management program by the MNR Regional Director.  
45 The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the insect pest  
46 management program has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an

1 opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and  
2 project descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects.

3 In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the  
4 notice will contain a statement of the opportunity to request an individual environmental  
5 assessment (Part A, Section 3.4.2).

6  
7 This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that must be issued at  
8 least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the anticipated  
9 date of application is within 60 days.

10  
11 In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps that were initially  
12 available at Stage One of public consultation, the approved project descriptions and project  
13 plans, and associated maps, for specific aerial insecticide projects will be available at the  
14 MNR district or area office.

#### 15 16 17 7.5.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

##### 18 19 7.5.4.1 Issue Resolution

20  
21 If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the issue  
22 resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications  
23 MNR considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue  
24 resolution may be compressed).

##### 25 26 27 7.5.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

28  
29 The opportunity to make a request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual  
30 environmental assessment applies to insect pest management programs. For any request for an  
31 individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in an  
32 insect pest management program, the following process will apply:

- 33  
34 1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to  
35 inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program, for any person to make a  
36 written request to the Minister of the Environment for an individual environmental  
37 assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the insect pest  
38 management program.
- 39  
40 2. The Minister of the Environment shall notify the MNR District Manager and the MNR  
41 Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to  
42 the Minister of the Environment on the request.
- 43  
44 3. The Minister of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days  
45 of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director of the  
Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch may require MNR to submit



1 additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical  
2 deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

3  
4 4. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of  
5 receipt of all necessary information, the Director of Environmental Assessment and  
6 Approvals Branch shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe  
7 for a decision to the Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and  
8 MNR Regional Director, and the person requesting an individual environmental  
9 assessment.

10  
11 5. If the Minister of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that  
12 approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or  
13 conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon  
14 notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental  
15 Assessment and Approvals Branch, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in  
16 respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

17  
18 6. The Minister of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental  
19 assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Minister does not require an  
20 individual environmental assessment, the Minister shall give written notice to the  
21 Minister of Natural Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional  
22 Director, and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that the  
23 request has been denied, with reasons.

24  
25 7. If the Minister of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment,  
26 the Minister of the Environment shall give written notice to the Minister of Natural  
27 Resources, the MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director, and the person  
28 requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to  
29 prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval  
30 under the Environmental Assessment Act. The specific proposed forest management  
31 activities and the areas of the district that are the subject of the individual  
32 environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Minister of  
33 the Environment. Where the Minister of the Environment has given written notice,  
34 partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and  
35 the areas of the district that are not the subject of the individual environmental  
36 assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional  
37 Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and  
38 Approvals Branch.

## 1 **8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT**

### 3 **8.1 Introduction**

5 This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of  
6 Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional  
7 uses may be affected by the implementation of annual operations,  
8

9 In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been  
10 developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for annual  
11 operations, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation approach has not been  
12 agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements  
13 described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the  
14 *Constitution Act, 1982*, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.  
15

16 For each notice required for an annual work schedule, high complexity prescribed burn, aerial  
17 herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice  
18 will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal  
19 language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications  
20 in the Aboriginal media.  
21  
22

### 23 **8.2 Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide 24 Projects**

26 The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1, 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4 will  
27 apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will  
28 be provided to the Aboriginal community.  
29  
30

### 31 **8.3 Insect Pest Management Programs**

33 The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with  
34 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be  
35 provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this  
36 section.  
37  
38

#### 39 **8.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management 40 Program**

42 The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether  
43 there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a  
44 special information centre will be provided. In addition to the public notice content

1 requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2, with modifications that direct the notice to  
2 the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

- 3  
4 (a) the time and location of the special information centre; and  
5 (b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on  
6 the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for  
7 specific aerial insecticide projects.  
8

9 A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to  
10 remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.  
11

### 12 8.3.2 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection

14 The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with  
15 modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided  
16 to the Aboriginal community.  
17



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1		
2		
3	<b>PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS.....</b>	<b>3</b>
4	Phase-in Provisions .....	3
5	<b>1.0 INTRODUCTION.....</b>	<b>4</b>
6	<b>2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL</b>	
7	<b>REPORTS.....</b>	<b>5</b>
8	2.1 Title and Certification Page.....	5
9	2.2 Introduction.....	5
10	2.3 Summary and Evaluation of Operations.....	5
11	2.3.1 Harvest .....	5
12	2.3.2 Wood Utilization.....	7
13	2.3.3 Wood Utilization by Mill .....	8
14	2.3.4 Natural Disturbances .....	8
15	2.3.5 Renewal, Tending and Protection .....	8
16	2.3.6 Renewal Support .....	9
17	2.3.7 Pesticide Use .....	9
18	2.3.8 Roads.....	9
19	2.3.9 Revenues and Expenditures .....	10
20	2.3.10 Monitoring and Assessment.....	10
21	2.3.10.1 Forest Operations Inspections.....	10
22	2.3.10.2 Exceptions.....	11
23	2.3.10.3 Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success.....	11
24	2.3.10.4 Monitoring of Roads and Water Crossings.....	11
25	2.3.11 Synopsis .....	11
26	<b>3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT</b>	
27	<b>UNIT ANNUAL REPORT.....</b>	<b>13</b>
28	<b>4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN</b>	
29	<b>MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS .....</b>	<b>14</b>
30	4.1 Analysis of Forest Disturbances.....	14
31	4.2 Review of Renewal and Tending Activities.....	14
32	4.3 Review of Forest Modelling Assumptions .....	15
33	4.4 Independent Forest Audit Action Plans.....	15
34	4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement .....	15
35	4.6 Determination of Sustainability.....	17
36	4.6.1 Social and Economic Review.....	17
37	4.6.2 Recommendations .....	18
38	<b>5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW .....</b>	<b>19</b>
39	5.1 All Annual Reports.....	19
40	5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten Management	
41	Unit Annual Reports .....	19
42	<b>6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES.....</b>	<b>21</b>

**LIST OF TABLES**

1  
2  
3 AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit .....22  
4 AR-2: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Silvicultural System and Harvest Method .....24  
5 AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts.....26  
6 AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization.....28  
7 AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill.....30  
8 AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volume Associated with Natural Disturbances.....32  
9 AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal Tending and Protection Operations .....34  
10 AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support.....36  
11 AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use .....38  
12 AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management.....40  
13 AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures .....42  
14 AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest  
15 Licensee and MNR Verification Reports of Non-Compliance.....44  
16 AR-13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only .....46  
17 AR-14: Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success.....48  
18 AR-15: Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class.....50  
19 AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends .....52  
20 AR-17: Summary of Available Managed Crown Productive Forest.....54  
21 AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest.....56  
22 AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species .....58  
23 AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement .....60

24  
25  
26 **LIST OF FIGURES**  
27

28 Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page .....6

## 1 PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

2  
3 This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting.  
4

### 5 6 **Phase-in Provisions**

7  
8 For Part E, Section 2.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. The annual report for  
9 2003/2004 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management*  
10 *Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, with the addition of  
11 the AR-3 and text requirements relating to planned clearcuts, as described in Part E, Section  
12 2.3.1 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The annual reports for 2004/2005 through  
13 2010/2011, for forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management*  
14 *Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, to the extent  
15 reasonably possible, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part E, Section  
16 2.0 of this *Forest Management Planning Manual*.  
17

18 For Part E, Section 3.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For annual reports for forest  
19 management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management Planning Manual for*  
20 *Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, the requirements of Part E, Section 3.0 will  
21 not apply.  
22

23 For Part E, Section 4.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. For annual reports for the  
24 last year of forest management plans prepared in accordance with the *Forest Management*  
25 *Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996, to the extent  
26 reasonably possible, the additional requirements associated with a year ten management unit  
27 annual report, as described in Part E, Section 4.0, will apply. For example, the requirements  
28 with respect to objective achievement and sustainability in Part C, Sections 4.3 and 4.4 of the  
29 *Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996,  
30 will be used in place of the requirements of Part E, Sections 4.5 and 4.6 of this *Forest*  
31 *Management Planning Manual*.  
32

33 For Part E, Section 5.0, the following phase-in provisions apply. The annual report for  
34 2003/2004 will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management*  
35 *Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests*, dated September 1996. These annual reports  
36 will be reviewed in accordance with the requirements of Part E, Section 5.0 of this *Forest*  
37 *Management Planning Manual*.  
38

39 The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the  
40 management unit, and with the concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement the  
41 phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical manner.

1 **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

2  
3 For each management unit, a management unit annual report will be prepared and certified by  
4 a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the  
5 original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management  
6 unit, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

7  
8 The annual report is prepared for the one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31), and must be  
9 submitted by the following November 15. Text, tables, maps and other information will be  
10 provided in the annual report submission. The information requirements to support the  
11 production and submission of the annual report are described in the *Forest Information*  
12 *Manual*.

13  
14 The content for all annual reports are described in Part E, Section 2.0. Additional  
15 requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports, including an assessment of the  
16 achievement of management objectives and a determination of sustainability, are described in  
17 Part E, Section 4.0 . The requirements for recommendations in the year three, year seven and  
18 year ten annual reports are described in Part E, Sections 3.0 and 4.0. Requirements for the  
19 MNR review of annual reports are described in Part E, Section 5.0.

20  
21 If a forest management plan is superseded by a new approved plan, the requirements for the  
22 year seven and year ten annual reports will apply to the last annual report for the original plan  
23 (Part E, Section 4.0).



## **2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

### **2.1 Title and Certification Page**

The first page of the annual report is a title and certification page, in the format of Figure E-1. This page identifies that the annual report has been prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author.

### **2.2 Introduction**

A brief introduction will identify the name of the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee name and licence number, where applicable, the MNR district and region, and the term of the annual report. The text will note that additional contents are included if the annual report is a year three, year seven or year ten annual report.

Any significant events that have affected the implementation of the forest management plan will be noted, and the sections of the annual report which provide a detailed discussion of those events will be identified.

The annual report will contain a management unit map, at a scale which fits a standard page, and contains sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit. The map will identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and where applicable, the location of the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

### **2.3 Summary and Evaluation of Operations**

The summary and evaluation of operations will summarize forest operations that were carried out during the year of the annual report (i.e., April 1 to March 31), and evaluate progress on implementation of the forest management plan to date. The requirements for text, tables and maps for the summary and evaluation are described in this section.

#### **2.3.1 Harvest**

Harvest area and salvage harvest area will be reported by forest unit in AR-1. The table will include the information on available harvest area, projected harvest area and forecast harvest area from FMP-15. Harvest area will also be reported by silvicultural system and harvest method in AR-2. Harvest area includes commercial thinning, and commercial and non-commercial improvement cuts.

1 **Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page**

2  
3 YEAR \_\_\_\_ ANNUAL REPORT  
4 for the  
5 (NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT)

6  
7 [MNR Administrative District and Region]  
8 [Name of plan author's organization]  
9 for the one-year period from April 1, \_\_\_\_ to March 31, \_\_\_\_

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15 I hereby certify that this annual report is complete and accurate, and has been prepared to the  
16 best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the  
17 *Forest Management Planning Manual* and the *Forest Information Manual*.

18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25 \_\_\_\_\_ [R.P.F. Seal]                      \_\_\_\_\_ [Plan Author]                      \_\_\_\_\_ [date]

26  
27  
28  
29 **For the Year Three Management Unit Annual Report:**

30  
31 Recommended for Endorsement by:

32  
33  
34  
35 \_\_\_\_\_ [MNR District Manager]                      \_\_\_\_\_ [date]

36  
37  
38 Endorsed by:

39  
40  
41  
42 \_\_\_\_\_ [MNR Regional Director]                      \_\_\_\_\_ [date]

1 The text will include a discussion on progress towards harvest of the forecast harvest area by  
2 forest unit. The text will specifically note if the harvest levels are significantly behind or  
3 ahead of the average annual rate of harvest, and document concerns with respect to progress  
4 by forest unit. The area of second-pass harvest, and the area of salvage harvest will be  
5 documented in the text, and any implications on achievement of the forecast harvest area will  
6 be noted.

7  
8 The area identified as second-pass harvest area will normally have been recorded as harvested  
9 after the first pass harvest has been completed. The second-pass harvest area is therefore not  
10 considered to be part of the forecast harvest area.

11  
12 Maps and lists of areas of harvest operations, including salvage harvest, will be included in  
13 the annual report.

14  
15 Planned clearcuts will be reported in AR-3. The information will be initially reported for  
16 planned clearcuts for the year in which harvest commenced, and will be tracked in subsequent  
17 annual reports until harvest has been completed. The table will include information on  
18 planned clearcuts from FMP-16. AR-3 will also include remarks on the progress being made  
19 to complete each planned clearcut.

20  
21 The text will include a discussion on the subject of areas harvested under the clearcut  
22 silvicultural system, based on size and frequency parameters required by MNR's approved  
23 forest management guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

24  
25 If bridging operations were conducted as part of the first annual work schedule for a forest  
26 management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the areas of bridging operations will be reported  
27 in the last annual report of the previous forest management plan. The area of bridging  
28 operations will be reported against the available harvest area of the previous forest  
29 management plan.

### 30 31 32 2.3.2 Wood Utilization

33  
34 Harvest volume utilized (including commercial thinning and improvement cuts) will be  
35 reported by area harvested, product and species in AR-4. The table will include information  
36 from FMP-17, as well as information from MNR's corporate scaling and billing system that  
37 will be provided by MNR to the sustainable forest licensee by September 15. Harvest volume  
38 utilized will be reported in AR-4 by licensee only if that information has been included in  
39 FMP-18.

40  
41 The text will include a discussion on progress towards utilization of the forecast harvest  
42 volume, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply. Any  
43 implications of salvage harvest volume on the utilization of the forecast harvest volume will  
44 be noted. The text will also note if the volumes in the table include undersized (e.g., tops)  
45 volume, to which Crown charges do not apply.

1 2.3.3 Wood Utilization by Mill

2  
3 The utilization of the harvest volume by mill will be reported in AR-5. The table will include  
4 forecast information from FMP-19, as well as information from MNR’s corporate scaling and  
5 billing system that will be provided by MNR to the sustainable forest licensee by September  
6 15. Where applicable, volumes associated with supply agreements or other Minister’s  
7 commitments to mills will be reported separately in the table.

8  
9 The text will include a discussion on progress towards achievement of the volume forecast for  
10 utilization by each mill, and note any concerns.

11  
12  
13 2.3.4 Natural Disturbances

14  
15 MNR will provide information on the gross natural disturbance areas to the sustainable forest  
16 licensee. The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance areas, and  
17 determine the actual net disturbance area and associated estimated volumes, which will be  
18 reported in AR-6. Volume estimates will include all volumes (i.e., live, damaged and killed)  
19 within the net disturbance areas, even if salvage harvest has occurred or is being considered.

20  
21 The text will include a description of how the volume associated with the natural disturbance  
22 areas was estimated. The text will also include a discussion of any significant implications of  
23 the natural disturbances.

24  
25 Maps and lists of the net natural disturbance areas will be included in the annual report.

26  
27  
28 2.3.5 Renewal, Tending and Protection

29  
30 Renewal, tending and protection operations for areas of harvest and natural disturbances,  
31 including areas of salvage harvest, will be reported in AR-7. The table will include forecast  
32 information from FMP-21. Areas reported as selection cut under regeneration, that are  
33 predominantly non-commercial improvement cuts, will also be reported as stand improvement  
34 under tending.

35  
36 Renewal operations, which include natural regeneration initiated by harvest, and natural  
37 regeneration in natural disturbances, will normally be reported in the year in which the  
38 disturbance occurred. Where forest management activities (e.g., salvage harvest and/or  
39 renewal) are being considered for natural disturbances, reporting of natural regeneration may  
40 be delayed for one or two years.

41  
42 Maps and lists of areas of renewal, tending and protection operations will be included in the  
43 annual report.

44  
45 The text will include a discussion on progress towards achievement of the forecast levels of  
46 renewal, tending and protection operations. The text will specifically note if the renewal and

1 tending levels are behind the average annual rate, and document concerns with respect to  
2 progress on achievement of the forecast levels. The text will also include a discussion of the  
3 levels, and significance, of retreatments.

4  
5 For each high complexity prescribed burn, the post-burn report will be submitted with the  
6 management unit annual report (Part D, Section 4.0). The post-operations reports for all aerial  
7 pesticide projects conducted during the year will be submitted with the management unit  
8 annual report (Part D, Section 5.0).

#### 9 10 11 2.3.6 Renewal Support

12  
13 The volume of seed collected, by species, seed zone or breeding zone, and type of collection  
14 area, will be reported in AR-8. Information on the numbers of seeds used for seeding, and  
15 trees planted, will also be reported in AR-8.

16  
17 Tree improvement activities that were conducted on the management unit will be described in  
18 the text, and the locations of those activities (e.g., seed orchard sites) will be identified on  
19 maps which will be included in the annual report.

#### 20 21 22 2.3.7 Pesticide Use

23  
24 Information on ground and aerial pesticide projects will be summarized in AR-9. The  
25 information will be reported for projects that were conducted during the current year (i.e., the  
26 part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report). In the  
27 subsequent annual report, the projects will be identified on maps and lists which will be  
28 included in the annual report.

29  
30 If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a separate report that describes  
31 the incident will be prepared, and appended to the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide  
32 project has been received, a separate report will be prepared that describes the details of the  
33 complaint. The report will include a copy of any letter(s) received, and will be appended to  
34 the annual report.

#### 35 36 37 2.3.8 Roads

38  
39 Road construction and use management activities will be reported in AR-10. The table will  
40 include forecast information on road construction and use management from FMP-22. The  
41 text will include a discussion of progress towards meeting the forecast of road construction  
42 and use management activities in the forest management plan.

43  
44 Maps and information on roads and water crossings that were constructed, and roads that were  
45 access controlled and decommissioned, will be included in the annual report.

1 2.3.9 Revenues and Expenditures

2  
3 A summary of revenues and expenditures will be reported in Table AR-11. The table will  
4 include forecast information from FMP-24.

5  
6 Information on revenues from Crown charges, including those deposited into the Forest  
7 Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account and the Forestry Futures Trust Fund, will be  
8 provided by MNR to the sustainable forest license by September 15. The expenditure  
9 information will be consistent with the expenditure reports for the Forest Renewal Trust Fund  
10 or Special Purpose Account, and the Forestry Futures Trust Fund.

11  
12 The text will include a comparison of revenues and expenditures, and a discussion of the need  
13 to increase, maintain or decrease renewal rates.

14  
15  
16 2.3.10 Monitoring and Assessment

17  
18 Monitoring and assessment activities that were carried out during the year will be documented  
19 in the annual report. These activities include forest operations inspections, monitoring of  
20 exceptions, assessments of regeneration success, and monitoring of roads and water crossings.

21  
22  
23 2.3.10.1 Forest Operations Inspections

24  
25 Information on forest operations inspections that were conducted during the year will be  
26 summarized in AR-12 and AR-13. Information on forest operations inspections conducted by  
27 the sustainable forest licensee will be summarized in AR-12. AR-12 will also include  
28 information from MNR monitoring, and actions taken by MNR on instances of non-  
29 compliance that have been reported by the sustainable forest licensee. Information on forest  
30 operations inspections performed by MNR, as part of inspection audits and spot-checks, will  
31 be summarized in AR-13. The information that MNR compiles for AR-12 and AR-13 will be  
32 provided to the sustainable forest licensee by September 15.

33  
34 The text will contain a summary of:

- 35  
36 (a) instances of non-compliance, including:  
37 (i) the type(s) of non-compliance which occurred most frequently;  
38 (ii) the reason(s) for those occurrences; and  
39 (iii) the kinds of actions taken; and  
40 (b) other undesirable conditions observed in areas of operations which appear to  
41 be related to forest management activities.

42  
43 The text will also contain a discussion of how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the  
44 conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance and other undesirable  
45 conditions.

1 2.3.10.2 Exceptions

2  
3 The text will contain a summary of the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2) that  
4 was undertaken during the year, and a summary of results to date.

5  
6  
7 2.3.10.3 Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success

8  
9 A summary of the assessments of regeneration success that were undertaken during the year  
10 will be reported in AR-14. The area which was successfully regenerated, the area that was  
11 regenerated to the projected forest unit and the area which was not successfully regenerated,  
12 will also be reported in AR-14. The assessments of regeneration success will be provided  
13 separately, by forest unit, for harvest areas and areas of natural disturbance. The table will  
14 include forecast information from FMP-25.

15  
16 The text will include a discussion of the progress towards completing the forecast assessments  
17 of regeneration success. The text will also include a discussion of the regeneration and  
18 silvicultural success to date (i.e., the area regenerated and the area regenerated to the projected  
19 forest unit), and any implications on achievement of the long-term management direction for  
20 the forest.

21  
22 Maps and lists of areas successfully regenerated will be included in the annual report

23  
24  
25 2.3.10.4 Monitoring of Roads and Water Crossings

26  
27 The text will contain a summary of:

- 28  
29 (a) the monitoring of roads and water crossings that was undertaken during the  
30 year; and  
31 (b) the observations during monitoring, including erosion and washouts of water  
32 crossings and any problems associated with road access controls.

33  
34 The text will contain a discussion of the effectiveness of the use management strategies for  
35 roads in the forest management plan.

36  
37  
38 2.3.11 Synopsis

39  
40 The text will contain a synopsis of the implementation and monitoring of forest operations to  
41 date. This synopsis will include:

- 42  
43 (a) observations on the levels of forest operations that have been implemented to  
44 date, and any implications on the achievement of objectives of the forest  
45 management plan and future levels of forest operations; and

- 1 (b) a review of circumstances (e.g., large natural disturbances, markets) that
- 2 affected, or are expected to affect, the implementation of forest operations and
- 3 the achievement of objectives in the forest management plan.



1 **3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE**  
2 **MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT**  
3

4 The year three management unit annual report will serve as the mid-plan review by describing  
5 progress on implementation of the forest management plan to date. In this report, the  
6 registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author, will report on his or her  
7 determination as to whether or not the long-term management direction remains valid for the  
8 second five-year term.  
9

10 In addition to the requirements of each management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.0),  
11 the year three annual report will include:  
12

- 13 (a) a discussion of any implications on the long-term management direction, from  
14 the synopses in the year one, two and three annual reports (Part E, Section  
15 2.3.11); and
- 16 (b) one of the following recommendations relating to the validity of the long-term  
17 management direction of the forest management plan, with rationale:
  - 18 (i) the long-term management direction remains valid, and planning of  
19 operations for the second five-year term proceeds;
  - 20 (ii) the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, but  
21 requires minor adjustments, and planning of operations for the second  
22 five-year term proceeds, with appropriate modifications; or
  - 23 (iii) the long-term management direction is no longer valid, and an  
24 unscheduled plan renewal is required (Part C, Section 3.2).  
25

26 If the plan author's recommendation is that the long-term management direction remains  
27 substantially valid, the required minor adjustments will be documented in the text of the  
28 annual report.

1 **4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND**  
2 **YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

3  
4 In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the  
5 requirements described in this section will apply to the year seven and year ten management  
6 unit annual reports.

7  
8 The year seven annual report will include an analysis of forest disturbances, review of  
9 renewal and tending activities, review of forest modeling assumptions, a preliminary  
10 assessment of objective achievement, and a preliminary determination of sustainability. The  
11 year seven annual report will identify any circumstances that are anticipated to significantly  
12 change the results of the assessment, analysis and assessments during the remaining three  
13 years of implementation of the forest management plan. The year seven annual report will be  
14 used in the preparation of the next forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.7.4).

15  
16 The year ten annual report will update the assessment, analysis and reviews in the year seven  
17 annual report to reflect the information for the full implementation of the forest management  
18 plan. The year ten annual report will be used in Phase II planning (Part A, Section 2.1.2.3).

19  
20 The requirements for the year ten annual report will apply to the annual report prepared for  
21 the last year of plan implementation, with modifications as necessary, if a forest management  
22 plan is superseded by a new approved plan before the scheduled renewal of the plan.

23  
24  
25 **4.1 Analysis of Forest Disturbances**

26  
27 The size and frequency of forest disturbances created by harvest and natural disturbances are  
28 reported in AR-15. The text will describe progress towards completion of planned forest  
29 disturbances.

30  
31 Any implications of the harvest and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the  
32 desired landscape pattern, and recommendations to be considered in the planning of future  
33 forest disturbances, will be documented in the text of the annual report.

34  
35  
36 **4.2 Review of Renewal and Tending Activities**

37  
38 A summary of the harvest and regeneration trends will be reported in AR-16.

39  
40 A review of renewal and tending activities will be prepared by a registered professional  
41 forester, and documented in the text of the annual report. The review will include a discussion  
42 of:

- 43  
44 (a) the amount of renewal and tending operations to date, as reported in AR-7;  
45 (b) the expenditures on renewal and tending operations, as reported in AR-11;

- 1 (c) the silvicultural effectiveness of renewal and tending operations, as reported in  
2 AR-14; and  
3 (d) harvest and regeneration trends, as reported in AR-16.  
4

5 The review will also include recommended changes that may affect the future levels of,  
6 effectiveness of, and expenditures on, renewal and tending operations. The recommended  
7 changes will be based on the information from this annual report, and previous reports of past  
8 forest operations or ten year management unit annual reports from previous forest  
9 management plans.

10  
11 The effectiveness of silvicultural treatment packages that are exceptions to the  
12 recommendations in the silvicultural guides will be assessed, using the summary of  
13 monitoring results (Part E, Section 2.3.10.2).  
14

#### 15 16 **4.3 Review of Forest Modelling Assumptions** 17

18 In the preparation of a forest management plan, the development of the long-term  
19 management direction for the forest is based on a number of assumptions (Part A, Section  
20 1.2). For example, there are assumptions related to forest dynamics and development  
21 information, natural depletions, anticipated industrial demand and silvicultural funding levels.  
22 These assumptions, which are documented in the analysis package in the supplementary  
23 documentation, will be reviewed. The summary and evaluation of operations (Part E, Section  
24 2.3) will be considered in the review.  
25

26 The review will include observations and comments on any of the assumptions, as well as  
27 conclusions and recommendations for modifications or refinements. The review will be  
28 documented in the text of the annual report.  
29

#### 30 31 **4.4 Independent Forest Audit Action Plans** 32

33 The text will summarize recommendations from action plans for independent forest audits  
34 which have been prepared during the plan period to date. The text will include a discussion of  
35 progress on implementation of the action plans, and any implications for subsequent planning.  
36  
37

#### 38 **4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement** 39

40 Part A, Section 1.2.6.3 identifies the requirement for the assessment of objective achievement  
41 in the year seven and ten annual reports. An assessment of the achievement of management  
42 objectives in the forest management plan will be documented in the text of the annual report.  
43 In the assessment, information provided in all of the annual reports to date will be considered.  
44 A summary of the available managed Crown productive forest, the forest condition for the  
45 Crown productive forest, and the habitat for selected wildlife species, will be reported in AR-

1 17, AR-18 and AR-19, respectively. A summary of the assessment of objective achievement  
2 will be reported in AR-20.

3  
4 The assessment will examine each management objective and target(s), and will consider:

- 5  
6 (a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and is  
7 the difference important?  
8 (b) Has the target been substantially met, or is progress being made on  
9 achievement of the target?  
10 (c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling  
11 assumptions and inputs?  
12 (d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?  
13 (e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification to  
14 better represent the local forest?  
15 (f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or  
16 make adjustments to the long-term management direction?  
17

18 For each management objective in the forest management plan that is directly associated with  
19 one of the four categories of objectives required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the  
20 assessment will consider:

- 21  
22 (a) Forest Diversity  
23 (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?  
24 (ii) Do the forest condition trends in AR-18 indicate progress towards the  
25 desired forest condition?  
26 (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?  
27 (b) Social and Economic Matters  
28 (i) Do the data in AR-1 and AR-3 indicate that the available harvest area and  
29 associated volume are being fully utilized?  
30 (ii) Do the trends in AR-17 indicate a concern with the area available for  
31 forest management?  
32 (iii) Did implementation of the forest management plan contribute to mill and  
33 community stability?  
34 (iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?  
35 (c) Forest Cover  
36 (i) Were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species achieved?  
37 (ii) Do the trends in AR-19 indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any  
38 of the selected wildlife species?  
39 (d) Silviculture  
40 (i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?  
41 (ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?  
42 (iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?  
43

44 If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons and a discussion of the  
45 management implications.

## 4.6 Determination of Sustainability

Part A, Section 1.2.6 describes the requirement for determinations of sustainability during the development of a forest management plan and following the implementation of operations. The determination of sustainability in the year seven and ten annual reports will conclude whether the implementation of the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider:

- (a) Are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?
- (b) Is there a pattern to the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.6.1))?
- (c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
- (d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
- (e) Are the levels of objective achievement attributable to forest management?

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the annual report, and will:

- (a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved; and
- (b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

### 4.6.1 Social and Economic Review

An updated social and economic description will be prepared, and a summary of changes from the description in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 2.5) will be included in the year seven and year ten annual reports. Changes in the social and economic description will be analyzed to determine if they have resulted from the implementation of the forest management plan. Conclusions of the analysis will be documented in the text of the annual report.

1 4.6.2 Recommendations

2

3 Recommendations will be developed as a result of the determination of sustainability and the  
4 social and economic review, and will be documented in the text of the annual report. The  
5 recommendations will focus on considerations for the next forest management plan, including  
6 maintaining or changing the long-term management direction and forest management  
7 operations.

1 **5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW**

2  
3 **5.1 All Annual Reports**

4  
5 The annual report will be submitted to MNR in accordance with the requirements of the  
6 *Forest Information Manual* and Part E of this manual. The Annual Report – Title and  
7 Certification Page (Figure E-1) must be submitted in hard copy as part of the annual report  
8 submission. The MNR registered professional forester for the management unit will work  
9 with the plan author to ensure that a complete and accurate annual report is prepared and  
10 submitted to the MNR District Manager by November 15.

11  
12 Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will have the opportunity to review the  
13 annual report for completeness and accuracy. The District Manager will provide the results of  
14 the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author  
15 will address comments resulting from the MNR review, and if necessary, a revised annual  
16 report will be resubmitted by February 15.

17  
18 The plan author will present the annual report to the local citizens committee, in a manner  
19 determined by the MNR District Manager in consultation with the committee.

20  
21 The annual report will be available for public inspection at the appropriate MNR district or  
22 area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee.

23  
24  
25 **5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten**  
26 **Management Unit Annual Reports**

27  
28 Staff from the appropriate MNR area, district and regional office will review the year three,  
29 seven and ten annual reports, within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The District  
30 Manager will include the results of the regional review in the MNR review which is provided  
31 to the plan author. The plan author will address comments resulting from the MNR review,  
32 and if necessary, a revised annual report will be resubmitted by February 15.

33  
34 The year three annual report will be presented to the local citizens committee. The MNR  
35 District Manager will consider any comments from the local citizens committee, and provide  
36 a recommendation on endorsement of the annual report to the MNR Regional Director,  
37 normally by February 21.

38  
39 The MNR Regional Director will review the year three annual report, and the MNR District  
40 Manager's recommendation on endorsement, and make a decision on acceptance of the  
41 recommendation. The MNR Regional Director will endorse the year three annual report,  
42 normally by March 1, to enable the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part  
43 A, Section 2.0), or the preparation of an unscheduled plan renewal (Part C, Section 3.2), to  
44 proceed. The MNR Regional Director will sign the hard copy of the year three Annual Report  
45 – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) submitted by the plan author to formalize the  
46 endorsement.

- 1 The MNR Regional Director will notify MNR's Forest Management Branch, the MNR
- 2 District Manager, the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch,
- 3 Ministry of the Environment and the sustainable forest licensee of his or her decision after
- 4 endorsement of the year three annual report.



1 **6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES**

2

3 The tables in this section are required for management unit annual reports. AR-1 to AR-14 are  
4 required for all annual reports. AR-15 to AR-20 are required for the year seven and ten annual  
5 reports.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit**  
 6

Forest Unit	Available Harvest Area (ha)	Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class	Projected Area (ha)	Harvest Area (ha)				Salvage This Year (ha)
				Forecast	Actual This Year	Actual To Date	% Forecast Harvested To Date	
<b>Stage of Management Subtotal</b>								
<b>Forest Unit Subtotal</b>								
<b>Total</b>								

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47

### **AR-1: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes forecast and actual harvest area by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable. Salvage harvest area is recorded for the annual report year only.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3.

#### **Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the ten-year available harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit.

#### **Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

#### **Projected Harvest Area:**

Enter the projected harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit, age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable.

#### **Harvest Area:**

Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class or stage of management and age class, if applicable.

#### **Forecast:**

Enter the forecast (10-year) harvest area from FMP-15.

#### **Actual This Year:**

Enter the total area harvested during the annual report year.

#### **Actual To Date:**

Enter the total of harvest area to date from the start of the plan period.

#### **% Forecast Harvested:**

Enter the percent (actual to date divided by forecast times 100).

#### **Salvage This Year:**

Enter the amount of salvage harvest this year by forest unit and age class.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-2: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Silvicultural System and Harvest Method**  
 6

Silvicultural System	Harvest Method	Actual Harvest Area (ha)	
		This Year	To Date
<b>Clearcut</b>	Block Cut		
	Strip Cut		
	Seed Tree Cut		
	HARP/HARO/CLAAG		
	Commercial Thinning		
<b>Clearcut System Subtotal</b>			
<b>Shelterwood</b>	Uniform Shelterwood		
	Preparatory Cut		
	Seed Cut		
	First Removal Harvest		
	Last Removal Harvest		
	Strip Shelterwood		
<b>Shelterwood System Subtotal</b>			
<b>Selection</b>	Selection Harvest		
<b>Selection System Subtotal</b>			
<b>Total</b>			

7

**INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27

**AR-2: Annual Report of Harvest Area by Silvicultural System and Harvest Method**

This table summarizes the level of actual harvest area for the report year and to date, by silvicultural system and harvest method.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Silvicultural System and Harvest Method:**

Report area harvested under the appropriate silvicultural system and harvest method identified in the table.

**Actual Harvest Area:**

Enter the harvest area (in hectares) by silvicultural system and harvest method.

**This Year:**

Enter the total area harvested during the annual report year.

**To Date:**

Enter the total of harvest area to date from the start of the plan period.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

Note: The area of salvage harvest is not included in this table.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts**  
 6

Location ID	Planned Clearcut Area (ha)	Planned Clearcut Harvest Area This Term (ha)	Actual Clearcut Harvest Area (ha)			Remarks on Progress
			This Year	To Date This Term	To Date	
<b>Total</b>						

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-3: Annual Report of Planned Clearcuts**

This table provides a list of planned clearcuts where harvest has been initiated or completed during the applicable five-year term. Some of the information included in this table is contained in the applicable Phase I or Phase II version of FMP-16. The definition of clearcut (i.e., temporal and spatial standards) used in the forest management plan is to be used when determining the boundaries and area (ha) of planned clearcuts for the purpose of completing this table. It is important to note that “planned clearcuts” include planned harvest area reported in AR-1 for those forest units managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, and will often include area harvested in previous plan terms. However, since planned clearcuts are assessed each five-year term, this table will only relate to the five-year term containing a particular annual report year, and not to the ten-year period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Location ID:**

Enter the unique location identifier for each planned clearcut that has been initiated or completed during the five-year term.

#### **Planned Clearcut Area:**

Enter the total planned clearcut area (in hectares) for each unique location. The source of this information is FMP-16.

#### **Planned Clearcut Harvest Area This Term:**

Enter the planned clearcut harvest area this term (in hectares) for each unique location. The source of this information is FMP-16. This information is listed by five-year term.

#### **Actual Clearcut Harvest Area:**

Enter the actual clearcut area (in hectares) for each unique location.

#### **This Year:**

Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed during the annual report year for each planned clearcut.

#### **To Date This Term:**

Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed to date for the current five-year term.

#### **To Date:**

Enter the actual clearcut harvest area completed to date for the current five-year term and in previous terms, if applicable.

#### **Remarks on Progress:**

Enter a brief description of progress to date (e.g., % completed, anticipated year of completion, explanations for differences when the harvest operations are completed).

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization**  
 6

	Licensee or Grouping	Actual Harvest Area (ha)	Product	Harvest Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )										Total	
				Conifer					Hardwood						
									Subtotal						
<u>A. Harvest</u>															
Forecast Volume															
			Total												
Actual Volume Utilized This Year															
			Total												
Actual Volume Utilized To Date															
			Total												
% Forecast Utilized To Date															
<u>B. Salvage</u>															
Actual Volume Utilized This Year															
			Total												
Actual Volume Utilized To Date															
			Total												

7



## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49

### **AR-4: Annual Report of Wood Utilization**

This table summarizes the actual volumes utilized by licensee (or grouping), and by product. The source of this information is the Provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Part A. Harvest:**

Complete this section for all invoiced and undersize harvest volumes except salvage harvest volumes. All second-pass harvest volumes are included as well.

#### **Part B. Salvage**

Complete this section for invoiced and undersize salvage harvest volumes only.

#### **Licensee or Grouping:**

List all licensees (or groupings), if required, that conducted harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. If individual licensees (or groupings) are not required, identify the SFL name.

#### **Harvest Area:**

Enter the area harvested in hectares by licensee (or grouping).

#### **Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) for the actual volumes utilized.

#### **Harvest Volume by Species:**

Enter the net merchantable volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product utilized from harvest area by licensee (or grouping).

#### **Forecast Volume:**

For Part A only, enter the forecast volume (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species. The source of this information is FMP-17.

#### **Actual Volume Utilized This Year:**

For Part A and Part B, enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product for the annual report year.

#### **Actual Volume Utilized To Date:**

For Part A and Part B, enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product from the start of the plan period.

#### **% Forecast Utilized to Date:**

Enter the percent (total actual volume utilized to date divided by forecast volume by species times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**  
 6

Mill	Product	Volume by Species (m <sup>3</sup> )													
		Conifer							Hardwood					Total	
	Forecast This Year To Date														
	% Forecast														
Total	Forecast This Year To Date														
	% Forecast														

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40

### **AR-5: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table summarizes actual volume (harvest and salvage) utilized by mills which received wood from the management unit, by product and species. The source of this information is the Provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Mill:**

List all mills that received wood from the management unit.

#### **Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer) utilized by each mill.

#### **Volume by Species:**

Enter the volume (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product that was utilized by each mill. Ensure the total volume utilized by species is consistent with the volumes in AR-4.

#### **Forecast:**

Enter the forecast mill utilization volume (m<sup>3</sup>) by species. The source of this information is FMP-19.

#### **This Year:**

Enter the volume utilized (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product by mill for the annual report year.

#### **To Date:**

Enter the utilized (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) by species and product by mill from the start of the plan period

#### **% Forecast:**

Enter the percent (actual volume utilized to date divided by forecast mill utilization times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volume Associated with Natural Disturbances**  
 6

Disturbance Type	Area (ha) by Forest Unit										Estimated Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )			
											Total	Conifer	Hardwood	Total
Fire														
Insect														
Disease														
Blowdown														
Other (specify):														
<b>Total This Year</b>														
<b>Total To Date</b>														

7

## **INSTRUCTIONS**

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29

### **AR-6: Annual Report of Area and Volumes Associated with Natural Disturbances**

This table summarizes the area (ha) by forest unit, and volumes (m<sup>3</sup>) by conifer and hardwood, associated with natural disturbances that occurred on the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Disturbance Type:**

The disturbance types include fire, insect, disease, blowdown and others. In the case of others, specify the disturbance type (e.g., ice storm).

#### **Area (ha) by Forest Unit:**

Enter the area (in hectares) by forest unit for each disturbance type.

#### **Estimated Volume (m<sup>3</sup>):**

Enter the estimated volumes (net merchantable m<sup>3</sup>) of conifer and hardwood for the total area of all forest units by disturbance type.

#### **Total This Year:**

Enter the total for each column for the annual report year.

#### **Total To Date:**

Enter the total for each column from the start of the plan period.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**  
 6

	Area (ha)							
	Harvest				Natural Disturbance			
Renewal	Forecast	Actual This Year	Actual To Date	% Forecast	Forecast	Actual This Year	Actual To Date	% Forecast
<b>Regeneration</b>								
<b>Natural</b>								
Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged)								
Block Cut								
Strip Cut								
Seed Tree Cut								
HARP/HARO/CLAAG								
Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged)								
Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut								
Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut								
Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged)								
<b>Subtotal Natural</b>								
<b>Artificial</b>								
Planting								
Seeding								
<b>Subtotal Artificial</b>								
<b>Total Regeneration</b>								
<b>Artificial - Retreatment</b>								
Planting								
Seeding								
<b>Total Retreatment</b>								
<b>Artificial - Supplemental</b>								
Planting								
Seeding								
<b>Total Supplemental</b>								
<b>Site Preparation</b>								
Mechanical								
Chemical								
Aerial								
Ground								
Prescribed Burn								
High Complexity								
Slash Pile Burn								
<b>Total Site Preparation</b>								
<b>Tending</b>								
<b>Cleaning</b>								
Manual								
Mechanical								
Chemical								
Aerial								
Ground								
Prescribed Burn								
High Complexity								
<b>Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting</b>								
Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged)								
Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged)								
<b>Other</b>								
Cultivation								
Pruning								
<b>Total Tending</b>								
<b>Protection (Insect Pest Control)</b>								
Harvest								
Manual								
Ground Insecticide								
Aerial Insecticide								
<b>Total Protection</b>								

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-7: Annual Report of Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

This table summarizes, by harvest and natural disturbance, the area of renewal, tending and protection operations, including those associated with tree improvement. Forecast, actual this year, actual to date and % forecast figures are included.

Complete the table as follows

#### **Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Report silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance), and enter the area in (hectares) by treatment method. Report the treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed under natural disturbance.

#### **Renewal**

##### **Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with re-treatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

##### **Site Preparation:**

Enter the area treated by site preparation method. Site preparation for natural regeneration is included in the area reported. For slash pile burns, the area of the burn will reflect an estimate of the area actually treated, rather than the total area that provided the source of the slash.

##### **Tending:**

Enter the area treated by tending method. Areas reported as selection cut harvest under regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial, will also be reported as improvement cut under tending.

##### **Protection (Insect Pest Control)**

Enter the area treated by protection method.

Enter forecasts from FMP-21, actual for the annual report year, actual to date from plan start and % forecast (i.e., actual to date divided by forecast times 100).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support**  
 6

**A. Seed Collected**

Species	Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone	Source of Seed Collection	Seed or Cones Collected (hl)	
			This Year	To Date

**B. Seeding**

Species	Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone	Source of Seed Collection	Number of Seed Used (000s)	
			This Year	To Date

**C. Tree Planting**

Species	Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone	Stock Type	Number of Trees Planted (000s)	
			This Year	To Date

7



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-8: Annual Report of Renewal Support**

This table summarizes renewal support, including volume of seeds and cones collected, the number of seeds used for direct seeding, and the number of trees planted. Seeds used and trees planted are recorded for renewal and retreatment/supplemental treatment.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **A. Seed Collected/B. Seeding/C. Tree Planting**

Complete applicable table section for seed collected, seed used for seeding, and trees planted.

##### **Species:**

Enter the tree species.

##### **Seed Zone/Breeding Zone:**

Enter the seed zone/breeding zone for the seed collected, seed used for direct seeding, or the source of the seed for planting (i.e., nursery) stock.

##### **Source of Seed Collection or Stock Type:**

Identify the source of the seed collected and used (e.g., bulk stand, seed collection area, seed production area or seed orchard) or the nursery stock type, as applicable.

##### **A. Seed Collected: Seeds or Cones Collected (hl):**

This Year: Enter the volume of seeds or cones collected (in hectolitres) by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the volume of seeds or cones collected (in hectolitres) by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type from the start of the plan period.

##### **B. Seeding: Number of Seed Used (000s):**

This Year: Enter the amount (000's) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year. Do not include seed used to produce nursery stock.

To Date: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.

##### **C. Tree Planting: Number of Trees Planted (000s):**

This Year: Enter the number (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the amount (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and stock type from the start of the plan period.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use**  
 6

Application Type	Purpose of Application	Pesticide Used			Incidents	Complaints
		Trade Name and PCP No.	Size of Area Treated (ha)	Total Quantity of Pesticide Product Used (in l or kg)		

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37

### **AR-9: Annual Report of Pesticide Use**

This table summarizes the use of pesticides on the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report.

#### **Application Type:**

Enter the method of application (e.g., ground application, aerial fixed wing, aerial rotary wing, or other (specify method)).

#### **Purpose of Application:**

Enter the purpose for the application (e.g., site preparation, cleaning (conifer release), protection (specify pest), other (specify purpose)).

#### **Pesticide Used:**

##### **Trade Name and PCP No.:**

Enter the name of the pesticide product and the *Pest Control Products Act* registration number.

##### **Size of Area Treated:**

Enter the area (in hectares) treated.

##### **Total Quantity of Pesticide Product Used (l or kg):**

Enter the actual amount (either volume (litres) or weight (kilograms)) of the pesticide used. This is not the volume of spray mixture.

#### **Incidents:**

If an incident happened during the application (e.g., spills, over-spray, aircraft down, etc.), enter “yes” in this column.

#### **Complaints:**

If there were complaints about the pesticide application (e.g., reports of health effects), enter “yes” in this column.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management**  
 6

Road or Road Network Identifier	Construction (km)			Use Management			
	Forecast	Actual This Year	Actual To Date	Maintenance	Monitoring	Access Control	Decommissioning
A. Primary							
<b>Subtotal</b>							
B. Branch							
<b>Subtotal</b>							
<b>Total</b>							
C. Operational							
<b>Total</b>							
D. Existing							

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-10: Annual Report of Road Construction and Use Management**

This table summarizes road construction and use management activity (i.e., maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) for all primary and branch roads, as well as operational and existing road networks. For construction (Actual This Year and Actual To Date), report only the length of road for which construction has been completed.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Road or Road Network Identifier:**

Enter the unique name or code by which each road (primary or branch roads) or road network (operational and existing roads) can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

#### **Construction:**

##### **Forecast:**

Enter the length of primary and branch road construction for the plan period (10-year) from FMP-22.

##### **Actual This Year:**

Enter the length of actual construction completed for primary and branch roads and for operational road networks for the annual report year.

##### **Actual to Date:**

Enter the length of actual construction completed for primary and branch roads and for operational road networks from the start of the plan period.

#### **Use Management:**

Enter a brief text description of each use management activity that occurred during the annual report year.

##### **Maintenance:**

If applicable, provide a brief text summary of the maintenance (e.g., grading, water crossing maintenance).

##### **Monitoring:**

If applicable, provide a brief text summary of monitoring (e.g. number of water crossings inspected, entire road length inspected following rainstorm, access control sign inspected for damage).

##### **Access control:**

If applicable, enter the type of access control (e.g., gates, signs or other-specify) that was established during the annual report year.

##### **Decommissioning:**

If applicable, enter the type of decommissioning (e.g., berms, ditches, scarification, water crossing removal, or other - specify), and indicate if the decommissioning is partially or fully completed. After decommissioning is completed, these roads will not appear in subsequent annual reports.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures**  
 6

Revenues										
Species	Actual Harvest Volume (m3)		Crown Revenues (000s \$)			Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)			Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)	
	Invoiced	Undersized	Forecast	This Year	To Date	Forecast	This Year	To Date	This Year	To Date
<u>A. Harvest</u>										
<u>B. Salvage</u>										
<b>Total</b>										

Revenue from Area Charges			
---------------------------	--	--	--

Expenditures (\$)					
Activity	Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$)			Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$)	
	Forecast	This Year	To Date	This Year	To Date
Natural Regeneration					
Artificial Regeneration					
Site Preparation					
Tending					
Renewal Support					
Other Eligible Activities					
Protection (Insect Pest Control)					
<b>Total</b>					

7

**INSTRUCTIONS****AR-11: Annual Report of Revenues and Expenditures**

This table summarizes revenue accrued, and expenditures made by activity and funding source.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Revenues:****Species:**

Enter the species harvested as A. Harvest or B. Salvage. The species should match the species listed in AR-4.

**Actual Harvest Volume (m<sup>3</sup>):**

Enter the invoiced and undersized harvest volume (in cubic metres). Ensure that the total volume by species matches AR-4.

**Crown Revenues (000s \$):**

Enter the Crown Revenues in thousands of dollars.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Enter the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account revenue in thousands of dollars.

**Forest Futures Trust Fund (000s \$):**

Enter the Forestry Futures Trust Fund revenue in thousands of dollars.

**Revenue from Area Charges:** Enter the Revenue from Area Charges in thousands of dollars.

**Expenditures:**

Enter expenditures by the broad activity categories listed. Protection expenditures are not an eligible expense from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s \$):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s \$):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Enter forecasts from FMP-24, actual for the report year, and actual to date from plan start.

Enter all totals as required.

## Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration** - Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.

**Artificial Regeneration** - Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.).

**Site Preparation** - Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).

**Tending** - Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support** - Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).

**Other Eligible Activities** - Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Protection** - Activities include insect pest control.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest Licensee and MNR**  
 6 **Verification Reports of Non-Compliance**  
 7

Forest Operations Inspected	Total Number of Industry Inspection Reports	Number of Joint Inspections with MNR	Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports	Total Number of Industry Submitted Reports		Non-Compliance		Number of Industry Non-Compliance Reports Verified by MNR	Issue(s) of Non Compliance: Significance Determined by MNR			Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken (Note: multiple actions can be applied per non-compliance)							
				In-Compliance	Non-Compliance	Inspections by Activity	#		Minor	Moderate	Significant	Ongoing	Resolved by Warning or Communication	Resolved by Industry Self-Correction	Remedy Order(s) Issued			s. 58 Penalty Levied	s. 64 Offence Levied
															S	R	C		
Access						Aggregates													
						Area of Concern													
						Fire Prevention													
						Road Construction													
						Water Crossing													
						Other													
Harvest						Area of Concern													
						Cutting													
						Fire Prevention													
						Wasteful Practice													
						Wood Measurement/ Movement													
Renewal						Other													
						Fire Prevention													
						Pesticide Application													
						Renewal													
Maintenance						Other													
						Fire Prevention													
						Pesticide Application													
						Tending													
<b>Total</b>																			
Total <year>																			
Total <year>																			
Total <year>																			
Total <year>																			

8



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-12: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by Sustainable Forest Licensee and MNR Verification Reports of Non-Compliance**

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection information collected by the SFL Holder during the previous fiscal year and MNR monitoring and action associated with instances of SFL holder reported non-compliance. The requirements for forest operations inspections and compliance reporting are described in the *Forest Compliance Handbook*.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Total Number of Industry Inspection Reports:**

Enter the total number of inspection reports by the forest industry.

#### **Number of Joint Inspections with MNR:**

Enter the total number of joint inspection reports completed. Joint inspections do not take the place of any other inspection type that is the normal responsibility of the respective parties and are not included in the totals of required inspections reported by the SFL holder or MNR.

#### **Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports:**

Enter the total number of inspection reports of activities conducted on Crown land under the management of an SFL, where the activity was not planned, licensed, authorized or sanctioned through the FMP. Non SFL related inspections are not attributed to the acts/actions or omission by the SFL and are not included in the total number of industry submitted reports.

#### **Total Number of Industry Submitted Reports:**

**In Compliance:** Enter the total number of industry submitted reports that were “in-compliance” and “in-compliance with comments”

**Non Compliance or Not In Compliance:** Enter the total of all inspections with a Non-Compliance assessment by Operation Type.

#### **Non Compliance – Inspections by Activity:**

Enter the number of non-compliant activity reports by the activity types. The totals may not equal the totals of the “Industry Submitted Non-Compliance Reports” column because one report can have one or more activities shown as non-compliant.

#### **Number of Industry Non-Compliance Reports Verified by MNR:**

All industry submitted reports of non-compliance, by Activity, must be verified by the MNR and recorded here.

#### **Issue(s) of Non-Compliance: Significance Determined by MNR**

Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance assigned by MNR to each category of significance.

#### **Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken:**

Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance in each status and/or action category. One or more remedies or enforcement actions may be applied to a single or multiple instance of non-compliance.

Enter all totals as required, for the report year and the four previous years.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only**

6

Forest Operations Inspected	Total Number of Reports	Number of Joint Inspections with Industry	Total Number of MNR Submitted Reports (excludes AR 11.1 Verifications)		Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports	Non-Compliance		Significance of Issue(s) of Non-Compliance by MNR Spot Check (SC) & Audit (Aud)			Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken (Note: multiple actions can be applied per non-compliance)									
			In-Compliance #SC	#Aud		Non-Compliance #SC	#Aud	Inspections by Activity	#	Minor	Moderate	Significant	Ongoing	Resolved By Warning or Communication	Resolved By Industry Self Correction	Remedy Order(s) Issued			s.58 Penalty Levied	s.64 Offence Levied
																S	R	C		
Access						Aggregates														
						Area of Concern														
						Fire Prevention														
						Road Construction														
						Water Crossing														
Harvest						Other														
						Area of Concern														
						Cutting														
						Fire Prevention														
						Wasteful Practice														
Renewal						Wood Measurement/ Movement														
						Other														
						Fire Prevention														
						Pesticide Application														
						Renewal														
Maintenance						Other														
						Fire Prevention														
						Pesticide Application														
						Tending														
						Other														
<b>Total</b>																				
Total <year>																				
Total <year>																				
Total <year>																				
Total <year>																				

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR 13: Annual Report of Forest Operations Inspections Conducted by MNR Only**

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection information collected by MNR staff during the previous fiscal year and MNR monitoring and action associated with instances of MNR reported non-compliance. The requirements for forest operations inspections and compliance reporting are described in the *Forest Compliance Handbook*.

MNR will compile the information for tables AR-12 and AR-13 and provide these tables to the SFL holder by September 15. The plan author will prepare the text, which accompanies AR-12 and AR-13 that summarizes the monitoring information.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Total Number of Reports:**

Enter the total number of inspection reports completed by MNR.

#### **Number of Joint Inspections with Industry:**

Enter the total number of joint inspection reports completed. Joint inspections do not take the place of any other inspection type that is the normal responsibility of the respective parties and are not included in the totals of required inspections reported by the SFL holder or MNR.

#### **Total Number of MNR Submitted Reports (excludes AR-12 Verifications):**

**In Compliance Spot Check, Audit:** Enter the total number of MNR submitted spot check and audit reports that were “in-compliance” and “in-compliance with comments”

**Non Compliance Spot Check, Audit:** Enter the total number of inspections with a Non-Compliance assessment.

#### **Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports:**

Enter the total number of inspection reports of activities conducted on Crown land under the management of an SFL, where the activity was not planned, licensed, authorized or sanctioned by through the FMP. Non SFL related inspections are not attributed to the acts/actions or omission by the SFL and are not included in the total number of MNR submitted reports.

#### **Non Compliance – Inspections by Activity:**

Enter the number of non-compliant activity reports by the activity types. The totals may not equal the totals of the “MNR Submitted Non-Compliance Reports” column because one report can have one or more activities shown as non-compliant.

#### **Significance of Issue(s) of Non-Compliance by MNR Spot Check (SC) and Audit (Aud):**

Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance assigned by MNR to each category of significance.

#### **Non Compliance Status and/or MNR Action Taken:**

Enter the total number of issues of non-compliance in each status and/or action category. One or more remedies or enforcement actions may be applied to a single or multiple instance of non-compliance.

Enter all totals as required, for the report year and the four previous years.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-14: Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success**  
 6

Forest Unit	Silvicultural Ground Rule	Projected Forest Unit	Forecast of Assessment (ha)	Area Assessed This Year (ha)					Area Assessed To Date (ha)			
				Area Successfully Regenerated			Area Not Successfully Regenerated	Total	Area Assessed	Successfully Regenerated to Projected Forest Unit	Total Area Successfully Regenerated	
				Projected Forest Unit	Other Forest Unit	Total						
<u>Harvest</u>												
	Forest Unit Subtotal											
	Harvest Subtotal											
<u>Natural Disturbance</u>												
	Forest Unit Subtotal											
	Natural Disturbance Subtotal											
	Total											

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-14: Annual Report of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success**

This table provides a summary, by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule, of the area assessed and regenerated successfully. This table reports assessments for harvest and natural disturbance (including salvage). Assessments of regeneration of natural disturbance areas, which have been salvage harvested, are required and included in the table. Assessments are not required for areas of natural disturbance that have not been salvage harvested, but may be included in the table when conducted.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

#### **Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**

Report assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under natural disturbance.

#### **Silvicultural Ground Rule:**

Enter the silvicultural ground rule (or a code referencing the suite of optional treatments as presented in the silvicultural ground rule in FMP-5) that was implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was revised, enter only the final ground rule implemented.

#### **Projected Forest Unit:**

Enter the projected forest unit as described in the applicable silvicultural ground rule.

#### **Forecast of Assessment (ha):**

Enter the area (in hectares) forecast for assessment from FMP-25.

#### **Area Assessed This Year (ha):**

##### **Area Successfully Regenerated:**

Enter the area (in hectares) that is successfully regenerated as either regenerated to projected FU (e.g., silvicultural success) or to another FU (e.g., regeneration success). Enter the total area regenerated as well.

##### **Area Not Successfully Regenerated:**

Enter the area (in hectares) that does not meet regeneration standards.

##### **Total:**

Enter the total area (in hectares) assessed this year.

#### **Area Assessed to Date (ha):**

Enter the total area (in hectares) that has been assessed, regenerated to the projected forest unit, and the total area regenerated to date from the start of the plan period.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-15: Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class**  
 6

Size Class (ha)	Frequency of Forest Disturbances						
	Number			Percent			
	Plan Start	Projected Plan End	Actual To Date	Plan Start	Projected Plan End	Actual To Date	Template
< 100							
101 - 200							
201 - 500							
501 - 1000							
1001 - 5000							
5001 - 10000							
> 10000							
<b>Total</b>							

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38

### **AR-15: Summary of Frequency Distribution of Forest Disturbances by Size Class**

This table summarizes frequency distribution of forest disturbances by size class at the start and end of the plan period to indicate progress towards the template distribution. Information for this table comes from FMP-12 and the actual disturbances since the start of the plan period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Frequency of Forest Disturbances:**

Enter the frequency of forest disturbances by size class.

##### **Number/Percent:**

Enter the number and percent of forest disturbances in each of plan start, projected plan end and actual to date, by size class. Enter the percent for the template by size class from FMP-12.

##### **Plan Start:**

Enter the frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the start of the plan period.

##### **Projected Plan End:**

Enter the projected frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of the plan period.

##### **Actual To Date:**

Enter the actual frequency (number and percent) by size class of forest disturbances at the end of year seven or the plan period, as applicable.

##### **Template:**

Enter the template frequency (percent) by size class of forest disturbances as determined during the planning process and recorded in FMP-12.

Enter totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends**  
 6

		Term							
Forest Unit		<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>	<year> to <year>
	Harvest/Salvage (ha)								
	Regenerated (ha)								
Total	Harvest/Salvage (ha)								
	Regenerated (ha)								

7



**INSTRUCTIONS**

- 1
- 2
- 3 **AR-16: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends**
- 4
- 5 This table summarizes harvest, including salvage, and regeneration level trends over multiple
- 6 five-year terms by forest unit. The purpose of this table is to allow comparison of the
- 7 harvest/salvage area for a five-year term with the results of regeneration efforts on the same
- 8 area. The regenerated area will be updated with the preparation of successive year seven and
- 9 year ten annual reports. The sources of the information are the results presented in AR-1 and
- 10 AR-14 in all annual reports. As many terms of reliable data as available should be included.
- 11
- 12 Complete the table as follows:
- 13
- 14 Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.
- 15
- 16 **Forest Unit:**
- 17 Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3 that best describes the stands at the time of
- 18 harvest.
- 19
- 20 **Year to Year:**
- 21 Enter the start year and end year (e.g., 1995 to 2000) of the applicable five-year term
- 22 as column headings.
- 23
- 24 **Harvest/Salvage (ha):**
- 25 Enter the total actual harvest and salvage area for the applicable term. This
- 26 information is summarized from the applicable AR-1s.
- 27
- 28 **Regenerated (ha):**
- 29 Enter the total area successfully regenerated by forest unit for the applicable term.
- 30 The applicable term is the term during which the area was harvested, not the term in
- 31 which it was assessed as regenerated.
- 32
- 33 Enter totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-17: Summary of Available Managed Crown Productive Forest**  
 6

Forest Unit	Area (ha)							
	Past Plans			Current Plan <year>				
	<year>	<year>	<year>	Plan Start <year>	Projections			Plan End <year>
			Short-Term <year+10>		Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>		
<b>Total</b>								

**INSTRUCTIONS**

**AR-17: SUMMARY OF AVAILABLE MANAGED CROWN PRODUCTIVE FOREST**

This table summarizes the available managed Crown productive forest area (ha) by forest unit over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Unit**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-3. For past plans, use the forest unit in the current FMP-3 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

**Area (ha)**

Enter the area of the available managed Crown productive forest (in hectares) by forest unit for the applicable past and current plans.

**Past Plans:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).

Enter all totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**  
 6

		Area (ha)							
Forest Type	Age	Past Plans			Current Plan <year>				Plan End <year>
		<year>	<year>	<year>	Plan Start <year>	Projections			
						Short-Term <year+10>	Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>	
<b>Forest Type Subtotal</b>									
<b>Total</b>									

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-18: Summary of Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

This table summarizes the Crown productive forest area (ha) by forest type and age over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

#### **Forest Type:**

Enter the forest type. Forest type is usually the forest unit identified in FMP-3. For past plans, use the forest unit in FMP-3 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

#### **Age:**

Enter the age (e.g., 20-year age class, seral stage). This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silvicultural system.

#### **Area (ha)**

Enter the area of the Crown productive forest (in hectares) by forest type and age for the applicable past and current plans.

#### **Past Plans:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

#### **Current Plan:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**  
 6

Selected Wildlife Species	Area of Habitat (ha)							Plan End <year>
	Past Plans			Current Plan <year>				
	<year>	<year>	<year>	Plan Start <year>	Projections			
					Short-Term <year+10>	Medium-Term <year+20>	Long-Term <year+100>	

7

## INSTRUCTIONS

1  
2  
3 **AR-19: Summary of Habitat for Selected Wildlife Species**  
4

5 This table summarizes the area (in hectares) of habitat for selected wildlife species over time.  
6 The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as  
7 reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning  
8 inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.  
9

10 Complete the set of tables as follows:

11  
12 Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.  
13

14 **Selected Wildlife Species:**

15 Enter the common names of the selected wildlife species occurring on the  
16 management unit. The selected species should include as a minimum the appropriate  
17 provincially and locally featured species. Provincial/regional analysis may reveal other  
18 species whose habitat is rare and/or diminishing at the Provincial/regional level.

19 Where the management unit is important in maintaining or improving habitat for these  
20 species, they will be included as selected wildlife species.  
21

22 **Area of Habitat (ha)**

23 Enter the area of habitat (in hectares) for the selected wildlife species for the  
24 applicable past and current plans.  
25

26 **Past Plans:**

27 Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start  
28 year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is  
29 available.  
30

31 **Current Plan:**

32 Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific  
33 required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the  
34 projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end  
35 information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as  
36 well.  
37

38 Note: Current plan end and next plan start information is the same point in  
39 time (i.e., current plan end information = plan start information for next plan).

1 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 ANNUAL REPORT: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_  
 4

5 **AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement**  
 6

Management Objective	Indicator/ Measure	Plan Start Level	Desirable Level	Target (how much, when)	Plan End	Management Strategy - Projections				Assessment
						Achievement at Target Year	Short (10 years)	Medium (20 years)	Long (100 years)	
Quantitative Objectives										
Qualitative Objectives	Assessment:									

7



## INSTRUCTIONS

### **AR-20: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators, targets and achievement, and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective at the end of the plan period. The source of information for this table is FMP-13 and actual achievement or change in the indicator during the plan period.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, the plan period and annual report year.

#### **Management Objective:**

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

#### **Indicator/Measure:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

#### **Plan Start Level:**

Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for the ten-year period (e.g., available harvest volume)

#### **Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

#### **Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator and the year the target will be achieved. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

#### **Plan End:**

Enter the actual plan end level (may be to date activity levels from the annual report or plan start levels for next plan).

#### **Management Strategy – Projections**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the management strategy, for the target year and for the short, medium and long term.

#### **Assessment:**

Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable, target and plan end achievement levels, as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:

Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

1  
2  
3 Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking..... 2  
4 Appendix II: Existing Roads Table ..... 4  
5 Appendix III: Analysis Package Contents ..... 6  
6 Appendix IV: Social and Economic Description ..... 7  
7 Appendix V: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps..... 11  
8 Appendix VI: Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in Strategic Analysis. 13  
9 Appendix VII: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form ..... 14  
10 Appendix VIII: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form ..... 20

1 **Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking**

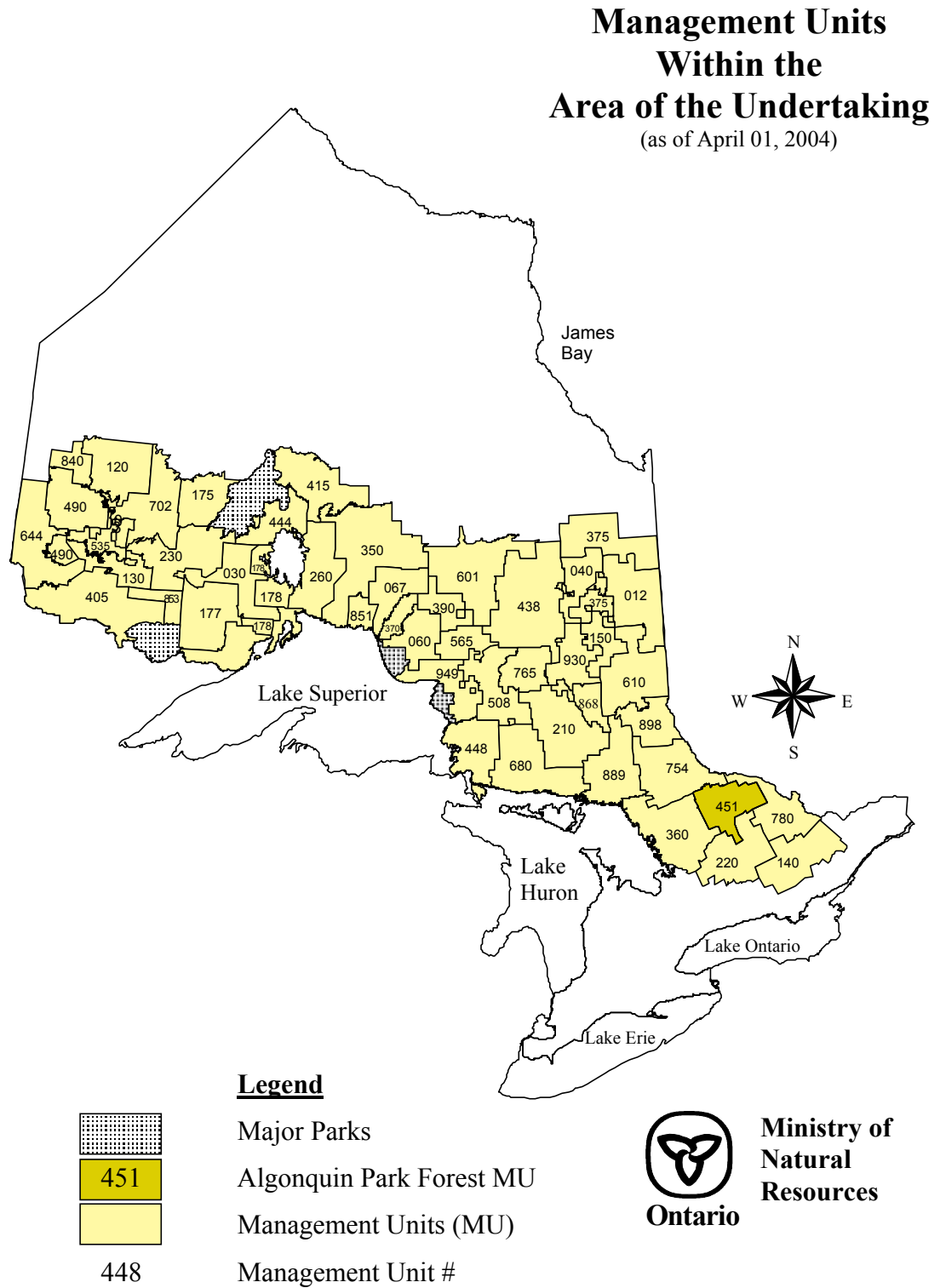
2  
3 **Figure APP-1: List of Management Units (April 1, 2004)\***

4

#	Management Unit Name	#	Management Unit Name
448	Algoma Forest	390	Nagagami Forest
451	Algonquin Park Forest	150	Nighthawk Forest
444	Armstrong Forest	754	Nipissing Forest
220	Bancroft-Minden Forest	680	Northshore Forest
067	Big Pic Forest	415	Ogoki Forest
370	Black River Forest	780	Ottawa Valley Forest
178	Black Sturgeon Forest	851	Pic River Ojibway Forest
175	Caribou Forest	765	Pineland-Martel Forest
375	Cochrane-Moose River	840	Red Lake Forest
405	Crossroute Forest	930	Romeo Malette Forest
177	Dog River-Matawin Forest	853	Sapawe Forest
535	Dryden Forest	868	Shiningtree Forest
230	English River Forest	040	Smooth Rock Falls Forest
360	French-Severn Forest	210	Spanish Forest
438	Gordon Cosens Forest	030	Spruce River Forest
601	Hearst Forest	889	Sudbury Forest
012	Iroquois Falls Forest	508	Superior Forest
350	Kenogami Forest	898	Temagami
644	Kenora Forest	610	Timiskaming Forest
702	Lac Seul Forest	120	Trout Lake Forest
260	Lake Nipigon Forest	130	Wabigoon Forest
796	Lakehead Forest	949	Wawa Forest
565	Magpie Forest	490	Whiskey Jack Forest
140	Mazinaw-Lanark Forest	060	White River Forest

5 \* (as designated under the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, Section 7)

1 **Figure APP-2: Map of Management Units (April 1, 2004)**



2 Note: The Management Unit # on the map provides the link to the name in Figure APP-1.

1 **Appendix II: Existing Roads Table**

2  
 3 MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 PLAN PERIOD: \_\_\_\_\_ TO \_\_\_\_\_

[ ] Phase I (Year 1-5)  
 [ ] Phase II (Year 6-10)

5  
 6  
 7 **Existing Roads Table**

Road or Road Network Identifier	Road Length	Use Management					
		Maintenance	Monitoring	Access Control		Future Use Management	
				Type	Year	Transfer Year	Management Intent
<b>Total</b>							

## INSTRUCTIONS

### **Existing Roads Table**

This table lists all existing roads or road networks that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee and includes the road length and use management (i.e. maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning and abandonment) for the period of the plan. The table is prepared as part of the background information and is updated during Phase II planning.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

#### **Road or Road Network Identifier:**

Enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

#### **Road Length:**

For each road or road network, enter the road length in kilometres at the beginning of the plan term.

#### **Use Management:**

For each existing road or road network, complete the following columns.

##### **Maintenance:**

Provide a brief summary of the maintenance that is likely to occur during the plan term.

##### **Monitoring:**

Provide a brief summary of monitoring, including monitoring of water crossings that is likely to occur during the plan term.

##### **Access Control:**

Type: If applicable, enter the type of access control (under the *Public Lands Act* or any other form of regulation) which currently exists.

Year: Indicate the operating year (e.g., 2006/2007) in which access control was established.

##### **Future Use Management:**

Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2011/2012) or five-year term (e.g. 2011/2016) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNR.

Management Intent: Indicate MNR's management intent (e.g., transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission/abandonment).

Enter the total length of roads.

Note: Existing roads with new construction forecast or planned will also be included in FMP-22.

### 1 **Appendix III: Analysis Package Contents**

2  
3  
4 The analysis package will be used to document the information, assumptions, and decisions  
5 made during the analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management  
6 direction, and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The analysis package  
7 will be included in the supplementary documentation of a forest management plan.  
8

9 The analysis package will document:

- 10  
11 (a) analytical tools used in the development or analysis of the management  
12 strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.4.2);  
13 (b) the tasks and responsibilities associated with data compilation, update, and  
14 classification, and with conducting analyses;  
15 (c) development of the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4), including:  
16 (i) data used in the development of the base model and the manner in  
17 which the data are classified and updated;  
18 (ii) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions,  
19 disturbance assumptions);  
20 (iii) strategic silviculture options;  
21 (iv) development of the natural benchmark (Part A, Section 1.2.4.4);  
22 (v) management assumptions (e.g., including harvest flow rules,  
23 operability);  
24 (vi) how direction from applicable forest management guides were  
25 represented in the analysis;  
26 (vii) assumptions and conclusions made during the analysis, any sensitivity  
27 analysis and the rationale for data inputs;  
28 (viii) any other results important for the evaluation of the management  
29 strategy; and  
30 (ix) a digital copy of the model run for the base model;  
31 (d) completion of applicable progress checkpoints (Part A, Section 1.1.5);  
32 (e) scoping investigations (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5) including:  
33 (i) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and  
34 assumptions;  
35 (ii) results and conclusions; and  
36 (iii) a digital copy of a selected model run that best represents each  
37 investigation; and  
38 (f) development of the management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.6.2) including:  
39 (i) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;  
40 (ii) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model  
41 results;  
42 (iii) changes to the base model and rationale for those changes;  
43 (iv) modeling results;  
44 (v) the rationale for adjustments to targets, if applicable; and  
45 (vi) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for  
46 the proposed management strategy.



## 1 **Appendix IV: Social and Economic Description**

### 4 **Part 1: Social and Economic Context for the Management Unit**

6 List each community that receives substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest  
7 products from the management unit or, that has substantial employment related to the forest  
8 industry, and each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose  
9 interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

### 12 **Part 2: Demographic Profiles**

14 The profile of each community will contain the following data:

- 16 • population and labour force;
- 17 • community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of community  
18 resilience);
- 19 • household characteristics;
- 20 • individual income by gender, household income;
- 21 • educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience);  
22 and
- 23 • labour force dependency ratios.

25 The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the  
26 most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry of  
27 Northern Development and Mines Regional Economic Development Branch is also a source  
28 for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the Statistics  
29 Canada web site (<http://www.statcan.ca>) under Community Profiles. A planning team  
30 representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the communities  
31 identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask them if they  
32 would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant insight.  
33 Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-friendly  
34 format, which may simply be as text.

### 37 **Part 3: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest**

39 Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the  
40 baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management  
41 decisions in a forest management plan. The information in the description will be considered  
42 in the development of management objectives and the management strategy, and the planning  
43 of forest operations.

45 The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where  
46 this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between

1 management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and  
2 members of the public. Information may also be available from web sites, reports, databases  
3 or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If  
4 businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the  
5 description, the efforts made to obtain the information.

6  
7 The description should be organized by sector.

### 8 9 ***Timber***

- 10  
11 1. List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences and describe  
12 wood supply commitments in force.  
13  
14 2. For each year over the past five years, show the volume of wood from the forest, by  
15 conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill.  
16  
17 3. Describe the destinations of chips produced by local sawmills that use wood from the  
18 forest.  
19  
20 4. For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit,  
21 describe:  
22  
23 • the types of products made;  
24 • employment (includes woodlands and woodlands contractors);  
25 • ownership of the mill over the past five years;  
26 • recent major upgrades; and  
27 • any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.  
28  
29 5. Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last five years, the actual harvest volume,  
30 the value of stumpage (sub-divided by timber dues, payments to the forest renewal  
31 trust, and payments to the forestry futures trusts, and the average stumpage paid per  
32 cubic metre.  
33

### 34 ***Recreation and Tourism***

- 35  
36 1. Describe the parks, protected areas, within and adjacent to the management unit.  
37  
38 2. For each lodge within or adjacent to the forest management unit, list the name of the  
39 business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile, etc.), and number  
40 of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels, the location of  
41 origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such relevant information.  
42 Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge can be accessed.  
43  
44 3. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and employment  
45 (direct, indirect and induced).

- 1 4. Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a  
2 breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and induced  
3 employment.
- 4
- 5 5. Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as  
6 campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking,  
7 cross country skiing.
- 8
- 9 6. Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land camping,  
10 use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.
- 11
- 12 7. Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made during the  
13 past five years.
- 14
- 15 8. Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay information, etc.
- 16
- 17 9. Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not associated  
18 with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the number of clients  
19 such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the local and provincial  
20 economies.
- 21
- 22 10. Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the number of  
23 resident and non-resident licences issued).
- 24
- 25 11. Provide available data on use of Crown land within the forest management unit for  
26 recreation.
- 27

### 28 ***Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation***

- 30 1. Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the forest  
31 management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount of mineral  
32 produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where available, discuss the  
33 revenue generated from the mine and employment (direct, indirect and induced).  
34 Discuss the economic contribution of mineral exploration activity on the unit.
- 35
- 36 2. Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount produced,  
37 as well as revenue and employment information where available.
- 38
- 39 3. Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the economic impact  
40 of the operation on the local area.
- 41

### 42 ***Other***

- 44 1. Discuss the number of traplines on the forest management unit, the number of trappers  
45 and estimate the trapping revenue.
- 46
- 47 2. Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.

- 1        3. Indicate how many people are employed by the MNR District office(s) associated with  
2        the management unit.

1 **Appendix V: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps**  
 2  
 3

<b>Natural Resource Features such as:</b>	
<b>Fisheries</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>major fish communities by lake/stream</li> <li>bait fish lakes</li> <li>spawning areas</li> <li>nursery areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>migration areas</li> <li>headwater lakes and streams</li> <li>food supply areas</li> </ul>
<b>Wildlife</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>moose concentration areas (early &amp; late winter)</li> <li>moose aquatic feeding areas</li> <li>mineral licks</li> <li>calving sites</li> <li>deer wintering areas (yards)</li> <li>raptor nests (e.g., eagles, ospreys, red-shouldered hawks, Cooper's hawks)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>heronries</li> <li>waterfowl nesting areas</li> <li>important habitats of vulnerable, threatened and endangered species *</li> <li>caribou migration routes</li> <li>caribou calving/high summer use areas</li> <li>caribou wintering areas</li> </ul>
<b>Forests</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>tree improvement areas *</li> <li>seed orchards *</li> <li>seed collection areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>genetic test areas *</li> <li>research plots (e.g., growth and yield plots) *</li> </ul>
<b>Forest Resources Uses/Values such as:</b>	
<b>Tourism Establishments</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>main base lodges</li> <li>outpost camps</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>commercial boat caches</li> <li>potential tourism areas</li> </ul>
<b>Cottaging/Residential Sites or Areas</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>existing development</li> <li>remote cottage sites</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>proposed development (from lakeshore management plans)</li> </ul>
<b>Mineral/Aggregate/Quarry Developments</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>pit or quarry permits or licences</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>active mining claims</li> </ul>
<b>Commercial Fur</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>registered trapline areas</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>trapper cabins</li> </ul>
<b>Crown Land Recreation</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>access points</li> <li>canoe routes</li> <li>portage trails</li> <li>hiking/nature trails</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>snowmobile trails</li> <li>cross-country ski trails</li> <li>approved boat caches</li> <li>land use permit hunt camps</li> </ul>
<b>Bear Management Areas</b>	
<b>Wild Rice Production Areas</b>	
<b>Enhanced Management Areas</b>	
<b>Existing and Planned Infrastructure Features such as:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>roads and railways</li> <li>utilities (pipelines, hydro lines)</li> <li>waste and sewage disposal sites</li> <li>airports/airstrips</li> <li>communications towers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>logging camps</li> <li>mills</li> <li>potable water supply sources, including sites on lakes, rivers and streams identified by any person as being used for water supplies</li> </ul>

1

<b>Cultural Heritage Sites and Features*, such as:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• archaeological sites and resources</li> <li>• cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal peoples' cemeteries</li> <li>• areas of archaeological potential</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• built heritage resources</li> <li>• traditional use sites</li> <li>• cultural heritage landscapes</li> </ul>
<b>Other Special Land Uses of Local Significance as identified by any person, such as:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• areas of significance to local communities such as areas used for traditional or recreational activities</li> <li>• Reserves and other Aboriginal communities</li> <li>• Areas which have been identified as being required as reserve lands or for economic or capital development projects</li> <li>• Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest</li> <li>• Evaluated wetlands and evaluated wetland complexes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• registered trapline areas</li> <li>• areas used for fuelwood or building materials</li> <li>• sites of local archaeological, historical, religious and cultural heritage significance, including Aboriginal graveyards, spirit sites and burial sites *</li> <li>• medicinal plants</li> <li>• Significant ecological area (e.g., significant woodland, significant flora)</li> <li>• old growth red and white pine forest communities</li> </ul>
<b>Exclusions from the Land Base of the Management Unit, including:</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Federal lands (e.g., Indian Reserves, Department of National Defence Bases, National Parks)</li> <li>• Provincial parks, conservation reserves and approved provincial park candidates (provincial parks, conservation reserves and forest reserves recommended in the relevant land use plan or subject to interim protection)</li> <li>• Crown land leases (e.g., land use permits, licenses of occupation)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• patented lands</li> <li>• cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal cemeteries and burial grounds *</li> <li>• Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest which have been designated as exclusions from the management unit</li> </ul>

2

3

4

\* *Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information would not normally be shown on the values maps.*

## 1 **Appendix VI: Information Requirements for Analysis Tools Used in** 2 **Strategic Analysis**

3  
4 As a package, the analysis tools used in strategic analysis will incorporate all of the following  
5 information requirements:

- 6  
7 (a) Land Base Definition:
- 8 (i) forest unit descriptions;
  - 9 (ii) descriptions of wildlife habitat types, and potential suitability of various  
10 habitat types to provide habitat for selected wildlife species;
  - 11 (iii) listing of areas available and unavailable for timber production, by forest  
12 class; and
  - 13 (iv) non-forested land type descriptions.
- 14 (b) Forest Dynamics Information:
- 15 (i) rates of natural disturbance and succession of one forest class to another;
  - 16 (ii) rates of natural succession of non-forested land types to forest; and
  - 17 (iii) forest growth and yield information (in the form of growth projections and  
18 yield curves) for natural forest development, and for different strategic  
19 silvicultural options, including net down factors used for waste and  
20 breakage, cull, logging damage, and age of decadence.
- 21 (c) Silvicultural Options:
- 22 (i) harvest operability ranges;
  - 23 (ii) where applicable, shelterwood harvest options;
  - 24 (iii) where applicable, uneven-aged harvest options;
  - 25 (iv) stumpage values;
  - 26 (v) allowances for reserve prescriptions in forest management planning;
  - 27 (vi) allowances for volumes by species left unharvested;
  - 28 (vii) conversion rates of harvested areas to non-forested land (e.g., roads and  
29 landings);
  - 30 (viii) forest renewal options, including costs and seedling requirements;
  - 31 (ix) post-renewal forest succession rates and regeneration delay;
  - 32 (x) tree improvement options, including expected results;
  - 33 (xi) commercial thinning and tending treatment options, including costs and  
34 expected results; and
  - 35 (xii) active non-forest rehabilitation treatment options, including costs and  
36 expected results.
- 37 (d) Management Objectives:
- 38 (i) desired forest condition targets (forest unit area, age class structure,  
39 growing stock);
  - 40 (ii) harvest volume, products, and flow targets; and
  - 41 (iii) silvicultural activity targets.
- 42

43 This information must meet any applicable requirements specified in the *Forest Information*  
44 *Manual*.

1 **Appendix VII: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form**  
2  
3

4 This appendix is organized into four parts:  
5

- 6 A: Primary Road Corridors
- 7 B: Branch Road Corridors
- 8 C: Operational Roads
- 9 D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

10  
11  
12 Complete Part A for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in  
13 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.7, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.6.  
14

15 Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads, that is required  
16 for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of  
17 Part A, Section 1.3.6.2 and 1.3.6.6.  
18

19 Complete Part C for each new area of operations, or a group of new areas of operations, for  
20 each five-year term, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.4 and  
21 1.3.6.6.  
22

23 Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road  
24 networks, that is the responsibility of the forest resource licensee, if a use management  
25 strategy does not exist, or an existing use management strategy is being changed, in  
26 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.6.



**A: PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS**

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

**ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**1. Alternative Corridors**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.7):

**2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors**

Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

- (a) Alternative corridor number:
- (b) Description (attach map):
- (c) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.7):
  - (i) advantages and disadvantages:
  - (ii) use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):
  - (iii) estimated costs of construction and use management:

**3. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

**4. Proposed Corridor**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

- (a) Description (attach map):
- (b) Use management strategy:
- (c) Rationale:

**5. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

**6. Selected Corridor**

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

- 1 If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed
- 2 corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of
- 3 sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor an/or use management strategy.

1 **B: Branch Road Corridors**

2  
3 Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads with both a  
4 common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

5  
6 **ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:** \_\_\_\_\_

7  
8 Provide a list of branch roads, with road name identifiers, with both a common rationale for  
9 the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

10  
11 **1. Proposed Corridor**

12  
13 Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

- 14  
15 (a) Description (attach map(s) identifying the road corridor(s)):  
16 (b) Rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2, items (a) – (c)):  
17 (c) Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

18  
19 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

20  
21 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

22  
23 **3. Selected Corridor**

24  
25 If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further  
26 documentation is required.

27  
28 If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed  
29 corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of  
30 sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

1 **C: Operational Roads**

2  
3 Complete Part C for each new area of operations, or group of new areas of operations with  
4 networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

5  
6 **AREA OF OPERATIONS NAME/IDENTIFIER:** \_\_\_\_\_

7  
8 Provide a list of areas of operations with networks of operational roads with a common use  
9 management strategy.

10  
11 **1. Proposed Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

12  
13 Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
14 consultation.

15  
16 Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

17  
18 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

19  
20 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
21 consultation.

22  
23 **3. Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

24  
25 If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is  
26 required.

27  
28 If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management  
29 strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management  
30 strategy.

**D: EXISTING ROADS OR ROAD NETWORKS**

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

**ROAD or ROAD NETWORK NAME/IDENTIFIER:** \_\_\_\_\_

Provide a list of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

**1. Proposed Use Management Strategy**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.6, items (a) – (e)):

**2. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**3. Use Management Strategy**

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

1 **Appendix VIII: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form**

2  
3 This appendix is organized into five parts:

- 4  
5 A: Area of Concern Description  
6 B: Operational Prescription  
7 C: Conditions on Operational Roads  
8 D: Primary and Branch Road Crossings  
9 E: Monitoring Program

10  
11 Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC)  
12 or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values for  
13 which an operational prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis  
14 of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A,  
15 Section 1.3.5.1.

16  
17 Complete Part A, Part C, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC)  
18 or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values  
19 which will be crossed by an operational road(s), in accordance with the requirements of Part  
20 A, Section 1.3.6.4.

21  
22 Complete Part A, Part D, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC)  
23 which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of  
24 Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

1 **A: Area of Concern Description**

2  
3 Complete Part A for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern  
4 with common natural resource features, land uses or values, prior to Phase I: Stage Two (and  
5 Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

6  
7 **1. Area of Concern (AOC) Identifier:** \_\_\_\_\_

8  
9 The area of concern (AOC) identifier may be numeric, alphabetic or any combination,  
10 and will uniquely identify either an individual AOC or a group of AOCs with a  
11 common natural resource feature, land use or value.

12  
13 In order to link the supplementary documentation form, FMP-14 and the detailed  
14 operations maps for the five-year term, the AOC identifier will be entered in the first  
15 column of FMP-14, and will also appear on the operations maps.

16  
17 **2. Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value**

- 18  
19 (a) Description of natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s)  
20 (listed in order of importance):  
21 (b) Dimensions of area of concern:

## 1 **B: Operational Prescription**

2  
3 Complete Part B for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern  
4 with common natural resource features, land uses or values, for which an operational  
5 prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative  
6 operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.  
7

### 8 **1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions**

9  
10 Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to Phase I:  
11 Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.  
12

- 13 (a) Alternative identifier/number:  
14 (b) Description of proposed operational prescription:  
15 (Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to  
16 regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)  
17 (c) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational  
18 Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):  
19

### 20 **2. Proposed operational prescription**

21  
22 Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription prior to Phase I: Stage  
23 Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.  
24

- 25 (a) Description:  
26 (b) Rationale:  
27 (c) Exception:  
28 (Specify if the operational prescription is an exception, and identify  
29 applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)  
30

### 31 **3. Summary of public comments**

32  
33 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
34 consultation.  
35

### 36 **4. Selected prescription**

37  
38 If the proposed operational prescription is selected, no further documentation is  
39 required.  
40

41 If the selected operational prescription is different from the proposed operational  
42 prescription, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected  
43 operational prescription.



1 **C: Conditions on Operational Roads**

2  
3 Complete Part C for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common natural  
4 resource feature, land uses or values, which will be crossed by an operational road(s), in  
5 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

6  
7 **1. Proposed Conditions**

8  
9 Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
10 consultation.

11  
12 Conditions on:

- 13 (a) the location(s) of a crossing(s); and
- 14 (b) the construction of a crossing(s).

15  
16 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

17  
18 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
19 consultation.

20  
21 **3. Conditions**

22  
23 If the proposed conditions are selected, no further documentation is required.

24  
25 If the conditions are different from the proposed conditions, complete the  
26 requirements of section 1 for the conditions.

1 **D: Primary or Branch Road Crossing**

2  
3 Complete Part D for each individual AOC which is crossed by a new primary or branch road,  
4 in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

5  
6 **ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:** \_\_\_\_\_

7  
8 **1. Proposed Crossing Location**

9  
10 Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
11 consultation.

- 12  
13 (a) Description of 100 metre wide location for the road (attach map):  
14 (b) Conditions on construction, including preventive and mitigative measures:  
15 (c) Description of acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location (attach  
16 map), and acceptable variations to the conditions on construction:  
17 (d) Rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3, items (a) – (c)):

18  
19 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

20  
21 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of (and Phase II: Stage One)  
22 consultation.

23  
24 **3. Selected Crossing Location**

25  
26 If the proposed location is selected, no further documentation is required.

27  
28 If the selected location is different from the proposed location, complete the  
29 requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected location.

1 **E: Monitoring Program**

2

3 Complete Part E if the operational prescription for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs  
4 with a common natural resource feature, land uses or values, which was prepared in  
5 accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific  
6 direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a  
7 forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part E if the regular  
8 forest operations inspection program applies.)

9

10 **1. Proposed Monitoring Program**

11

12 Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
13 consultation.

14

15 (a) Description:

16 (b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription:

17

18 **2. Summary of Public Comments**

19

20 Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of  
21 consultation.

22

23 **3. Monitoring Program**

24

25 If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

26

27 If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program,  
28 complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.



**GLOSSARY OF TERMS**

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

- 1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8 Aird Aird, Paul L., "Conservation for the sustainable development of forests  
9 worldwide: A compendium of concepts and terms" *The Forestry Chronicle*.  
10 70(6) (1994)  
11  
12 ARM Access Roads Manual (August 1992)  
13  
14 CBS95 Canadian Biodiversity Strategy. Canada's Response to the Convention on  
15 Biological Diversity (1995)  
16  
17 CFIT A Guide to Canadian Forest Inventory Terminology and Usage (1978)  
18  
19 CFSA *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (1995)  
20  
21 EAA *The Environmental Assessment Act* (1975)  
22  
23 EA Decision Environmental Assessment Board's *Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class*  
24 *Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber*  
25 *Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)* (1994)  
26  
27 EA Dec Order Environmental Assessment Declaration Order MNR-71 regarding MNR's  
28 Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown  
29 Lands in Ontario (2003)  
30  
31 EALS An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry  
32 of Natural Resources (September, 1995)  
33  
34 FIM OMNR. Forest Information Manual (April 2001)  
35  
36 FITC Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee,  
37 Forestry Canada (1988)  
38  
39 FMM Forest Management Manual for the Province of Ontario (1980)  
40  
41 FMPM (1996) Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests (1996)  
42  
43 Forman Forman, R. T. T. and M. Godron. *Landscape Ecology*. John Wiley and Sons,  
44 New York, N.Y. (1986)  
45  
46 FOSM Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (1995)

1	FRI	Forest Inventory Procedure for Ontario (1978)
2		
3	FRWCI	Forest Roads and Water Crossings Initiative, Task Team Report (2003)
4		
5	Kimmins	Oct. 3, 1993, Module 2.
6		
7	MFM	Manual of Forest Management Plan Requirements for the Province of Ontario
8		(1977)
9		
10	MNR 1997	A Silvicultural Guide to Managing for Black Spruce, Jack Pine and Aspen on
11		Boreal Forest Ecosites in Ontario (1997)
12		
13	MNR 1998	A Silvicultural Guide for the Tolerant Hardwood Forest in Ontario (1998)
14		
15	MNR 2001	Forest management guide for natural disturbance pattern emulation, Version
16		3.1. OMNR. Queens Printer for Ontario (2001)
17		
18	Morrison	Morrison, Michael L., B.G. Marcot and R.W. Mannan. Wildlife-Habitat
19		Relationships: Concepts and Applications. The University of Wisconsin Press,
20		Madison (1992)
21		
22	OG	Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forest (2003)
23		
24	PA	<i>The Pesticides Act</i> , Revised Statutes of Ontario, 1990, Chapter P.11. Printed
25		by the Queen's Printer for Ontario (1993)
26		
27	SM	Scaling Manual (1995)
28		
29	STC	Silvicultural Terms in Canada. Science and Sustainable Development
30		Directorate, Forestry Canada, Ottawa. 2 <sup>nd</sup> Edition (1995)
31		
32	SFR	State of the Forest Report (2001)
33		
34	TCEA	MNR's Timber Class Environmental Assessment Review (July 2002)
35		
36	Trenhaile	Trenhaile, Alan S. The Geomorphology of Canada. Oxford University Press,
37		Ontario (1990)
38		
39	URN	Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and Products
40		are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971)
41		
42	WD	Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary. Miriam-Webster Inc., Thomas
43		Allen and Sons Ltd., Markham (1983)

1 **NOTE:** *Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.*

2  
3 **ABANDONMENT (roads)**

4 A component of a use management strategy for a road (and associated water  
5 crossings) that has fulfilled its intended use for forest management purposes, and is no  
6 longer required for other resource management purposes.

7  
8 also see Decommissioning

9  
10 **ABORIGINAL**

11 Aboriginal persons, according to Section 35 of *Constitution Act, 1982*, include Indian,  
12 Inuit and Metis People of Canada.

13  
14 **ACCESS CONTROL (roads)**

15 The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain  
16 specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

17  
18 **AGE CLASS**

19 One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for  
20 classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

21  
22 **ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)**

23 A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and  
24 information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the  
25 long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

26  
27 **ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

28 A document mainly in the form of tables and maps, which identifies the type and  
29 extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with the forest  
30 management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

31  
32 **AREA CHARGES**

33 The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as  
34 required by the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, the Regulations, and the licence.

35  
36 **AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)**

37 A geographic area within an area of operations which is adjacent to an identified  
38 natural resource feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management  
39 activities.

40  
41 **AREA OF OPERATIONS**

42 A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands  
43 selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of a forest  
44 management plan. The area of operations may include areas of retention (no  
45 operations).

1 **AREA OF THE UNDERTAKING**

2 An area consisting of approximately 385,000 square kilometres (or 38.5 million  
3 hectares) of Crown land, on which forest management activities are conducted in  
4 Ontario. Forest management plans are prepared for management units within this area.  
5 (Modified EA Dec Order)

6  
7 The Area of the Undertaking is depicted in Appendix I of this manual.  
8

9 **ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION**

10 Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

11  
12 **BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)**

13 The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including  
14 terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which  
15 they a part. (OG)

16  
17 **Biodiversity:** includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems.  
18 (CBS95)

19  
20 **CLEANING**

21 An operation in a young forest stand, not past the sapling stage, to free the favoured  
22 trees from undesirable individuals of similar age or size which overtop them or are  
23 likely to do so. Cleaning may be accomplished by hand or by mechanical or chemical  
24 means. (Modified MFM)

25  
26 **CLEARCUT**

27 Noun.

28 1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.

29 2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently  
30 been harvested.

31 Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation.  
32 (Modified STC)

33  
34 **CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

35 A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new  
36 seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all  
37 (or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or  
38 artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches.  
39 (Modified STC)

40  
41 **CONIFER**

42 Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and  
43 needle-shaped leaves.



**1 CONSERVATION**

2 Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest  
3 sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the  
4 needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation,  
5 maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the environment.  
6 Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not  
7 so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by  
8 which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

**9 CONTINGENCY AREA**

10 Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which  
11 cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency area  
12 will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if needed.  
13

**14 CONTINGENCY PLAN**

15 An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect  
16 the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency plan  
17 permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the  
18 current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the  
19 renewed forest management plan.  
20

**21 CORRIDOR**

22 An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a  
23 stream or route. (FITC)  
24

**25 CRITERIA**

26 **Harvest:** A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas  
27 that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of  
28 the forest management plan, and the selection of areas for the five-year term.  
29

30 **Sustainability:** See Criterion  
31

**32 CRITERION**

- 33 1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored  
34 periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)
- 35 2. A category of conditions or processes by which sustainable forest management  
36 may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are  
37 measured or assessed periodically to assess change.
- 38 3. A distinguishable characteristic of sustainable forest management; a value that  
39 must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)  
40

**41 CROWN FOREST**

42 A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty  
43 in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources.  
44 (CFSA)  
45

**1 CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT**

2 An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests  
3 and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social,  
4 economic and environmental needs of present and future generations.(Modified  
5 CFSA)  
6

**7 CROWN LAND**

8 Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.  
9

**10 CUTTING CYCLE**

11 The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)  
12

**13 DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM**

14 Information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a  
15 decision maker's own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a  
16 specific decision.  
17

**18 DECOMMISSIONING (roads)**

19 For roads or road networks identified for abandonment, the physical work that will be  
20 undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety  
21 and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s)). The  
22 roadway will degenerate over time.  
23

24 also see Abandonment  
25

**26 DESIRED FOREST AND BENEFITS**

27 The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired  
28 from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs. The  
29 long-term management direction for the management unit is developed to achieve the  
30 desired forest and benefits.  
31

**32 DESIRABLE LEVEL**

33 The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a  
34 trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.  
35

**36 DISEASE**

37 Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally  
38 abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)  
39

**40 ECOSITE**

41 An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of  
42 hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography  
43 and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successional-related vegetation  
44 conditions.

1 **ECOSYSTEM**

2 The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within  
3 a particular habitat. (STC)

4  
5 **ENDANGERED SPECIES**

6 A native species, that is at risk of extirpation or extinction throughout all or a  
7 significant portion of its Ontario range.

8  
9 **ENVIRONMENT**

10 In Ontario, the environment is described as:

- 11 1. air, land, or water;
- 12 2. plant and animal life, including man;
- 13 3. the social, economic, and cultural conditions that influence the life of man or a  
14 community;
- 15 4. any building, structure, machine, or other device or thing made by man
- 16 5. any solid or liquid, gas, odour, heat, sound, vibration or radiation resulting  
17 directly or indirectly from the activities of man; or
- 18 6. any part or combination of the foregoing and the interrelationships between  
19 any two or more of them (EAA).

20  
21 **EXCEPTION**

22 A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the  
23 recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription  
24 for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or recommendations  
25 (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide.

26  
27 **FISH HABITAT**

28 Spawning grounds and nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas on which  
29 fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes. (section  
30 34(1) of the *Fisheries Act*)

31  
32 **FOREST**

- 33 1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation,  
34 growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);
- 35 2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and  
36 other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect  
37 benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).
- 38 3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

39  
40 **FOREST COVER**

41 All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

42  
43 **FOREST DISTURBANCE**

44 A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that  
45 alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.

**1 FOREST DYNAMICS**

2 The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with  
3 growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.  
4

**5 FOREST ECOSYSTEM**

6 An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological  
7 component. (CFSA)  
8

**9 FOREST HEALTH**

10 The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem's complexity while  
11 providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)  
12

**13 FOREST MANAGEMENT**

14 Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the  
15 administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more  
16 particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative,  
17 economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical  
18 aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)  
19

**20 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

21 A document, prepared for a management unit in accordance with the Forest  
22 Management Planning Manual and section 8 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*,  
23 1994. A forest management plan contains pertinent information and prescriptions by  
24 means of which forest policy, aims and objectives are translated into a continuous  
25 sequence of specific treatments on a management unit for a specified period of years.  
26

27 **Current Plan:** An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.  
28

29 **Past Plan or Previous Plan:** The expired forest management plan for the plan period  
30 immediately preceding the current plan.  
31

**32 FOREST OPERATIONS**

33 The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated  
34 purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related  
35 activities. (CFSA)  
36

**37 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION**

38 A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and  
39 maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to  
40 achieve the expected forest structure and condition.  
41

**42 FOREST RENEWAL TRUST FUND**

43 The trust which provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after  
44 March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been  
45 harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such  
46 terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

**1 FOREST RESOURCE**

2 Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the  
3 regulations that is in a forest ecosystem, (CFSA, section 3)  
4

**5 FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY**

6 A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual  
7 geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the  
8 timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species  
9 composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit  
10 divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-  
11 productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component by  
12 ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)  
13

**14 FOREST STAND(S)**

15 An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition  
16 (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of  
17 trees. (Modified MNR 1998 )  
18

**19 FOREST TYPE**

20 A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar  
21 composition. (Modified STC)  
22

**23 FOREST UNIT**

24 A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that  
25 will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both  
26 naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the  
27 same silvicultural system.  
28

**29 FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST FUND**

30 The trust which provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as  
31 may be specified by the Minister:

- 32 1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources have  
33 been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
- 34 2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource  
35 licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
- 36 3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest  
37 resources in Crown forests.
- 38 4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.

39 (CFSA)

**FREE-TO-GROW (Syn.: free growing)**

Stands that meet stocking, height and/or height growth rate, as specified in the silvicultural ground rules, and are judged to be essentially free from competing vegetation. (Adapted FMM)

**GUIDE (forest management)**

A Ministry of Natural Resources forest management guide described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* and any forest management guide that is adopted by reference in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual*. Forest management guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must be used in the development and implementation of forest management plans. (Modified EA Dec. Order)

**GUIDELINE**

Direction from a guide that is a mandatory requirement but has flexibility for interpretation and adaptation to meet the specific needs of the local management unit. (Adapted MNR 2001)

**HABITAT**

An area with the combination of resources (food, cover, water) and environmental conditions (temperature, precipitation and the presence or absence of predators and competitors) that promotes occupancy by individuals of a given species (or population) and allows those individuals to survive and reproduce. (Morrison)

**HARDWOOD**

Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle-bearing conifers. Also, the wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

**HARVEST AREA**

**Available:** The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan

**Contingency:** see Contingency Area

**Eligible:** The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term management direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

**Forecast:** The sum of the selected harvest areas (in hectares) for the ten-year period.

**Optional:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or selected harvest areas.

**Planned:** The portion of the forecast harvest area (in hectares) required to meet projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments that is expected to be harvested in each five year term.

1       **Preferred:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest  
2       during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with  
3       consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.  
4

5       **Projected:** The predicted area (in hectares) which could be harvested over time (e.g.  
6       100 years) for each forest unit and age class and/or stage of management , as  
7       determined through analyses conducted during the development of the long-term  
8       management direction.  
9

10       **Selected:** The areas from the preferred and optional harvest areas which are chosen for  
11       harvest for the ten-year period.  
12

13       **Surplus:** The areas from the selected harvest areas that are in excess of the projected  
14       industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the ten-year period.  
15

## 16       **HARVESTING**

17       The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes  
18       initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)  
19

## 20       **HARVEST METHOD**

21       A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest  
22       technique (e.g., strip clearcut, group shelterwood). (Modified FMPM 1996)  
23

## 24       **HERBICIDE**

25       Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody  
26       plants, and their seeds. (STC)  
27

## 28       **INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT**

29       An independently led review of the adequacy of forest management practices, controls  
30       and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control  
31       and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.  
32

## 33       **INDIVIDUAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT**

34       An environmental assessment that is subject to the requirements set out in Part II of  
35       the *Environmental Assessment Act* (RSO 1990, chapter E.18, as amended).  
36

## 37       **INDICATOR**

38       A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which  
39       when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each  
40       forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management activities in  
41       achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the forest.

1 **INSECTICIDE**

2 Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of  
3 insects. (STC)

4  
5 **LANDSCAPE**

6 A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is  
7 repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)

8  
9 A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

10  
11 **LICENSEE**

12 A person or company to whom a Forest Resource Licence has been granted. (SM)

13  
14 **LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE**

15 A standing advisory committee of local citizens representing a range and balance of  
16 interests, appointed by the Ministry of Natural Resources to participate in the forest  
17 management planning process. (EA Decision)

18  
19 An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the *Crown*  
20 *Forest Sustainability Act, 1994*.

21  
22 **LOGGING METHOD**

23 A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to  
24 roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

25  
26 **LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

27 The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and  
28 economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest  
29 and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.

30  
31 **MAINTENANCE (forestry)**

32 The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to  
33 ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

34  
35 **MAINTENANCE (roads)**

36 **Routine:** Those day to day activities necessary to maintain a road for the traffic using  
37 it.

38  
39 **Emergency:** Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access  
40 and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road  
41 users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged  
42 bridges, etc.). (ARM)



1 **MANAGED FOREST**

2 Crown forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents  
3 the land from being managed for forest management purposes.  
4

5 **MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE**

6 A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions,  
7 developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the  
8 manipulation of forest cover.  
9

10 **MANAGEMENT UNIT**

11 An area of Crown forest designated under section 7 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability*  
12 *Act, 1994*.  
13

14 **MERCHANTABLE TIMBER**

15 A descriptor for a tree or forest stand that has attained sufficient size, quality, and/or  
16 volume to be suitable for harvest.  
17

18 A conifer, poplar or white birch log of which more than one-half of the total content is  
19 sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres; or  
20

21 A hardwood log other than poplar or white birch of which more than one-third of the  
22 total content is sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres. (SM)  
23

24 **MODIFIED OPERATIONS**

25 Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed to  
26 protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified  
27 operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or  
28 unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses  
29 or values.  
30

31 **MONITORING**

32 The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides  
33 information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and  
34 a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)  
35

36 **NATURAL REGENERATION**

37 Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)  
38

39 **NATURAL RESOURCE**

40 A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.)  
41 resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)  
42

43 **OLD GROWTH**

44 A functional condition of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of  
45 physical features and characteristics that typically include:

- 1 1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size
- 2 and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in
- 3 species composition);
- 4 2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material,
- 5 up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality; and
- 6 3. ecosystem functions (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife
- 7 habitat) that are different from earlier stages of forest development.
- 8 (Modified OG)
- 9

10 **OWNERSHIP (land)**

11 Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and  
12 other vested interest.

13  
14 **PATENT LAND**

15 Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual,  
16 company or corporation in perpetuity.

17  
18 **PESTICIDE**

19 Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as  
20 a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating,  
21 attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or  
22 characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance  
23 or thing registered under the *Pest Control Products Act* (Canada). (PA)

24  
25 **PLAN AMENDMENT**

26 Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is consistent  
27 with the long term management direction for the management unit. Amendments  
28 could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management  
29 plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and Aboriginal  
30 involvement.

31  
32 **PLAN AUTHOR**

33 The registered professional forester licensed to practice professional forestry, under  
34 *The Ontario Professional Foresters Association Act, 2000* who is responsible for the  
35 preparation and certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan  
36 author of the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her  
37 successor is deemed to be the plan author.

38  
39 **PLANNED CLEARCUT**

40 Clearcuts that will be created during a plan consistent with the spatial and temporal  
41 standards of MNR's approved forest management guide, as revised from time to time,  
42 relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns.

43  
44 **PLANNING PROPOSAL**

45 A proposal prepared to initiate the process for the preparation of a contingency plan.

**1 PLAN PERIOD**

2 The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term management  
3 direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.  
4

**5 PLAN RENEWAL**

6 The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management plan.  
7 Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.  
8

**9 PRESCRIBED BURN**

10 The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish  
11 predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)  
12

**13 PRODUCTION FOREST**

14 Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical  
15 limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)  
16

**17 PRODUCTIVE FOREST**

18 All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of  
19 planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into “protection forest” and  
20 “production forest”.(Modified EA Decision)  
21

**22 PRODUCTIVITY**

23 A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)  
24

**25 PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE**

26 An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels.  
27 Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*.  
28

**29 PROTECTION**

30 Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage the  
31 spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may involve  
32 the use of insecticides or manual treatments.  
33

**34 PROTECTION FOREST**

35 Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be  
36 practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious  
37 physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified  
38 EA Decision)  
39

**40 REGENERATION**

41 The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to  
42 describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)  
43

44 Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration

1 **REGION or REGIONAL**

2 In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural  
3 Resources.

4  
5 **REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)**

6 A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under *The Ontario*  
7 *Professional Foresters Association Act, 2000*

8  
9 **REGULAR OPERATIONS**

10 Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with the  
11 silvicultural ground rules.

12  
13 **RENEWAL**

14 The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment  
15 and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site  
16 preparation and regeneration.

17  
18 **RESERVE**

19 An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

20  
21 **RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT**

22 An agreement negotiated between a licensed resource-based tourism operation as  
23 determined by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation, and a sustainable forest  
24 licensee.

25  
26 **RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)**

27 The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e.,  
28 MNR, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

29  
30 **RE-TREATMENT**

31 A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and  
32 usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is  
33 necessary.

34  
35 **ROAD**

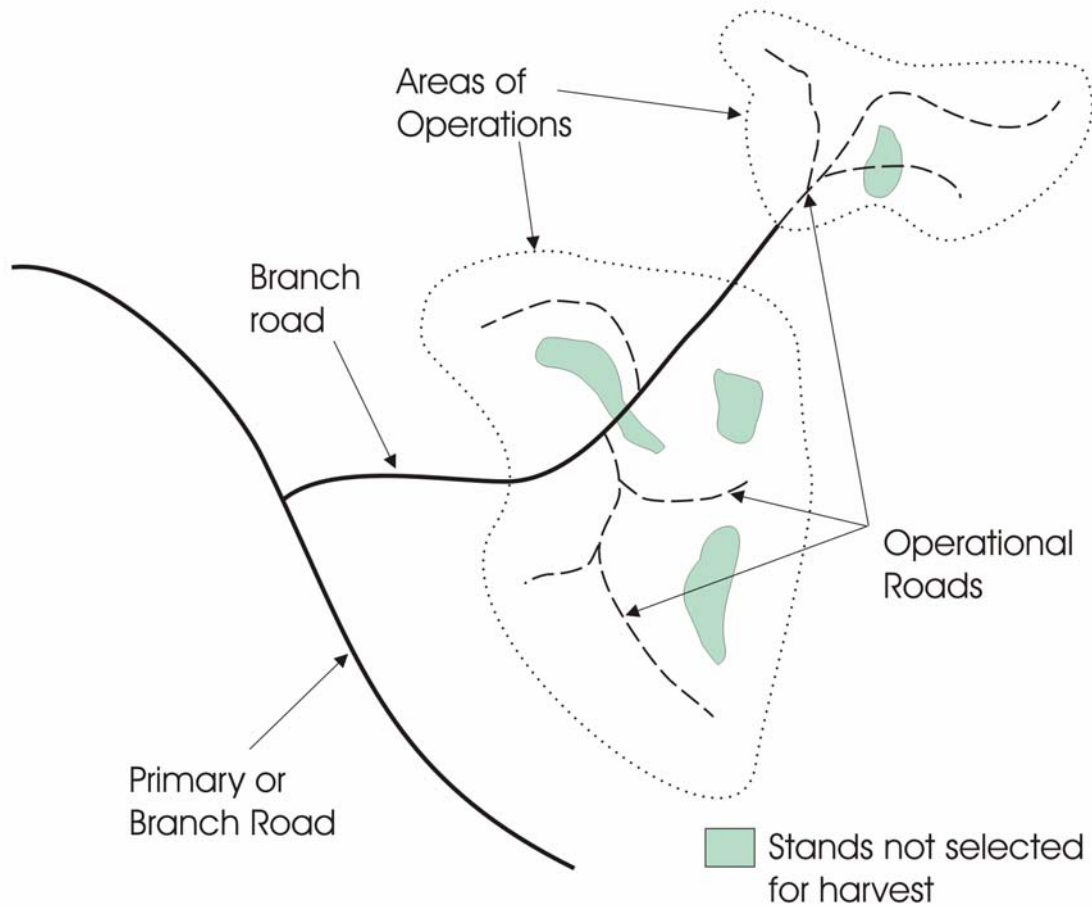
36 **Primary:** A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is  
37 constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the management  
38 unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

39  
40 **Branch:** A road that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road,  
41 providing access to, through or between areas of operations on a management unit.

42  
43 **Operational:** A road within an area of operations that provides short-term access for  
44 harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not  
45 maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are  
46 often site prepared and regenerated.

1  
2  
3

Illustration of Branch and Operational Roads:



4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14

**ROAD NETWORK**

A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area. (Adapted FRWCI)

**SALVAGE HARVEST**

The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

**SCARIFICATION**

Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)

**SEED CUT**

Removal of trees in a mature stand to create openings in the canopy which provide conditions for regeneration from the seed of retained trees. The seed cut is normally the first or second cut under the shelterwood silvicultural system.

**SEEDING**

A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

**SEED ORCHARD**

A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

**SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

**SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, seed, removal, final) for the purpose of obtaining natural regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or artificial. Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

also see Silvicultural System

**Group Shelterwood System:** Patches of advanced regeneration arising from thinnings or from natural disturbances, commonly developed in even-aged stands. Where this condition is prominent, shelterwood cuttings can be made specifically in relation to the requirements of each group of advanced regeneration. These clumps of regeneration are enlarged by the removal of all or most of the trees above them and starting preparatory or seeding cuttings around them. The holes created in the canopy are gradually enlarged to keep pace with the establishment of reproduction.

**Irregular Shelterwood System:** Harvest cutting in which opening of the canopy is irregular and gradual; generally in groups, with the final cutting often in strips; regeneration natural; regeneration interval long, often up to half the rotation, and the resultant crop considerably uneven-aged and irregular.

**Strip Shelterwood System:** A shelterwood system in which regeneration cuttings are carried out on fairly wide strips, generally against the prevailing wind, and progress rapidly; regeneration is mainly natural, regeneration interval short, and resultant crop fairly even-aged and regular.

1       **Uniform Shelterwood System:** A shelterwood system in which the canopy is opened  
2       fairly evenly throughout the regeneration area; regeneration is mainly natural, though  
3       it may be supplemented artificially; regeneration interval fairly short and resultant  
4       crop more or less even-aged and regular. (STC)

#### 6       **SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES**

7       Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a  
8       management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

#### 10      **SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

11      A process that applies silvicultural practices, including tending (thinning, pruning,  
12      etc.), harvesting, and renewal, to a stand in order to produce a crop of timber and other  
13      forest products. Systems are classified according to the method of harvesting of  
14      mature forest stands with a view to regeneration establishment, (i.e., clearcut,  
15      shelterwood, selection). (Modified MNR 1996)

#### 17      **SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT**

18      The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground  
19      rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

#### 21      **SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE**

22      A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit and  
23      ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future  
24      forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

#### 26      **SILVICULTURE**

27      Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of  
28      silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the  
29      establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

#### 31      **SITE PREPARATION**

32      Disturbance of the forest floor and the topsoil, by mechanical or chemical means, or  
33      by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural or artificial  
34      regeneration. (Modified MFM)

#### 36      **SPATIAL**

37      Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location.  
38      Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by  
39      geographic information systems.

#### 41      **SPECIAL CONCERN SPECIES (formerly vulnerable)**

42      A native species with characteristics that make it particularly sensitive to human  
43      activities or natural events.

1 **SPECIES**

2 A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that  
3 are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other  
4 species. (Aird)

5  
6 **SPECIES AT RISK**

7 Any plant or animal, threatened by, or vulnerable to extinction.  
8

9 **STAGE OF MANAGEMENT**

10 One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and  
11 number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.  
12

13 **STANDARD**

- 14 1. Measurable parameters established for use as a rule or basis for comparison in  
15 measuring or judging quantity, quality, value, capacity, or other characteristics.  
16 2. Direction in a guide that is a mandatory requirement, with little or no room for  
17 interpretation. (Adapted MNR 2001)  
18

19 **STAND IMPROVEMENT**

20 The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand,  
21 generally used in the selection silvicultural system.  
22

23 **STRATEGIC SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS**

24 Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest  
25 conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural  
26 expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Strategic  
27 silvicultural options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic  
28 analysis.  
29

30 **SUCCESSION**

31 Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable  
32 order. (Aird)  
33

34 **SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT**

35 Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied to assist natural  
36 regeneration to attain the regeneration standards.  
37

38 **SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION**

39 The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports the  
40 decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the  
41 plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.  
42

43 **SUSTAINABILITY**

44 Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)



**1 SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE**

2 A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*,  
3 *1994*.

**4 SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT**

5 The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which  
6 provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability  
7 criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic  
8 assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are  
9 conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable effects  
10 on the physical and social environments.  
11

**12 TENDING**

13 Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a forest.  
14 Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing  
15 vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand  
16 improvement or pruning.  
17

**18 TERM**

19 A five-year timeframe for operations in a forest management plan.  
20

**21 THINNING**

22 A cutting made in an immature crop or forest stand primarily to accelerate diameter  
23 increment but also, by suitable selection, to improve the average form of the trees that  
24 remain. The removal of trees may be from the dominant and codominant crown  
25 classes to favour the best trees of those same crown classes (known as crown  
26 thinning), or the removal of trees may be to control stand spacing and favour desired  
27 trees using a combination of thinning criteria without regard to crown position (know  
28 as free thinning).  
29

30  
31 **Commercial Thinning:** A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the  
32 site and used for commercial purposes.  
33

34 **Pre-Commercial Thinning:** A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value,  
35 and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term  
36 pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only.  
37 Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement  
38 cutting" or stand improvement.  
39

**40 THREATENED SPECIES**

41 A native species that is likely to become endangered through all or a portion of its  
42 Ontario range if the limiting factors are not reversed.  
43

**44 TIMBER**

45 A wood material yielded by trees.

- 1 **TREE IMPROVEMENT**  
2 The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments (e.g.,  
3 tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.  
4
- 5 **USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)**  
6 A statement outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and  
7 responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, abandonment and monitoring  
8 of roads on Crown land. (ARM)  
9
- 10 **VALUE (values maps)**  
11 A term used to describe known natural resource features, land uses or values which  
12 may be affected by forest management activities.  
13
- 14 **VOLUME**  
15 The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a unit  
16 of measure.  
17
- 18 **WETLAND**  
19 Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land  
20 where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of  
21 abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the  
22 dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of  
23 wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (*Wetlands Policy*)  
24
- 25 **WILDLIFE**  
26 Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.  
27
- 28 **YIELD**  
29 The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other  
30 specified area.